Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/comentariesofcae0000vari

Patricia Rogoff

Classic Interlinear Translations

COMMENTARIES OF

CÆSAR

ON THE

GALLIC WAR

The original text reduced to the natural English order

WITH A LITERAL

Interlinear Translation of the First Seven Books

PHILADELPHIA
DAVID McKAY COMPANY
WASHINGTON SQUARE

Copyright, 1893, by
ARTHUR HINDS & CO.

Copyright, 1924, by
HANDY BOOK CORP.

Printed in the United States of America

PREFACE

In preparing the Classic Series of Interlinear Translations the publishers have insisted upon a faithful adherence to two obvious essentials: the reduction of the original text to the natural order, and, as far as possible, a strictly literal version.

In all cases, however, where the meaning as thus literally rendered is not sufficiently intelligible, explanatory words or phrases have been added.

It is hoped that the plan will be appreciated of inserting all explanatory words and phrases, by means of brackets, in immediate conjunction with the text, thus obviating the annoyance and the serious loss of time that attend frequent reference to notes by numbered paragraphs in an appendix.

The superiority is readily apparent of the interlinear over other translations, not only in the saving of time, but also for all purposes of careful study; making possible as well as convenient and easy, a correct solution of idioms, a quick insight into the sense, a facile and lucid rearrangement of the context in the English order, and a practical comparison of both the similarities and the contrasts of construction.

PRIMUS LIBER
FIRST BOOK

COMMENTARIORUM
OF COMMENTARIES

CAII JULII CÆSARIS,
OF CAIUS JULIUS CÆSAR,

DE

ON

GALLICO BELLO.
GALLIC WAR.

Cæsar, in narrating the war which he carried on in Gaul, first describes Gaul, then recounts two battles against the Helvetians and one against the Germans.

1. Omnis Gallĭa est divisa in tres partes: unam
All Gaul is divided into three parts: one
quarum Belgæ incŏlunt; aliam Aquitani; tertiam,
of which the Belgæ inhabit; another the Aquitani; the third,
qui linguâ ipsorum appellantur
(those) who in (the) language of themselves are called
Celtæ, nostrâ, Galli. Omnes hi differunt inter
Celtæ, in ours, Gauls. All these differ between
se linguâ, institutis, legĭbus. Flumen
themselves in language, institutions, (and) laws. The river

Garumna dividit Gallos ab Aquitanis,
Garonne divides the Gauls from the Aquitani,

Matrona et Sequăna à Belgis. Belgæ sunt
the Marne and Seine from the Belgæ. The Belgæ are

fortissĭmi omnĭum horum: propterĕa quòd absunt
the bravest of all these: because that they are distant

longissĭmè à cultu atque humanitate
farthest from the cultivation and humanity (refinement)

Provincĭæ; que mercatores minĭmè sæpe
of the Province (Provence); *and merchants least often*

commĕant ad ĕos, atque important ĕa,
resort to them, and import those (*things*),

quæ pertĭnent ad anĭmos effeminandos.
which appertain to minds to be effeminated (to effeminate

Sunt proxĭmi Germanis, qui
their minds). *They are nearest to the Germani, who*

incŏlunt trans Rhenum, cum quĭbus gĕrunt
inhabit beyond the Rhine, with whom they carry-on

bellum continenter: de quâ caussâ Helvetĭi
war continually: from which cause the Helvetii

quŏque præcedunt relĭquos Gallos virtute;
also go before (excel) *remaining Gauls in valour;*

quòd contendunt cum Germanis quotidianis prœlĭis
because they contend with the Germani in daily battles

fĕrè, quum aut prohĭbent ĕos suĭs
almost, when either they prohibit them from their own

finĭbus, aut ipsi gĕrunt bellum in
borders, or they (themselves) *carry-on war in*

finĭbus eorum. Una pars eorum, quam
the borders of them. One part of them, which

dictum-est Gallos obtinere, căpit initĭum à
it has been said the Gauls to hold, takes beginning from

flumĭne Rhodăno; continetur flumĭne Garumnâ,
river Rhone; it is bounded by river Garonne,

Oceăno, finĭbus Belgarum; etĭam attingit
by the ocean, by the borders of the Belgæ; also it touches

flumen Rhenum à Sequănis et
(reaches to) *the river Rhine from the Sequani and*

Helvetĭis; vergit ad Septentriones.
the Helvetii; it inclines to the seven-stars (the North).

Belgæ oriuntur ab extremis finĭbus Gallĭæ,
The Belgians rise from the farthest borders of Gaul;

pertĭnent ad inferiorem partem flumĭnis Rheni;
they reach to the lower part of the river Rhine;

spectant in Septentrionĕs et orientem solem.
they look unto the North and the rising sun.

Aquitanĭa pertĭnet à flumĭne Garumnâ ad
Aquitania reaches from the river Garonne to

Pyrenæos montes, et ĕam partem Oceăni,
the Pyrenean mountains, and that part of the ocean,

quæ spectat ad Hispanĭam, inter occasum
which looks to Spain, between the going-down

Solis et Septentriones.
of the sun (West) *and the North.*

2. Orgetŏrix fŭit longè nobilissĭmus et ditissĭmus
Orgetorix was by far the most noble and richest

ăpud Helvetĭos. Is, Marco Messalâ et Marco
among the Helvetii. He, Marcus Messala and Marcus

Pisone consulĭbus, inductus cupiditate regni,
Piso (*being*) *consuls, induced by desire of the kingdom,*

fecit conjurationem nobilitatis; et persuasit
made a conspiracy of the nobility; and persuaded

civitati, ut exirent de sŭis finĭbus
to the state that they should go out from their-own borders

cum omnĭbus copĭis: esse perfacĭle, quum
with all forces: to be very-easy, when

præstarent (imp. subj.) omnĭbus virtute, potiri
they did excel to all in valour, to gain

imperĭo totius Gallĭæ. Persuasit id ĕis
the empire of the whole Gaul. He persuaded that to them

hoc facilĭùs, quòd Helvetĭi continentur
by this more easily, because the Helvetii are contained (hemmed

undĭque natura lŏci; ex unâ parte,
(in) *on every side by the nature of the place; out-of one part,*

latissĭmo atque altissĭmo flumĭne Rheno,
by the widest (very wide) *and deepest river Rhine,*

qui divĭdit Helvetĭum agrum à Germanis:
which divides the Helvetian land from the Germans:

ex altĕrâ parte, altissĭmo monte Jurâ,
out-of the other part, by the highest mountain Jura,

qui est inter Sequănos et Helvetĭos;
which is between the Sequani and the Helvetii; (*out of*)

tertĭâ, lăcu Lemano, et
third (*part*), *by lake Lemanus* (the lake of Geneva), *and*

flumĭne Rhodăno, qui divĭdit nostram provincĭam
by the river Rhone, which divides our province

ab Helvetĭis. Fiebat
(Provence) *from the Helvetii. It was made* (it happened)

his rebus, ut et vagarentur (imp. sub) mĭnĭs
by these things, that both they did rove less

latè et possent (imp. sub.) mĭnùs facĭlè inferre
widely and were able less easily to-bring-on

bellum finitĭmis. De quâ caussâ homĭnes
war to bordering (*nations*). *From which cause men*

cupĭdi bellandi afficiebantur magno dolore. Autem
desirous of warring were affected with great pain. But

arbitrabantur se habere angustos fines, pro
they did deem themselves to have narrow borders, for

multitudĭne homĭnum et pro gloriâ belli atque
the multitude of men and for the glory of war and

fortitudĭnis; qui patebant ducenta et
of bravery; which did lie open (extend) *two-hundred and*

quadraginta millĭa passŭum in longitudĭnem, centum
forty thousands of paces into length, a hundred

et octoginta in latitudĭnem.
and eighty into width.

3. Adducti his rebus, et permoti auctoritate
Induced by these things, and excited by the authority

Orgetorĭgis, constituerunt comparare ĕa,
of Orgetorix, they determined to prepare those (things)

quæ pertinerent (imp. sub.) ad proficiscendum; coëmĕre
which did pertain to setting-out; to buy up

quàm maxĭmum numĕrum
as the greatest (the greatest possible) *number*

jumentorum et carrorum; facĕre quàm
of beasts of burden and of waggons; to make as

maxĭmas sementes, ut copĭa frumenti suppetĕret
the greatest sowings, that plenty of corn might supply

in itinĕre; confirmare pacem et amicitĭam cum
in the journey; to confirm peace and friendship with

proxĭmis civitatĭbus. Duxerunt biennĭum
the nearest states. They led (thought) *the space-of-two-*

esse sătis sĭbi ad ĕas res
years to be enough for themselves to those things

conficiendas; confirmant lege profectionem
to be accomplished; they confirm by law (their) *departure*

in tertĭum annum. Orgetŏrix deligĭtur ad
upon (for) *the third year. Orgetorix is chosen to*

ĕas res conficiendas. Is suscepit sĭbi
those things to be accomplished. He undertook to himself

legationem ad civitates. In ĕo itinĕre persuadet
an embassy to the states. In that journey he persuades

Castĭco, filĭo Catamantaledis, Sequănо, păter
to Casticus, son to Catamantales, a Sequanian, the father

cujus obtinuĕrat regnum in Sequănis multos
of whom had held the kingdom in the Sequani many

annos, et appellatus-ĕrat amicus à Senatu que
years, and had been called friend by the Senate and

Romano popŭlo, ut occuparet regnum in
Roman people, that he should occupy the kingdom in

sŭâ civitate, quod păter antè habuĕrat: que
his-own state, which (his) *father before had had: and*

ıtem persuadet Æduo Dumnorĭgi, fratri
likewise he persuades to the Æduan Dumnorix, the brother

Divitiăci, qui ĕo tempŏre obtinebat principatum
of Divitiacus, who in that time did hold sovereignty

in sŭâ civitate, ac ĕrat maxĭmè acceptus,
in his state, and was chiefly acceptable

plebi, ut conaretur ĭdem;
to the common people, that he should attempt the same (thing);

que dat sŭam filiam in matrimonĭum ĕi.
and gives his dauyhter into marriage to him.

Prŏbat illis esse perfacĭle factu
He proves to them to be (that it was) *very-easy to be done*

perficĕre conata, propterĕa quòd ipse
to effect (the things) attempted, because that (he) himself

esset (imp. subj.) obtenturus imperĭum sŭæ
was about-to-hold (obtain) *the empire of his*

civitatis: esse non dubĭum quin
state: to be (that it was) *not doubtful but-that*

Helvetĭi possent (imp. subj.) plurĭmum totius
the Helvetians were able most of all

Gallĭæ: confirmat, se conciliaturum
Gaul: he confirms (affirms), *himself about-to-procure*

regna illis sŭis copĭis que sŭo exercĭtu.
the kingdoms for them with his stores and with his army.

Adducti hâc oratione, dant inter se
Induced by this speech, they give between themselves

fĭdem et jusjurandum; et regno
faith and oath; and the kingdom (rule)

occupato per tres potentissĭmos ac firmissĭmos
being occupied by three most powerful and most firm

popŭlos, sperant sese posse potiri totius
peoples, they hope themselves to be able to possess of all

Gallĭæ.
Gaul.

4. Ut ĕa res enuntiata-est Helvetĭis per
When that thing was declared to the Helvetii by

indicĭum, sŭis morĭbus coëgerunt Orgetorĭgem dicĕre
discovery, by their customs they forced Orgetorix to say

caussam ex vincŭlis. Oportebat
(plead) (*his*) *cause* *from* (in) *bonds.* *It did behove*

pœnam sĕqui damnatum, ut cremaretur
punishment to follow (*him*) *condemned,* *that he should be burnt*

igni. Dïe constitutâ dictionis caussæ,
with fire. *In the day* *appointed* *of saying* (pleading) *of cause,*

Orgetŏrix coëgit omnem sŭam familïam, ad dĕcem
Orgetorix *collected* *all* *his household,* *to* *ten*

millïa homĭnum, ad judicĭum; et
thousands *of men,* *to* *the judgment* (place of trial); *and*

conduxit eòdem omnes sŭos clientes que
he led-together *to same place* *all* *his* *clients* *and*

obæratos, quorum habebat magnum numĕrum:
bond-men-for-debt, *of whom he did have* *a great* *number:*

per ĕos, eripŭit se ne-dicĕret caussam.
by *them,* *he rescued* *himself* *that he might not say* *cause*

Quum civĭtas, incitata ob
(from taking his trial). *When* *the state,* *excited* *on-account-of*

ĕam rem, conaretur (imp. subj.) exĕqui sŭum jus
that *thing,* *did endeavour* *to execute* *its* *right*

armis, que magistratus cogĕrent (imp. subj.)
by arms, *and* *the magistrates* *did collect*

multitudĭnem homĭnum ex agris, Orgetŏrix mortŭus-est;
a multitude *of men* *out of the lands,* *Orgetorix* *died;*

nĕque suspicĭo ăbest, ut Helvetïi arbitrantur, quin
nor *suspicion is absent,* *as* *the Helvetii* *think,* *but-that*

ipse conscivĕrit (perf. subj.) mortem sĭbi.
himself *committed* *death* *to himself.*

5. Nihĭlomĭnùs post mortem ejus Helvetïi
Nevertheless *after* *the death* *of him* *the Helvetii*

conantur facĕre id, quod constituĕrant, ut
endeavour *to do* *that,* *which* *they had determined,* *that*

exĕant è sŭis finĭbus. Ubi jam arbitrati-sunt
they may go-out *from their borders.* *When now* *they deemed*

se paratos-esse ad ĕam rem, incendunt
themselves *to have been prepared* *to* *that* *thing,* *they set-fire-to*

omnĭa sŭa oppĭda, ad duodĕcim numĕro, vicos
all their towns, to twelve in number, streets

ad quadringentos, relĭqua privata ædificĭa;
(villages) *to four-hundred, the remaining private buildings;*

comburunt omne frumentum, præter quod ĕrant
they burn-up all the corn, except (that) which they were

portaturi cum se; ut, spe reditionis
about-to-carry with themselves; that, the hope of a return

dŏmum sublatâ, essent paratiores ad
home being taken-away, they might be more ready to

omnĭa periculă subeunda: jŭbent quemque
all dangers to be undergone: they order each

afferre dŏmo sĭbi molĭta cibarĭa trĭum
to bring from home for himself ground provisions of (for) three

mensĭum. Persuadent Rauracis, et Tulingis,
months. They persuade to the Rauraci, and to the Tulingi,

et Latobrĭgis, finitĭmis, utì usi
and to the Latobrigi, neighbouring (people), that having used

eodem consilĭo, sŭis oppĭdis que vicis
with the same counsel, their towns and villages

exustis, proficiscantur unà cum ĭis: que
being burnt up, they may depart together with them: and

adsciscunt socĭos sĭbi, Boĭos, qui incoluĕrant
they take-to allies to themselves, the Boii, who had dwelt

trans Rhenum, et transiĕrant in Norĭcum
beyond the Rhine, and had passed over into the Norican

agrum, que oppugnârant Norĭcam, receptos ad
land, and had assaulted Norica, received to

se.
themselves.

6. Erant omnino dŭo itinĕra, quĭbus
There were in-all two journies (roads), by which

itinerĭbus possent exire dŏmo; unum
roads they might be able to go forth from home; one

per Sequănos angustum et difficĭle, inter montem
through the Sequani narrow and difficult between mountain

Juram et flumen Rhodănum, quo singŭli
Jura and the river Rhone, by which single

carri vix ducerentur; autem altissĭmus
waggons scarcely could be led; but the highest (a very

mons impendebat, ut perpauci facĭlè
high) *mountain did hang-over, that very few easily*

possent prohibere; altĕrum per nostram
would be able to prohibit; the other through our

provinciam, multò facilius atque expeditius;
province, by-much more easy and more ready;

propterĕa quòd inter fines Helvetiorum et
because that between the borders of the Helvetii and

Allobrŏgum, qui nuper pacati-ĕrant,
of the Allobroges, who lately had been reduced to peace,

Rhodănus flŭit, que is nonnullis locis transitur
the Rhone flows, and that in some places is passed

vădo. Geneva est extremum oppĭdum Allobrŏgum
by ford. Geneva is the farthest town of the Allobroges

que proxĭmum finĭbus Helvetiorum; ex ĕo
and nearest to the borders of the Helvetii; from that

oppĭdo pons pertĭnet ad Helvetĭos. Existimabant
town a bridge reaches to the Helvetii. They did think

sese vel persuasuros Allobrogĭbus, quòd
themselves either about-to-persuade to the Allobroges, because

viderentur (imp. subj.) nondum bŏno anĭmo in
they did seem not-yet with good mind towards

Romanum popŭlum; vel coacturos vi,
the Roman people; or about-to-force by violence,

ut paterentur ĕos ire per sŭos fines.
that they should suffer them to go through their borders.

Omnĭbus rebus comparatis ad profectionem,
All things being prepared to (their) *departure,*

dicunt dĭem, quâ dĭe omnes convenĭant
they say (appoint) *a day in which day all may assemble*

ad ripam Rhodăni. Is dĭes ĕrat ante quintum
at the bank of the Rhone. That day was before the fifth

dĭem kalendarum Aprilis; Lucĭo Pisone,
day of the Kalends of April (27th March); *Lucius Piso,*

Aulo Gabinĭo consulĭbus.
Aulus Gabinius (*being*) *consuls.*

7. Quum id nuntiatum-esset (pl. perf. subj.) Cæsări,
When that had been told to Cæsar,

ĕos conâri facĕre ĭter per nostrâm
them to endeavour to make a journey through our

provincĭam, maturat proficisci ab urbe, et
province, he hastens to depart from the city, and

contendit in ulteriorem Gallĭam itinerĭbus quàm
strains (marches) *into farther Gaul by journies as*

maxĭmis pŏtest, et pervĕnit ad Genevam. Impĕrat
greatest he can, and arrives at Geneva. He orders

toti provincĭæ quàm maxĭmum
to the whole province (*to furnish*) *as greatest* (the greatest

numĕrum milĭtum. Una legĭo ĕrat omnino
possible) *number of soldiers. One legion was in-all*

in ulteriore Gallĭâ. Jŭbet pontem, qui ĕrat
in farther Gaul. He orders the bridge, which was

ad Genevam, rescindi. Ubi Helvetĭi facti-sunt
at Geneva, to be cut down. When the Helvetii were made

certiores de adventu ejus, mittunt nobilissĭmos
more certain of the arrival of him, they send the noblest

civitatis legatos ad ĕum; cujus legationis
of the state (*as*) *ambassadors to him; of which embassy*

Numeĭus et Verodoctĭus obtinebant princĭpem lŏcum:
Numeius and Verodoctius did hold the chief place:

qui dicĕrent esse sĭbi in anĭmo,
who should say to be to themselves in mind (that they

sine ullo maleficĭo facĕre ĭter per
intended), *without any mischief to make a journey through*

provincĭam, propterĕa quòd haberent (imp. subj.) nullum
the province, because that they did have no

aliŭd ĭter: rogare, ut licĕat sĭbi
other journey (route): *to ask, that it may be-lawful to themselves*

facĕre id voluntate ejus. Cæsar, quòd tenebat
to do that by the will of him. Cæsar, because he did hold

memorĭâ, Lucĭum Cassĭum consŭlem occisum, que
in memory, Lucius Cassius the consul being slain, and

exercĭtum ejus pulsum ab Helvetĭis, et missum
the army of him driven (routed) *by the Helvetii, and sent*

sub jŭgum, putabat non concedendum; nĕque
under the yoke, did think (it) *not to be conceded; nor*

existimabat homĭnes inimico anĭmo, facultate
did he think men with unfriendly mind, liberty

itinĕris faciundi per provincĭam dătâ,
of journey to be made through the province being given,

temperaturos ab injurĭâ et maleficio: tămen ut
about-to-refrain from injury and mischief: however that

spatĭum posset intercedĕre, dum milĭtes,
a space might be able to intervene, whilst the soldiers,

quos imperavĕrat, convenirent, respondit, se
whom he had ordered, might assemble, he replied, himself

sumpturum dĭem ad deliberandum; si
about-to-take a day (time) *to deliberate; if*

vellent (imp. subj.) quid reverterentur ad
they did will any-thing they might return at

idus Aprilis.
the ides of April.

8. Interĕa ĕâ legione, quam habebat
Meanwhile with that legion, which he did have

cum se que militĭbus qui convenĕrant ex
with himself and with the soldiers who had assembled from

provincĭâ, perducit murum in altitudĭnem
the province, he leads-along a wall into height

sexdĕcim pĕdum, que fossam à lăcu Lemano,
of sixteen feet, and a trench from the lake Lemanus,

quem flumen Rhodănum inflŭit, ad montem Juram,
which the river Rhone flows-into, to mountain Jura,

qui divĭdit fines Sequanorum ab Helvetĭis,
which divides the borders of the Sequani from the Helvetii,

dĕcem et nŏvem millĭa pasŭum. Eo opĕrĕ
ten and nine (nineteen) *thousands of paces. That work*

perfecto, disponit præsidĭa, communit castella,
being completed, he disposes garrisons, he fortifies castles;

quò posset prohibere facilĭus, si
that he might be able to prevent more easily, if

conarentur transire, se invito.
they should endeavour to pass over, himself (*being*) *unwilling.*

Ubi ĕa dĭes venit, quam constituĕrat cum
When that day came, which he had appointed with

legatis, et legati reverterunt ad ĕum;
the ambassadors, and the ambassadors returned to him;

nĕgat se, more et exemplo Romani
he denies himself, by the custom and example of the Roman

popŭli, posse dăre ĭter per provincĭam ulli;
people, to be able to give a journey through the province to any;

et ostendit prohibiturum, si conentur (pres.
and shows (*himself*) *about to prohibit, if they attempt*

subj.) facĕre vim. Helvetĭi dejecti ĕâ
to make violence. The Helvetii cast down from that

spe, alĭi, navĭbus junctis, que complurĭbus
hope, others (some), *ships being joined, and a great-many*

ratĭbus factis, alĭi vădis Rhodăni, quà
rafts being made, others by fords of the Rhone, where

minĭma altitudo flumĭnis ĕrat, nonnunquam interdĭu,
least depth of river was, sometimes in day-time,

sæpĭus noctu, conati si possent (imp.
more often by night, having endeavoured if they were able

subj.) perrumpĕre, repulsi munitione
to break through, repulsed by the fortification

opĕris, et concursu et telis
of the work, and by the encounter and weapons

militum, destiterunt hoc conatu.
of the soldiers, they desisted from this endeavour.

9. Una vĭa per Sequănos relinquebatur;
One way through the Sequani was left;

quâ, Sequănis invitis, potĕrant non
by which, the Sequani (being) unwilling, they were able not

ire propter angustĭas. Quum possent (imp.
to go on-account-of the defiles. When they were able

subj.) non persuadere ĭis sŭâ sponte,
not to persuade to them by their-own accord,

mittunt legatos ad Dumnorĭgem Ædŭum,
they send ambassadors to Dumnorix the Æduan,

ut, ĕo deprecatore, impetrarent hoc à
that, he (being) intercessor, they might obtain this from

Sequănis. Dumnŏrix potĕrat plurĭmum
the Sequani. Dumnorix was able most (had very great in-

ăpud Sequănos gratĭâ et largitione, et
fluence) *with the Sequani by favour and by largess, and*

ĕrat amicus Helvetĭis, quòd duxĕrat in
was friendly to the Helvetii, because he had led into

matrimonĭum filĭam Orgetorĭgis ex ĕâ civitate;
marriage the daughter of Orgetorix out-of that state;

et adductus cupiditate regni, studebat nŏvis
and induced by a desire of (for) power, he did study for new

rebus; et volebat habere quamplurĭmas
things (revolution); *and did will to have very-many*

civĭtates obstrictas sŭo beneficĭo sĭbi. Ităque
states bound by-his benefit to himself. Therefore

suscĭpit rem, et impĕtrat à Sequănis,
he undertakes the thing, and obtains from the Sequani,

ut patiantur Helvetĭos ire per sŭos
that they may suffer the Helvetii to go through their

fines, quę perfĭcit ŭtĭ dent obsĭdes inter
borders, and effects that they may give hostages between

sese; Sequăni ne prohibĕant
themselves; the Sequani lest they may prohibit (that they

Helvetĭos itinĕre; Helvetĭi,
may not prohibit) *the Helvetii from the journey; the Helvetii,*

ut transĕant sĭne maleficĭo et injurĭâ.
that they may pass without mischief and injury.

10. Nuntiatur Cæsări, esse Helvetiis in
It is announced to Cæsar, to be to the Helvetii in

animo, facĕre iter per agrum
mind, to make the journey through the land

Sequanorum et Æduorum in fines
of the Sequani and of the Ædui into the borders

Santŏnum, qui absunt non longè à
of the Santones, who are distant not far from

finibus Tolosatium, quæ civitas est in provinciâ.
borders of the Tolosates, which state is in the province.

Si id fiĕret intelligebat futurum
If that should be done he did understand (it) about-to-be

cum magno periculo provinciæ, ut haberet
with great danger of the province, that it should have

bellicosos homines, inimicos Romani popŭli,
warlike men, enemies of the Roman people,

finitimos locis patentibus et maximè
bordering to places open and chiefly

frumentariis. Ob eas caussas præfecit
abounding-in-corn. On-account-of those causes he set-over

Titum Labienum legatum ei munitioni quam
Titus Labienus lieutenant to that fortification which

fecĕrat: ipse contendit in
he had made: he (himself) *strained* (hastened) *into*

Italiam magnis itineribus que ibi conscribit duas
Italy by great journies and there he levies two

legiones; et educit ex hibernis tres,
legions; and he leads-out out-of winter-quarters three,

quæ hiemabant circum Aquileiam; et quâ
which did winter around Aquileia; and by which

iter ĕrat proximum in citeriorem Galliam
(*way*) *the journey was nearest into hither Gaul*

per Alpes, contendit ire cum his
through the Alps, he strains (hastens) *to go with these*

quinque legionibus. Ibi Centrones et Garocĕli,
five legions. There the Centrones and the Garoceli,

et Caturĭges, superiorĭbus lŏcis occupatis,
and the Caturiges, the higher places being occupied,

conantur prohibere exercĭtum itinĕre. His
endeavour to prohibit the army from the journey. These

pulsis complurĭbus prœlĭis, pervenit ab
being routed in several battles, he arrived from

Ocĕlo, quod est extremum citerioris provincĭæ,
Ocelum, which is the extreme (town) of the hither province,

in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provincĭæ
into the borders of the Vocontii of the farther province

septĭmo dĭe; inde in fines Allobrŏgum;
in the seventh day; thence into the borders of the Allobroges;

ducit exercĭtum ab Allobrogĭbus in Segusianos.
he leads the army from the Allobroges into the Segusiani.

Hi sunt primi extra provincĭam trans Rhodănum.
These are the first without the province beyond the Rhone.

11. Helvetii jam transduxĕrant sŭas copĭas
The Helvetii already had led-over their forces

per angustĭas et fines Sequanorum et
through the defiles and borders of the Sequani and

pervenĕrant in fines Æduorum, que
had arrived into the borders of the Ædui, and

populabantur agros eorum. Ædŭi, quum
did lay waste the lands of them. The Ædui when

possent (imp. subj.) non defendĕre se que
they were able not to defend themselves and

sŭa ab his, mittunt legatos ad
their-own (effects) from these, send ambassadors to

Cæsărem rogatum auxilĭum; "se omni tempŏre
Cæsar to ask aid; "themselves in all time

merĭtos-esse ita de Romano popŭlo, ut,
to have deserved so of the Roman people, that,

penè conspectu nostri exercĭtûs, ăgri
almost in sight of our army, (their) lands

debuĕrint (perf. subj.) non vastari, lĭbĕri
ought not to be laid-waste, the children

eorum abduci in servitutem, oppĭda
of them *to be led away* *into* *slavery,* *the towns*

expugnari." Eodem tempŏre, quo
o be taken-by-storm." *In the same* *time,* *in which*

Ædŭi, Ambarri quŏque, necessarĭi et consanguinĕi
the Ædui, *the Ambarri* *also,* *friends* *and* *kinsmen*

Æduorum, facĭunt Cæsărem certiorem,
of the Ædui, *make* *Cæsar* *more certain* (inform Cæsar),

"sese, agris depopulatis, non facĭlè prohibere
"themselves, *the lands being depopulated,* *not easily* *to prohibit*

vim hostĭum ab oppĭdis." Item
the violence *of the enemies* *from* *the towns."* *Likewise*

Allobrŏges, qui habebant vicos que
the Allobroges, *who* *did have* *streets* (villages) *and*

possessiones trans Rhodănum, recipĭunt se fŭgâ
possessions *beyond* *the Rhone,* *betake* *themselves* *in flight*

ad Cæsărem; et demonstrant, nĭhil relĭqui
to *Cæsar;* *and* *show,* *nothing of remaining* (*property*)

esse sĭbi præter sŏlum agri. Adductus
to be *to themselves* *beside* *the soil* *of the land.* *Induced*

quĭbus rebus, Cæsar statŭit non expectandum
by which *things,* *Cæsar* *resolved* *not* *to be waited*

sĭbi, dum, omnĭbus
to (by) *himself* (that he ought not to wait), *until,* *all*

fortunis sociorum consumptis, Helvetĭi
the fortunes *of the allies* *being consumed,* *the Helvetii*

pervenirent in Santŏnes.
should arrive *into* *the Santones.*

12. Arar est flumen, quod influĭt in
The Arar (the Saone) *is* *a river,* *which* *flows* *into*

Rhodănum incredibĭli lenitate per fines
the Rhone *with incredible* *smoothness* *through* *the borders*

Æduorum et Sequanorum; ita ut possit
of the Ædui *and* *of the Sequani;* *so* *that* *it may be able*

non judicari ocŭlis in utram partem
not *to be judged* *by the eyes* *into* *whether-of-the-two* *part*

flŭat. Helvetĭi transibant id, ratĭbus ac
it flows. The Helvetii did pass-over that, rafts and

lintrĭbus junctis. Ubi Cæsar factus-est certĭor
boats being joined. When Cæsar was made more certain

per exploratores, Helvetĭos jam transduxisse
by scouts, the Helvetii already to have-led-over

id flumen tres partes copiarum, verò quartam
that river three parts of (their) forces, but the fourth

partem esse relĭquam citra flumen Arărim;
part to be remaining on-this-side the river Arar (Saone);

de tertĭâ vigilĭâ profectus è
from (at) *the third watch* (midnight) *having set-out from*

castris cum trĭbus legionĭbus pervĕnit ad ĕam
the camps with three legions he arrives to that

partem, quæ nondum transiĕrat flumen.
part, which not-yet had passed the river.

Aggressus ĕos impeditos et inopinantes
Having attacked them encumbered and unaware

concidit magnam partem eorum; relĭqui
he cut-up (slew) *a great part of them; the rest*

mandârunt sese fŭgæ atque abdiderunt in
committed themselves to flight and hid (themselves) into

proxĭmas silvas. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus:
the nearest woods. That district was called the Tigurine:

nam omnis Helvetĭa civĭtas divisa-est in
for all the Helvetian state has been divided into

quatŭor pagos. Hic unus pagus, quum
four districts. This one district, when

exîsset (pl. perf. subj.) dŏmo, memorĭâ
it had gone-out from home, in the memory

nostrorum patrum, interfecĕrat Lucĭum Cassĭum
of our fathers, had slain Lucius Cassius

Consŭlem, et misĕrat exercĭtum ejus sub
the Consul, and had sent the army of him under

jŭgum. Ita sive casu, sive consilĭo
the yoke. Thus whether by chance, or by the counsel

immortalĭum Deorum, pars Helvetĭæ civitatis,
of the immortal Gods, the part of the Helvetian state,

quæ intulĕrat insignem calamitatem Romano
which had brought-on a remarkable calamity to the Roman

popŭlo, ĕa princeps persolvit pœnas. In quâ
people, that chief (first) *paid penalties. In which*

re Cæsar ultus-est non solùm publĭcas sed etĭam
thing Cæsar avenged not only public but also

privatas injurĭas; quòd Tigurini interfecĕrant
private injuries; because the Tigurini had slain

Lucĭum Pisonem legatum, ăvum Lucĭi
Lucius Piso the lieutenant, grandfather of Lucius

Pisonis socĕri ejus, eodem prœlĭo,
Piso father-in-law of him (Cæsar), *in the same battle,*

quo Cassĭum.
in which (*they slew*) *Cassius.*

13. Hoc prœlĭo facto, ut posset
This battle being made, that he might be able

conséqui relĭquas copĭas Helvetiorum, curat
to reach the remaining forces of the Helvetii, he takes-care

pontem faciendum in Arăre, atque ĭta transducit
a bridge to be made in the Arar, and so leads-over

exercĭtum. Helvetĭi commoti repentino adventu
the army. The Helvetii moved by the sudden arrival

ejus, quum intelligĕrent (imp. subj.) illum
of him, when they did understand him

fecisse uno dĭe id, quod ipsi
to have done in one day that, which themselves

confecĕrant ægerrĭmè viginti diebus, ut
had accomplished most-hardly in twenty days, that

transirent flumen, mittunt legatos ad
they might pass the river, send ambassadors to

ĕum; cujus legationis Divĭco fŭit princeps, qui
him; of which embassy Divico was chief, who

fuĕrat dux Helvetiorum Cassiano bello,
had been leader of the Helvetii in the Cassian war

Is ĭta egit cum Cæsăre; "si Romanus
He thus acted (treated) *with Cæsar; "if the Roman*

popŭlus facĕret pacem cum Helvetĭis, Helvetĭos
people would make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii

ituros in ĕam partem, atque futuros
about-to-go (would go) *into that part, and about-to-be*

ĭbi, ubi Cæsar constituisset atque
there, where Cæsar might have appointed and

voluisset esse; sin perseveraret
might have willed (them) *to be; but if he should persevere*

persĕqui bello, reminisceretur vetĕris
to pursue with war, he should remember of the old

incommŏdi Romani popŭli, et
inconvenience (misfortune) *of the Roman people, and*

pristĭnæ virtutis Helvetiorum: quòd
of the ancient valour of the Helvetii: because

adortus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) improvisò unum pagum,
he had assaulted unexpectedly one district;

quum ĭi, qui transîssent (pl. perf. subj.) flumen,
when those, who had passed the river,

possent (imp. subj.) non ferre auxilĭum sŭis;
were able not to bring aid to their (men);

tribuĕret ne aut magnopĕre sŭæ virtuti
he should assign not either greatly to his valour

ob ĕam rem, aut despicĕret ipsos.
on-account-of that thing or should despise themselves.

Se ĭta didicisse à sŭis patrĭbus
Themselves so to have learned from their fathers

que majorĭbus, ut contendĕrent măgis
and ancestors, that they should contend more

virtute quàm niterentur dŏlo, aut
by valour than they should strive by deceit, or

insidĭis. Quare committĕret ne, ut
with ambushes. Wherefore he should commit not, that

is lŏcus, ŭbi constitissent (pl. perf. subj.),
that place, where they had stood

capĕret nomen ex calamitate Romani
should take (*its*) *name* *from* *the calamity* *of the Roman*

popŭli, et internecione exercĭtûs, ac
people, *and* *the destruction* *of the army*, *and*

prodĕret memorĭam.
should deliver (hand down) *the memory* (*of it*).

14. Cæsar respondit ĭta his; "ĕò
Cæsar *answered* *thus* *to these* (*words*); "*therefore*

mĭnus dubitationĭis dări sĭbi, quòd
less *of doubt* *to be given* *to himself*, *because*

teneret (imp. subj.) ĕas res memorĭâ, quas
he did hold *those* *things* *in memory*, *which*

Helvetĭi legati commemorâssent (pl. perf.
the Helvetian *ambassadors* *had mentioned*,

subj.), atque ferre ĕò gravĭus, quò
and *to bear* *by that* *more heavily*, *by which*

accidissent (pl. perf. subj.) mĭnùs merĭto
(because) *they had befallen* *less* *by the merit*

Romani popŭli, qui si fuisset (pl. perf. subj.)
of the Roman *people*, *which* *if* *it had been*

conscĭus sĭbi alicujus injurĭæ, fuisse non
conscious *to itself* *of some* *injury*, *to have been* *not*

difficĭle cavere; sed deceptum ĕo, quòd
difficult *to beware* *but* *being deceived* *in this*, *because*

nĕque intelligĕret (imp. subj.) commissum
neither *it did understand* (*fault*) *committed*

à se, quare timeret; nĕque putaret
by itself, *wherefore* *it should fear*; *nor* *did it think*

(imp. subj.) timendum sĭne çaussâ. Quòd si
to be feared *without* *cause*. *But* *if*

vellet (imp. subj.) oblivisci vetĕris contumelĭæ,
he did will *to forget* *of the ancient* *insult*,

num etĭam posset deponĕre memorĭam
whether *also* *would he be able* *to lay-down* *the memory*

recentĭum injuriarum, quòd, ĕo invĭto,
of fresh *injuries*, *that*, *he* (*being*) *unwilling*,

tentâssent (pl. perf. subj.) ĭter per Provincĭam
they had attempted a journey through the Province

per vim, quòd vexâssent (pl. perf. subj.) Ædŭos,
by violence, that they had harassed the Ædui,

quòd Ambarros, quòd Allobrŏges? Quòd
that the Ambarri, that the Allobroges? That

gloriarentur (imp. subj.) tam insolenter sŭâ victorĭâ;
they did boast so insolently in their victory;

que quòd admirarentur se tulisse injurĭas
and that they did wonder himself to have borne the injuries

impunè tam dĭu, pertinere eòdem.
with-impunity so long, to pertain to the same (point).

Enim immortales Dĕos consuêsse,
For the immortal Gods to have been accustomed,

quò homĭnes dolĕant gravĭùs ex
in-order-that men may grieve more heavily from

commutatione rerum, quos vĕlint ulcisci
the change of things, whom they may wish to punish

pro scelĕre eorum, interdum concedĕre
for the wickedness of them, sometimes to grant

secundiores res his, et diuturniorem
more prosperous things to these, and more-lasting

impunitatem. Cùm ĕa sint (pres. subj.)
impunity. When (since) those (things) are

ĭta, tămen si obsĭdes dentur sĭbi ab ĭis,
so, yet if hostages may be given to himself by them,

ŭtì intellĭgat facturos ĕa
that he may understand (them) about-to-do those (things)

quæ polliceantur (pres. subj.); et si satisfacĭant
which they promise; and if they may satisfy

Ædŭis de injurĭis, quas
to the Ædui concerning the injuries, which

intulĕrint (perf. subj.) ipsis que socĭis
they have brought-on to themselves and to the allies

eorum, ĭtem si Allobrogĭbus, sese esse
of them, likewise if to the Allobroges, himself to be

facturum pacem cum ĭis." Divĭco respondit:
about-to-make peace with them." Divico answered:

"Helvetĭos institutos-esse ĭta à majorĭbus,
"the Helvetii to have been instructed so by (their) ancestors,

ŭtî consuevĕrint (perf. subj.) accipĕre, non dăre
that they have been accustomed to receive, not to give

obsĭdes; Romanum popŭlum esse testem ejus rei."
hostages; the Roman people to be witness of that thing."

Hoc responso dăto, discessit.
This answer being given, he departed.

15. Postĕro dĭe mŏvent castra ex ĕo
On the following day they move the camps from that

lŏco. Cæsar făcit ĭdem; que præmittit
place. Cæsar does the same; and sends-forward

omnem equitatum ad numĕrum quatŭor millĭum,
all the cavalry to the number of four thousands,

quem habebat coactum ex omni provincĭâ,
which he did have collected from all the province,

et Ædŭis atque socĭis eorum;
and from the Ædui and from the allies of them;

qui viděant in quas partes hostes facĭant
who may see into what parts the enemies may make

ĭter: qui, insecuti cupidĭùs
(their) journey: who, having followed-up more (too) eagerly

novissĭmum agmen, committunt prœlĭum
the last troop (the rear), join battle

cum equitatu Helvetiorum alieno
with the cavalry of the Helvetii in strange (unfavourable)

lŏco, et pauci de nostris cădunt. Quo
place, and a few of our (men) fall. By which

prœlĭo Helvetĭi sublati, quòd quingentis
battle the Helvetii being elated, because with five-hundred

equitĭbus propulĕrant tantam multitudĭnem
horsemen they had repulsed so-great a multitude

equĭtum, cœperunt subsistĕre audacĭùs;
of horsemen, began to withstand more boldly,

nonnunquam ex novissĭmo agmĭne lacessĕre
sometimes out-of the last troop (the rear) *to challenge*

prœlĭo nostros. Cæsar continebat sŭos
with battle our (*men*). *Cæsar did withhold his* (*men*)

à prœlĭo, ac habebat sătis in
from battle, and did have (thought *it*) *enough in*

præsentĭâ, prohibere hostem
presentness (for the present), *to prohibit the enemy*

rapinis, pabulationĭbus, que populationĭbus.
from rapines, from foragings, and from wastings.

Ita circĭter quindĕcim dĭes fecerunt ĭter,
So about fifteen days they made the journey,

ŭtî inter novissĭmum agmen hostĭum et
that between the last troop of the enemies and

nostrum primum, non amplĭùs quinis aut
our first (van), *not more* (*than*) *five or*

senis millĭbus passŭum interesset.
(*than*) *six thousands of paces might intervene.*

16. Intĕrim Cæsar quotidĭe flagi-
Meanwhile Cæsar (*began*) *daily to demand-*

tare Ædŭos frumentum, quod pol-
earnestly from the Ædui the corn, which they

licĭti-essent (pl. perf. subj.) publĭcè. Nam propter
had promised publicly. For on-account-of

frigŏra (quòd Gallĭa posĭta est sub
the colds (*because Gaul is situated towards*

Septentrionĭbus (pl.), ut dictum-est antè,) non
the North, as has been said before,) not

mŏdò frumenta ĕrant non matura in agris sed
only the corns were not ripe in the lands but

ne quĭdem sătis magna copĭa, pabŭli
not indeed (even) *sufficiently great plenty, of forage*

suppetebat. Autem potĕrat mĭnùs uti ĕo
was supplied. But he was able less to use with that

frumento, quod subvexĕrat navĭbus flumĭne
corn, which he had-carried-up in ships by the river

Arăre, propterĕa quòd Helvetii avertĕrant
Arar, because that the Helvetii had turned-away

ĭter ab Arăre, à quĭbus nolebat
the journey from the Arar, from which he was unwilling

discedĕre. Ædŭi ducĕre
to depart. The Ædui (began) to lead (to put off)

dĭem ex dĭe, dicĕre conferri,
day from (after) *day, to say* (the corn) *to be brought-together,*

comportari, adesse. Ubi intellexit
to be conveyed, to be-present (at hand). *When he understood*

se duci diutĭùs, et dĭem instare,
himself to be led (put-off) *longer, and the day to urge-on*

quo dĭe oporteret metiri
(drew near), *in which day it would behove to measure-out*

frumentum militĭbus; principĭbus eorum
corn to the soldiers; the chiefs of them

convocatis, quorum habebat magnum
being called together, of whom he did have a great

numĕrum in castris, in his Divitĭăco
number in the camps, in (among) *these Divitiacus*

et Lisco, qui præĕrat summo magistratŭi
and Liscus, who was-over the highest magistracy

(quem Ædŭi appellant Vergobretum, qui creatur
(*whom the Ædui name Vergobretus, who is created*

annŭus que hăbet potestatem vitæ que nĕcis
annual and has the power of life and of death

in sŭos), accusat ĕos graviter,
over his-own (*people*)), *he accuses them heavily,*

quòd quum posset (imp. subj.) nĕque emi,
because when it was able neither to be bought,

nĕque sumi ex agris, tempŏre tam
nor to be taken from the lands, in a time so

necessarĭo, hostĭbus tam propinquis,
necessary, the enemies (*being*) *so near,*

sublevetur (pres. subj.) non ab ĭis; præsertim quum,
he is succoured not by them; especially when,

ex magnâ parte adductus precĭbus eorum
from great part induced by the prayers of them

suscepĕrit (perf. subj.) bellum: queritur etĭam
he has undertaken the war: he complains also

multò gravĭùs quòd destitutus-sit (perf. subj.).
by much the more heavily that he has been left destitute (of corn).

17. Tum demum Liscus adductus oratione
Then at-last Liscus induced by the speech

Cæsăris, proponit quod antĕà tacuĕrat:
of Cæsar, sets-forth (that) which before he had kept-silent:

esse nonnullos, auctorĭtas quorum
to be (that there are) *some, the authority of whom*

valĕat (pres. subj.) plurĭmùm ăpud plebem,
avails most (very much) *with common-people,*

qui privati possint (pres. subj.) plus
who (being) private (persons) can (do) more

quàm magistratus ipsi, hos seditiosâ
than the magistrates themselves, these by seditious

et imprŏbâ oratione deterrere multitudĭnem ne
and wicked speech to deter the multitude lest

conferant frumentum; quòd dicant
they may bring-together the corn; because they say

(pres. subj.) præstare, si jam possint
to excel (to be better), *if now they may be able*

non obtinere principatum Gallĭæ, perferre
not to obtain the sovereignty of Gaul, to endure

imperĭa Gallorum quàm Romanorum; neque
the commands of the Gauls than of the Romans; nor

debĕant (pres. subj.) dubitare quin, si Romani
ought they to doubt but-that, if the Romans

superavĕrint Helvetĭos, sint (pres. subj.)
shall have overcome the Helvetii, they are

erepturi ibertatem. Ædŭis unà
about to snatch-away liberty from the Ædui together

cum relĭquâ Gallĭâ: ab ĭisdem nostra
with remaining Gaul: by the same (persons) our

consilĭa, quæque gerantur (pres. subj.) in castris,
counsels, whatsoever are carried-on in the camps,

enuntiari hostĭbus hos posse non
to be announced to the enemies: these to be able (could) *not*

coërceri à se: quin-etĭam, quòd
to be restrained by himself: moreover, because

enuntiârit (perf. subj.) rem necessariò Cæsări,
he told the thing necessarily to Cæsar,

sese intelligĕre cum quanto periculo
himself to understand with how-great danger

fecĕrit (perf. subj.) id; et ob ĕam caussam
he has done it; and for that cause

tacuisse quamdĭu potuĕrit. (perf. subj.)
to have kept-silence as-long-as he could.

18. Cæsar sentiebat Dumnorĭgem fratrem
Cæsar did perceive Dumnorix the brother

Divitiăci designari hâc oratione Lisci;
of Divitiacus to be marked-out by this speech of Liscus;

sed, quòd nolebat ĕas res jactari
but, because he did-not-will those things to be tossed

(debated) plurĭbus *more* præsentĭbus, (*being*) *present*, dimittit *he dismisses*

concilĭum, retĭnet Liscum: quærit ex
the council, he retains Liscus: he seeks from (*him*)

solo ĕa, quæ dixĕrat in conventu.
alone those (*things*), *which he had said in the assembly.*

Dicit liberĭùs, atque audacĭùs. Reperit
He speaks more-freely, and more-boldly. He finds

eădem esse vera ab alĭis secretò.
the same (*things*) *to be true from others apart.*

Dumnorĭgem ipsum esse summâ audaciâ,
Dumnorix himself to be with (*of*) *the highest boldness,*

magnâ gratĭâ ăpud plebem propter
in great favour with the common-people on-account-of

liberalitatem, cupĭdum novarum rerum;
(*his*) *liberality, desirous of new things* (revolution);

habere portoria que omnia reliqua
to have *the customs-duties* *and* *all* *the remaining*

vectigalia Æduorum complures annos redempta
taxes *of the Ædui* *many* *years* *purchased*

parvo pretio; propterea quòd, ille licente, nemo
for a small price; *because* *that,* *he* *bidding,* *no-one*

audeat (pres. subj.) liceri contrà; his rebus
dares *to bid* *against (him);* *by these* *things*

et auxisse suam familiarem rem, et
both *to have increased* *his* *family* *estate,* *and*

comparâsse magnas facultates ad largiendum
to have procured *great* *means* *to* *bestow:*

semper alere magnum numerum equitatûs
always *to maintain* *a great* *number* *of cavalry*

suo sumptu, et habere circum
at his-own *expense,* *and* *to have (them)* *around*

se: neque posse largiter solùm
himself: *nor* *to be able (to bestow)* *largely* *only*

domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates; atque
at home, *but* *also* *with* *the bordering* *states;* *and*

caussâ hujus potentiæ, collocâsse
by reason *of this* *power,* *to have placed* (given in

matrem in Biturigibus, homini illic
marriage) *(his) mother* *in* *the Bituriges,* *to a man* *there*

nobilissimo et potentissimo; ipsum habere uxorem
most-noble *and* *most-powerful;* *himself* *to have* *a wife*

ex Helvetiis collocâsse sororem ex
out-of *the Helvetii:* *to have placed* *a sister* *out-of*

matre, et suas propinquas nuptum in alias
mother, *and* *his* *kinswomen* *to be married* *into* *other*

civitates: favere et cupere Helvetiis
states: *to favour* *and* *to desire* (wish well) *to the Helvetii*

propter eam affinitatem: etiam odisse
on-account-of *that* *alliance:* *also* *to have hated*

Cæsarem et Romanos suo nomine,
Cæsar *and* *the Romans* *from his-own* *name* (account).

quòd potentĭa ejus diminuta-sit (perf. subj.)
because the power of him has been diminished

adventu eorum, et Divitĭăcus frater restitutus
by the arrival of them, and Divitiacus (his) brother restored

in antiquum lŏcum gratĭæ atque honoris: si
into the ancient place of favour and of honour: if

quid accĭdat Romanis, venire in
any (thing) may happen to the Romans, to come into

summam spem regni obtinendi per
the highest hope of the kingdom to be obtained through

Helvetĭos; imperĭo Romani popŭli, non
the Helvetii; (under) the empire of the Roman people, not

mŏdò desperare de regno, sed etĭam de ĕâ
only to despair of the kingdom, but also of that

gratĭâ quam habĕat. (pres. subj.) Cæsar etĭam reperiebat
favour which he has. Cæsar also did find

inquirendo, quòd adversum prœlĭum equestre (adj.)
by inquiring, that the adverse battle of cavalry

factum-esset (plup. subj.) paucis diebus antè,
had been made in a few days before,

initĭum ejus fŭgæ factum-esse à Dumnorĭge
the beginning of that flight to have been made by Dumnorix

atque equitĭbus ejus, (nam Dumnŏrix præĕrat
and by the horsemen of him, (for Dumnorix was-over

equitatŭi, quem Ædŭi misĕrant
(commanded) *to the cavalry, which the Ædui had sent*

auxilĭo Cæsări;) que fŭgâ eorum relĭquum
for aid to Cæsar;) and by the flight of them the remaining

equitatum perterrĭtum-esse.
cavalry to have been dismayed.

19. Quĭbus rebus cognĭtis, quum certissĭmæ
Which things being known, when surest

res accedĕrent (imp. subj.) ad has suspiciones;
things did accede (confirmed) *to these suspicions;*

quòd traduxisset (pl. perf. subj.) Helvetĭos per
because he (Dumnorix) *had led-over the Helvetii through*

fines Sequanorum; quòd curâsset
the borders of the Sequani; because he had taken-care

(pl. perf. subj.) obsĭdes dandos inter ĕos: quòd
hostages to be given between them: because

fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) omnĭa ĕa non mŏdò
he had done all those (things) not only

injussu sŭo et civitatis, sed etĭam
without-order his (of him) and of the state, but also

ipsis inscientĭbus; quòd accusaretur (imp. subj.)
themselves not-knowing; because he was accused

à magistratu Æduorum; arbitrabatur sătis
by the magistrate of the Ædui; he (Cæsar) did deem enough

caussæ esse quare, aut ipse animadvertĕret
of cause to be wherefore, either himself should animadvert

in ĕum, aut juberet civitatem animadvertĕre.
(punish) *upon him, or should order the state to punish (him).*

Unum repugnabat omnĭbus his, quòd cognovĕrat
One (thing) did oppose to all these, that he had known

summum studĭum fratris Divitiăci in
the highest zeal of (his) brother Divitiacus unto

Romanum popŭlum, summam voluntatem in se,
the Roman people, (his) highest good-will unto himself,

egregĭam fĭdem, justitĭam, temperantĭam. Nam
(his) pre-eminent faith, justice, temperance. For

verebatur, ne offenderet anĭmum Divitiăci
he did fear, lest he should offend the mind of Divitiacus

supplicĭo ejus. Ităque prĭùs quàm
by the punishment of him. Therefore sooner than

conaretur quidquam, jŭbet Divitiăcum
he should attempt anything, he orders Divitiacus

vocari ad se; et quotidianis
to be called to himself; and the daily (usual)

interpretĭbus remotis, colloquĭtur cum ĕo,
interpreters being removed, he converses with him,

per Caĭum Valerĭum Procillum, princĭpem
through Caius Valerius Procillus, chief

provinciæ Galliæ, sŭum familiarem, cui
of the province of Gaul, his intimate (friend), to whom

habebat summam fĭdem omnĭum rerum;
he did have the highest faith (confidence) of all things;

sĭmul commonefăcit, quæ dicta-sint
at-the-same-time he reminds, what (things) may have been said

de Dumnorĭge in concilĭo Gallorum, ipso
of Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls, himself (Divitiacus)

præsente; et ostendit quæ quisque dixĕrit
(being) present; and shows what every-one has said

(perf. subj.) separātim de ĕo ăpud se: pĕtit
separately of him to himself (Cæsar): *he asks*

atque hortatur ut, sĭne offensione ănĭmi ejus,
and exhorts that, without offence of the mind of him,

vel ipse statŭat de ĕo, caussâ
either he himself (Cæsar) *may determine of him, (his) case*

cognĭtâ; vel jubĕat civitatem statuĕre.
being known; or may order the state to pass judgment.

20. Divitiăcus complexus Cæsărem cum multis
Divitiacus having embraced Cæsar with many

lacrўmis cœpit obsecrare, "ne-statuĕret
tears began to beseech, "that he would not determine

quid gravĭus in fratrem; se
any-thing more heavy against (his) brother; himself

scire illa esse vera nec quenquam capĕre
to know those (things) to be true; nor any-one to take

plus doloris ex ĕo, quàm se; propterĕa quòd
more of grief from that, than himself; because that

(quum ipse posset (imp. subj.) plurĭmum gratĭâ
(when himself was able (to do) most in influence

dŏmi atque in relĭquâ Gallĭâ, ille minĭmum
at home, and in the remaining Gaul, he (Dumnorix) *least*

propter adolescentĭam crevisset (pl. perf. subj.)
on-account-of (his) youth had increased (in power)

per se; quĭbus opĭbus ac nervis
through himself (Divitiacus); *which means and nerves* (strength)

uteretur (imp. subj.) non solùm ad gratĭam
he did use *not* *only* *to* ((Diviaticus') *influence*

mĭnuendam, sed penè ad sŭam pernicĭem;
to be diminished, *but* *almost* *to* *his* *destruction;*

sese tămen commoveri et fraterno amore
himself *however* *to be moved* *both* *by fraternal* *love*

et existimatione vulgi: quòd si
and *by the esteem* *of the common-people:* *because* *if*

quid gravĭus accidisset ĕi
any (thing) *more heavy* *should have happened* *to him*

à Cæsăre, cùm ipse teneret (imp. subj.)
from *Cæsar,* *when* *he himself* *did hold*

ĕum lŏcum amicitĭæ ăpud ĕum, nemĭnem
that *place* *of friendship* *with* *him,* *no-one*

existimaturum non factum sŭâ voluntate;
about-to-think (the thing) *not* *done* *with his* *will;*

futurum ex quâ re, ŭtì anĭmi
about-to-be *from* *which* *thing,* *that* *the minds*

totius Gallĭæ averterentur à se."
of the whole *Gaul* *would be turned-away* *from* *himself."*

Quum flens petĕret (imp. subj.) hæc
When *weeping* *he did seek* *these (things)*

à Cæsăre plurĭbus verbis, Cæsar prehendit
from *Cæsar* *in many* *words,* *Cæsar* *takes*

dextram ejus; consolatus, rŏgat (ut)
the right-hand *of him;* *having consoled,* *he asks (that)*

facĭat finem orandi: ostendit gratĭam
he may make *an end* *of praying:* *he shows* *the favour*

ejus esse tanti ăpud se, ŭtì
of him *to be* *of so-much (account)* *with* *himself,* *that*

condonet et injurĭam Reipublĭcæ et
he might forgive *both* *the injury* *of the Republic* *and*

sŭum dolorem, voluntati ac precĭbus
his-own *grief,* *to the will* *and* *to the prayers*

ejus. Vŏcat Dumnorĭgem ad se; adhĭbet
of him. *He calls* *Dumnorix* *to* *himself;* *he applies*

fratrem; ostendit quæ reprehendat (pres.
(sends for) *brother; he shows what he blames*

subj.) in ĕo; proponit quæ ipse intellĭgat
in him; he sets-forth what himself understands,

(pres. subj.), quæ civĭtas queratur (pres. subj.);
what the state complains-of;

mŏnet, ut vitet omnes suspiciones in
he warns, that he may avoid all suspicions into (for)

relĭquum tempus; dicit se condonare
the remaining time; he says himself to forgive

præterĭta fratri Divitiăco. Ponit
past (*things*) *to* (*his*) *brother Divitiacus. He places*

custodes Dumnorĭgi, ut possit scire
keepers to Dumnorix, that he may be able to know

quæ ăgat (pres. subj.) cum quĭbus
what (*things*) *he does with whom*

loquatur (pres. subj.)
he speaks.

21. Eodem dĭe factus certĭor ab
In the same day being made more sure by

exploratorĭbus, hostes consedisse sub
scouts, the enemies to have sat-down under (at the

montem, octo millĭa passŭum ab
foot of) *the mountain, eight thousands of paces from*

castris ipsius; misit qui cognoscĕrent,
the camps of himself; he sent (*persons*) *who might know,*

qualis esset natura montis, et
what-sort might be the nature of the mountain, and

qualis ascensus in circuĭtu: renuntiatum-est
what-sort the ascent in a circuit: it was announced

esse facĭlem. De tertĭâ vigilĭâ jŭbet
to be easy. From (at) *the third watch he orders*

Titum Labienum legatum pro Prætore
Titus Labienus lieutenant for Prætor (with prætorian powers)

cum duabus legionĭbus, et iisdem ducĭbus, qui
with two legions, and the same guides. who

cognovĕrant ĭter, ascendĕre summum jŭgum
had known *the route,* *to ascend* *the highest* *top*

montis; ostendit quid sit sŭi consilii.
of the mountain; *he shows* *what* *may be* *of his* *counsel*

Ipse de quartâ vigiliâ
(design). *He himself* *from* (at) *the fourth* *watch*

eodem itinĕre, quo hostes ĭerant,
by the same *route,* *by which* *the enemies* *had gone,*

contendit ad ĕos, que mittit antè omnem equitatum.
hastens *to them, and* *sends* *before* *all* *the cavalry.*

Publĭus Considĭus, qui habebatur peritissĭmus
Publius *Considius,* *who* *was deemed* *most-skilled*

militaris rĕi, et fuĕrat in exercĭtu Lucĭi
of military *affair, and* *had been* *in* *the army* *of Lucius*

Syllæ, et postĕa in Marci Crassi,
Sylla, *and* *afterwards* *in* (*the army*) *of Marcus* *Crassus,*

præmittĭtur cum exploratorĭbus.
is sent-forward *with* *the scouts.*

22. Primâ luce, quum summus mons
In the first *light,* *when* *the highest* *mountain*

teneretur (imp. subj.) à Tito Labieno, ipse
was held *by* *Titus* *Labienus,* *he himself*

abesset (imp. subj.) non longĭus mille et
was absent *not* *farther* (*than*) *a thousand* *and*

quingentis passĭbus ab castris hostĭum;
five-hundred *paces* *from* *the camps* *of the enemies*

nĕque, ut compĕrit postĕa ex captivis,
nor, *as* *he found* *afterwards* *from* *the captives,*

aut adventus ipsius, aut Labieni
either *the arrival* *of himself,* *or* *of Labienus*

cognĭtus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); Considĭus, ĕquo
had been known; *Considius,* (*his*) *horse*

admisso, accurrit ad ĕum; dicit.
being spurred-on, *runs* *to* *him;* *he says,*

montem quem voluĕrit (perf. subj.) occupari
the mountain *which* *he willed* *to be occupied*

à Labieno, teneri ab hostĭbus: se
by Labienus, to be held by the enemies: himself

cognovisse id à Gallĭcis armis atque insignĭbus.
to have known that from Gallic arms and ensigns.

Cæsar subducit sŭas copĭas in proxĭmum collem,
Cæsar leads-away his forces into the nearest hill,

instrŭit acĭem. Labienus, ut præceptum-ĕrat
he arrays the line. Labienus, as had been directed

ei à Cæsăre, ne-committĕret prœlĭum,
to him by Cæsar, that he should not engage battle,

nisi copĭæ ipsius visæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.)
unless the forces of himself had been seen

prŏpe castra hostĭum, ut impĕtus fiĕret
near the camps of the enemies, that the attack might be made

in hostes undĭque uno tempŏre,
against the enemies on-every-side in one time,

monte occupato, expectabat nostros,
the mountain being occupied, did await our (men),

que abstinebat prœlĭo. Denĭque, multo dĭe
and did abstain from battle. Finally, in much day

(when the day was far advanced Cæsar cognovit per
Cæsar knew by

exploratores, et montem teneri à sŭis,
scouts, both the mountain to be held by his-own

(men), et hostes movisse castra, et
and the enemies to have moved camps, and

Considĭum perterrĭtum timore renuntiâsse pro
Considius dismayed by fear to have related for

viso, quod vidisset (pl. perf. subj.) non.
seen, (that) which he had seen not.

Eo dĭe, intervallo quo consuêrat,
In that day, in the interval with which he had been accustomed,

sequĭtur hostes, et ponit castra trĭa millĭa
he follows the enemies, and places camps three thousands

passŭum ab castris eorum.
of paces from the camps of them.

23. Postridĭe ejus diei, quòd bidŭum
The day-after of that day, because space-of-two-days

omnino superĕrat, quùm oporteret (imp. subj.)
altogether did remain, when it did behove

metiri frumentum exercĭtu (exercitŭi); et
to measure-out corn to the army; and

quòd abĕrat à Bibracte, longè
because he was distant from Bibracte, far

maxĭmo ac copiosissĭmo oppĭdo Æduorum,
the greatest and most-wealthy town of the Ædui,

non amplĭùs octodĕcim millĭbus passŭum;
not more (than) eighteen thousands of paces;

existimavit prospiciendum frumentarĭæ rĕi;
he deemed should be provided the corn thing (supply);

et avertit ĭter ab Helvetĭis ac
and he turns-away the journey from the Helvetii and

contendit ire Bibracte. Ea res nuntiatur
hastens to go (to) Bibracte. That thing is announced

hostĭbus per fugitivos Lucĭi Æmilĭi,
to the enemies by fugitives of Lucius Æmilius,

Decurionis equĭtum Gallorum. Helvetĭi,
Captain of horsemen of Gauls. The Helvetii,

seu quòd existimarent (imp. subj.) Romani
either because they did deem the Romans

discedĕre perterrĭtos timore, ĕo măgis quòd
to depart dismayed with fear, by that more because

pridĭe superiorĭbus lŏcis occupatis,
the-day-before the higher places being occupied,

commisissent (pl. perf. subj.) non prœlĭum, sive
they had committed not battle, or

quòd confidĕrent (imp. subj.) posse inter-
because they did trust to be able to be inter-

cludi frumentarĭâ re; consilĭo
cepted from corn thing (provisions); *(their) counsel*

commutato atque itinĕre converso, cœperunt
being altered and the route being changed, they began

insĕqui ac lacessĕre nostros à novissĭmo
to follow-up and to provoke our (men) from the last

agmĭne.
troop.

24. Postquam Cæsar animadvertit id, subducit
After-that Cæsar observed that, he leads-away

sŭas copĭas in proxĭmum collem que misit equitatum,
his forces into the nearest hill and sent cavalry,

qui sustineret impĕtum hostĭum. Ipse
which might sustain the attack of the enemies. Himself

intĕrim instruxit triplĭcem acĭem quatŭor veteranarum
meanwhile arrayed a triple line of four veteran

legionum in medĭo colle; ita ŭti collocaret
legions in the middle hill; so that he might place

supra se, in summo jŭgo, dŭas legiones quas
above himself, in the highest top, two legions which

conscripsĕrat proxĭmè in citeriore Gallĭâ, et omnĭa
he had levied very-lately in hither Gaul, and all

auxilĭa, et compleret totum montem
the aids (auxiliaries), and might fill the whole mountain

hominĭbus. Interĕa jussit sarcĭnas
with men. In-the-mean-time he ordered the baggages

conferri in unum lŏcum et ĕum
to be brought-together into one place and it

muniri ab ĭis, qui constitĕrant in superiore
to be fortified by those, who had stood in the higher

acĭe. Helvetĭi, secuti cum omnĭbus sŭis
line. The Helvetii, having followed with all their

carris, contulerunt impedimenta in unum
waggons, brought-together the baggages into one

lŏcum: ipsi confertissĭmâ acĭe, nostro equitatu
place: themselves in thickest line, our cavalry

rejecto, phalange factâ, successerunt
being thrown-back, a phalanx being made, came-up

sub nostram primam acĭem.
under our first line.

25. Cæsar, sŭo primùm, deinde ĕquis
Cæsar, his-own (horse) first, then the horses

omnĭum remotis è conspectu, ut pericŭlo
of all being removed from sight, that the danger

æquato, tolleret spem fŭgæ,
being made-equal, he might take-away the hope of flight,

cohortatus sŭos, commisit prœlĭum.
having encouraged his (men), engaged battle.

Milĭtes, pilis missis è superiore lŏco,
The soldiers, javelins being sent from the higher place,

facĭlè perfregerunt phalangem hostĭum: ĕâ
easily broke-through the phalanx of the enemies: it

disjectâ, fecerunt impĕtum in ĕos districtis
being dispersed, they made an attack upon them with drawn

gladĭis. Erat magno impedimento Gallis ad
swords. It was to great impediment to the Gauls to

pugnam, quòd plurĭbus scutis eorum transfixis
the fight, that many shields of them being pierced-through

et colligatis uno ictu pilorum, cùm
and bound-together by one stroke of javelins, when

ferrum inflexisset (pl. perf. subj.) se, potĕrant
the iron had beat-in itself, they were able

nĕque evellĕre, nĕque, sinistrâ impeditâ,
neither to pluck-out, nor, the left (hand) being entangled,

pugnare sătis commŏdè: ut multi, brachĭo
to fight sufficiently conveniently: that many, the arm

dĭu jactato, præoptarent (imp. subj.)
a long-time being tossed-about, wished-rather

emittĕre scutum mănu, et pugnare nudo
to send-forth shield from the hand, and to fight with naked

corpŏre. Tandem defessi vulnerĭbus cœperunt et
body. At length wearied with wounds they began both

referre pĕdem, et quòd mons
to carry-back foot (to retreat), and because the mountain

subĕrat circĭter mille passŭum,
was-under (was at hand) about a thousand of paces,

recipĕre se ĕò. Monte capto,
to betake themselves thither. The mountain being taken,

et nostris succedentĭbus, Boĭi et Tulingi,
and our (men) going-up, the Boii and Tulingi,

qui claudebant agmen hostĭum circĭter
who did close the troop of the enemies (with) about

quindĕcim millĭbus homĭnum, et ĕrant præsidĭo
fifteen thousands of men, and were for a guard

novissĭmis, agressi nostros, ex
to the last (rear), *having attacked our (men) from* (on)

itinĕre aperto latĕre, circumvenire ;
(their, route in open side (flank), *(began) to surround ;*

et Helvetĭi qui recepĕrant se in
and the Helvetii who had betaken themselves unto

montem, conspicati id, cœperunt rursus
the mountain, having beheld that, began again

instare et redintegrare prœlĭum. Romani
to press-on and to renew the battle. The Romans

intulerunt signa conversa tripartitò ;
brought-on (advanced) *the standards turned in-three-parts ;*

prima ac secunda acĭes, ut resistĕret
the first and second line, that it might resist

victis et submotis ; tertĭa ut
to the conquered and moved-away (repulsed) ; *the third that*

excipĕret venientes. Ita pugnatum-est
it might receive (those) *coming. Thus it was fought*

ancipĭti prœlĭo dĭu atque acrĭter.
with doubtful battle a long-time and sharply.

26. Quum possent (imp. subj.) non sustinere
When they were able not to sustain

impĕtum nostrorum diutĭùs, altĕri receperunt
the attack of our (men) longer, others (some) *betook*

se in montem, ut cœpĕrant ; altĕri
themselves unto the mountain, as they had begun ; others

contulerunt se ad impedimenta et sŭos
brought-together themselves to the baggages and thei-

carros. Nam hoc toto prœlio, quum
waggons. For in this whole battle, when (although)

pugnatum-sit (perf. subj.) ab septĭmâ horâ
it was fought from the seventh hour (one o'clock)

ad vespĕram, nemo potŭit videre hostem aversum.
to evening, no one was able to see the enemy turned-away.

Pugnatum-est etĭam ad multam noctem ad impedimenta:
It was fought also to much night at the baggages:

propterĕa quòd objecĕrant carros pro vallo.
because that they had opposed waggons for rampart,

et conjiciebant tela è superiore lŏco in
and did throw weapons from a higher place upon

nostros venientes, et nonnulli subjiciebant matăras
our (men) *coming, and some did throw-under spears*

ac tragŭlas inter carros que rŏtas, que
and darts between the waggons and wheels, and

vulnerabant nostros. Quum pugnatum-esset
did wound our (men). *When it had been fought*

(pl. perf. subj.) dĭu, nostri potiti-sunt
a long-time, our (men) *gained*

impedimentis que castris. Ibi filĭa Orgetorĭgis,
the baggages and camps. There a daughter of Orgetorix,

atque unus è filĭis captus-est. Superfuerunt
and one out of (his) *sons was taken. There survived*

ex ĕo prœlio circìter centum et triginta millĭâ
out of that battle about a hundred and thirty thousands

hominum, que ierunt continenter ĕâ totâ nocte;
of men, and they went incessantly in that whole night;

itinĕre intermisso nullam partem noctis,
the journey being intermitted no part of the night,

quarto die pervenerunt in fines Lingònum:
in the fourth day they arrived into the borders of the Lingones;

quum nostri morati tridŭum
when our (men) *having delayed the space-of-three-days*

et propter vulnĕra militum et
both on-account of the wounds of the soldiers and

propter sepulturam occisorum, potuissent
on-account-of the burial of the slain, had been able

(pl. perf. subj.) non sĕqui ĕos. Cæsar misit litĕras
not to follow them. Cæsar sent letters

que nuntĭos ad Lingŏnes, ne-juvarent
and messengers to the Lingones, that they should not-assist

ĕos frumento neve alĭâ re: qui si
them with corn nor with other thing: who if

juvissent, se habiturum illos
they should have assisted (them), himself about-to-have them

eodem lŏco, quo Helvetĭos. Ipse,
in the same place (light), in which the Helvetii. Himself,

trĭdŭo intermisso, cœpit sĕqui
the space-of-three-days being intermitted, began to follow

ĕos cum omnĭbus copĭis.
them with all (his) forces.

27. Helvetĭi, adducti inopĭâ omnĭum rerum,
The Helvetii, induced by want of all things,

miserunt legatos ad ĕum de deditione:
sent ambassadors to him concerning a surrender:

qui cum convenissent (pl. perf. subj.) ĕum in itinĕre,
who when they had met him in (his) journey,

que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.) se ad pĕdes,
and had thrown-down themselves at (his) feet,

que locuti suppliciter, flentes petĭssent
and having spoken suppliantly, weeping had sought

(pl. perf. subj.) pacem, atque jussisset (pl. perf. subj.)
peace, and he had ordered

ĕos expectare sŭum adventum in ĕo lŏco, quo
them to await his arrival in that place, in which

tum essent (imp. subj.), paruerunt. Postquam Cæsar
then they were, they obeyed. After-that Cæsar

pervenit ĕò, poposcit obsĭdes, arma, servos, qui
arrived there, he demanded hostages, arms, slaves, who

perfugissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad ĕos. Dum ĕa
had fled to them. Whilst those

conquiruntur et conferuntur,
(*things*) *are sought-for* *and* *are brought-together,*

nocte intermissâ, circĭter sex
a night *being intermitted* (having intervened), *about* *six*

millĭa homĭnum ejus pagi, qui appellatur
thousands *of men* *of that* *district,* *which* *is named*

Verbigenus, sive perterrĭti timore, ne, armis
Verbigenus, *either* *frightened* *by fear,* *lest,* (*their*) *arms*

tradĭtis, afficerentur suppliciŏ; sive
being delivered, *they should be affected* *with punishment;* *or*

inducti spe salutis, quòd in tantâ multitudĭne
induced *by hope* *of safety,* *because* *in* *so-great* *multitude*

deditiorum, existimarent (imp. subj.) sŭam fŭgam
of (*those*) *surrendered* *they did think* *their* *flight*

posse aut occultari aut ignorari
to be able *either* *to be concealed* *or* *to be unknown*

omnino; primâ vigilĭâ noctis, egressi ex
altogether; *in first* *watch* *of night,* *having gone-out* *from*

castris Helvetiorum, contenderunt ad Rhenum que
the camps *of the Helvetii,* *hastened* *to* *the Rhine* *and*

fines Germanorum.
borders *of the Germans.*

28. Quod ŭbi Cæsar rescivit, imperavit his,
Which *when* *Cæsar* *knew,* *he ordered* *to these,*

per fines quorum iĕrant, ŭtĭ
through *the borders* *of whom* *they had gone,* *that*

conquirĕrent et reducĕrent, si
they should search-for *and* *should lead-back,* *if*

vellent (imp. subj.) esse purgati sĭbi. Habŭit
they did will *to be* *cleared* *to himself.* *He had*

reductos in numĕro hostĭum: accepit omnes
(*those*) *led-back* *in* *the number* *of enemies:* *he received* *all*

relĭquos in deditionem, obsidĭbus, armis, perfŭgis
remaining *into* *surrender,* *hostages,* *arms,* *deserters*

tradĭtis. Jussit Helvetĭos, Tulingos,
being delivered-up. *He ordered* *the Helvetii,* *Tulingi,*

Latobrĭgos, reverti in sŭos fines, unde
Latobrigi, to return into their borders, whence

profecti-ĕrant; et quòd, omnĭbus frugĭbus amissis,
they had set-out; and because, all fruits being lost,

nĭhil ĕrat dŏmi, quo tolerarent fămem,
nothing was at-home, by which they might bear hunger,

imperavit Allobrogĭbus, ut facĕrent
he ordered to the Allobroges, that they should make (supply)

copĭam frumenti his; jussit ipsos restituĕre
plenty of corn to them; he ordered themselves to restore

oppĭda que vicos, quos incĕnderant. Fecit
the towns and villages, which they had burned. He did

id maxĭme ĕâ ratione, quòd nolŭit
that chiefly with that reason, because he willed-not

ĕum lŏcum, unde Helvetĭi discessĕrant, vacare;
that place, whence the Helvetii had departed, to be-void;

ne propter bonitatem agrorum, Germani,
lest on-account-of the goodness of the lands, the Germans,

qui incŏlunt trans Rhenum, transirent è
who inhabit beyond the Rhine, should pass-over from

sŭis finĭbus in fines Helvetiorum, et essent
their borders into the borders of the Helvetii, and should be

finitĭmi provincĭæ Gallĭæ que Allobrogĭbus.
neighbouring to the province of Gaul and to the Allobroges

Concessit Ædŭis petentĭbus, ut collocarent
He granted to the Ædui asking, that they might place

Boĭos in sŭis finĭbus, (quòd cognĭti-erant
the Boii in their borders, (because they had been known

egregĭâ virtute): quĭbus illi dederunt agros, que
by excellent valour): to whom they gave lands, and

quos receperunt postĕa in părem conditionem
whom they received afterwards into equal condition

juris que libertatis atque ipsi ĕrant.
of right and of liberty as they themselves were.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabŭlæ confectæ
In the camps of the Helvetii tablets made

Græcis litĕris repertæ-sunt, et perlatæ ad Cæsărem ;
in Greek letters were found, and brought to Cæsar ;

in quĭbus tabŭlis ratĭo confecta-ĕrat
in which tablets a computation had been made

nominatim, qui numĕrus eorum exîsset (pl. perf.
name-by-name, what number of them had gone-forth

subj.) dŏmo, qui possent (imp. subj.) ferre arma,
from-home, who were-able to bear arms,

et ĭtem separatim puĕri, sĕnes que mulĭĕres.
and likewise separately boys, old-men und women.

Summa omnĭum quarum rerum ĕrat, ducenta
The sum of all which things was, two hundred

sexaginta et trĭa millĭa capĭtum Helvetiorum ;
sixty and three thousands of heads of the Helvetii ;

triginta et sex millĭa Tulingorum ; quatuordĕcim
thirty and six thousands of the Tulingi ; fourteen

Latobrigorum ; Rauracorum viginti et trĭa ; Boiorum
of the Latobrigi ; of the Rauraci twenty and three ; of the Boii

triginta et dŭo. Ex his, qui possent (imp. subj.)
thirty and two. Of this, who were able

ferre arma ad nonaginta et dŭo millĭa. Summa
to bear arms to ninety and two thousands. The sum

omnĭum fuĕrat ad trecenta sexaginta et
(total) *of all had been at three-hundred sixty and*

octo millĭa. Censu habĭto, ut Cæsar
eight thousands. Registering being had, as Cæsar

imperavĕrat, numĕrus eorum, qui redierunt dŏmum,
had ordered, the number of those, who returned home,

repertus-est centum et dĕcem millĭa.
was found a hundred and ten thousands.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, legati
The war of the Helvetii being finished, ambassadors

fĕrè totius Gallĭæ, princĭpes civitatum, convenerunt
almost of the whole Gaul, chiefs of states, came together

ad Cæsărem gratulatum : " sese, intelligĕre,
to Cæsar to congratulate : " themselves, to understand,

tametsi Romanus populus repetîsset (pl. perf. subj.)
although the Roman people had required

pœnas ab iis bello pro veteribus injuriis
penalties from them in war for ancient injuries

Helvetiorum; tamen eam rem accidisse non
of the Helvetii; yet that thing to have happened not

minùs ex usu terræ Galliæ,
less out-of use (to the advantage) *of the land of Gaul,*

quàm Romani populi; propterea quòd eo
than of the Roman people; because that with that

consilio, florentissimis rebus, Helvetii reliquissent
counsel, in most-flourishing affairs, the Helvetii had left

(pl. perf. subj.) suas domos, ut inferrent
their houses, that they might bring-on

bellum toti Galliæ que potirentur imperio (abl.);
war to the whole Gaul and might gain empire;

que deligerent locum domicilio ex magnâ copiâ,
and might choose a place for abode out-of great plenty,

quem judicâssent opportunissimum ac
which they might have judged most convenient and

fructuosissimum ex omni Galliâ; que haberent
most-fruitful out-of all Gaul; and might have

reliquas civitates stipendiarias." Petierunt, ùti
the remaining states tributary." They asked, that

"liceret sibi indicere concilium
"*it might be-lawful to themselves to proclaim a council*

totius Galliæ in certam diem, que facere id
of whole Gaul upon a certain day, and to do that

voluntate Cæsaris. Sese habere quasdam res,
with will of Cæsar. Themselves to have certain things,

quas vellent (imp. subj.) petere ab eo è
which they did will to ask from him out-of

communi consensu." Eâ re permissâ,
common consent." That thing being permitted,

constituerunt diem concilio, et sanxerunt
they appointed a day for a council, and ratified

jurejurando inter se, ne quis
by oath *between* *themselves,* *(that) not* *any-one*

enuntiaret nĭsi quĭbus mandatum-esset (pl.
should divulge (it), *unless* *to whom* *it had been enjoined*

perf. subj.) communi consilĭo.
by common *consent.*

31. Eo concilĭo dimisso, iidem princĭpes
That *council* *being dismissed,* *the same* *chiefs*

civitatum, qui fuĕrant antè, reverterunt ad
of states, *who* *had been* *before,* *returned* *to*

Cæsărem; que petierunt, ŭtì "liceret
Cæsar; *and* *asked,* *that* "*it might be lawful*

sĭbi agĕre secretò cum ĕò de
to themselves *to act* (treat) *secretly* *with* *him* *about*

sŭâ salute que omnĭum." Eâ re
their *safety* *and* *(that) of all* *That* *thing*

impetratâ, omnes flentes projecerunt sese
being obtained, *all* *weeping* *cast* *themselves*

ad pĕdes Cæsări; "se non mĭnùs
at *the feet* *to (of) Cæsar;* "*themselves* *not* *less*

contendĕre et laborare id, ne ĕa
to strive-after *and* *to labour-for* *that,* *lest* *those (things)*

quæ dixissent (pl. perf. subj.) enuntiarentur,
which *they had said* *should be divulged,*

quàm ŭtì impetrarent ĕa, quæ
than *that* *they might obtain* *those (things),* *which*

vellent (imp. subj.); propterĕa quòd si enun-
they did will; *because* *that* *if* *it should*

tiatum-esset, viderent (imp. subj.) se
have been divulged, *they did see* *themselves*

venturos in summum cruciatum." Divitiăcus
about-to-come *into* *the highest* *torture."* *Divitiacus*

Ædŭus locutus-est pro his: "esse dŭas
the Æduan *spoke* *for* *these:* "*to be* *two*

factiones totius Gallĭæ; Ædŭos tenere
factions *of the whole* *Gaul;* *the Ædui* *to hold*

principatum alterĭus harum, Arvernos,
sovereignty *of the other* (one) *of these, the Arverni*

alterĭus. Quum hi contendĕrent (imp. subj.)
of the other. *When these did contend*

tantopĕre inter se de potentatu multos
so greatly between themselves about dominion many

annos, factum-esse, ŭtî Germani accerserentur
years, to have been done, that the Germans were sent-for

(imp. subj.) ab Arvernĭs que Sequănis mercede.
by the Arverni and Sequani by hire (as

Primò circĭter quindĕcim millĭa horum
mercenaries). *At first about fifteen thousands of these*

transîsse Rhenum; posteăquam fĕri ac
to have crossed the Rhine; after-that the wild and

barbări homĭnes adamâssent (pl. perf. subj.)
barbarous men had fallen-in-love-with

agros, et cultum, et copĭas Gallorum,
the lands, and cultivation, and stores of the Gauls,

plures transductos: nunc esse in Gallîâ
more (*to have been*) *led-over: now to be in Gaul*

ad numĕrum centum et viginti millĭum:
to the number of a hundred and twenty thousands:

Ædŭos, que clientes eorum, sĕmel
the Ædui, and clients (dependants) *of them, once*

atque itĕrum contendisse armis cum his;
and again to have contended in arms with these;

pulsos accepisse magnam calamitatem;
repulsed to have received a great calamity;

amisisse omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum,
to have lost all (*their*) *nobility, all the senate,*

omnem equitatum. Fractos quĭbus prœliis
all (*their*) *cavalry. Broken by which battles*

que calamitatĭbus, qui antè potuissent (pl.
and calamities, (*they*) *who before had been able*

perf. subj.) plurĭmum in Gallîâ, et sŭâ
most in Gaul, and (both) *by their-own*

virtute et hospitio atque amicitiâ
valour and by the alliance and friendship

Romani populi, coactos-esse dare obsides
of the Roman people, to have been forced to give hostages

Sequanis, nobilissimos civitatis, et obstringere
to the Sequani, the most-noble (men) of the state, and to bind

civitatem jurejurando, sese neque repetituros
the state by oath, themselves neither about-to-ask-back

obsides, neque imploraturos auxilium à
the hostages, nor about-to-implore aid from

Romano populo, neque recusaturos, quò
the Roman people, nor about-to-refuse, that

minùs-essent perpetuò sub ditione
they might not be perpetually under the dominion

atque imperio illorum. Se esse unum
and empire of them. Himself to be the only-one

ex omni civitate Æduorum, qui potuerit (perf.
out-of all the state of the Ædui, who has been able

subj.) non adduci ut juraret, aut
not to be brought that he should swear, or

darèt suos liberos obsides: ob eam rem
should give his children (as) hostages: for that thing

se profugisse ex civitate, et venisse
himself to have fled from the state, and to have come (to)

Romam ad Senatum postulatum auxilium, quòd
Rome to the Senate to request aid, because

solus teneretur (imp. subj.) neque jurejurando,
(he) alone was held neither by oath,

neque obsidibus. Sed accidisse pejus
nor by hostages. But to have happened worse

Sequanis victoribus, quàm Æduis victis:
to the Sequani conquerors, than to the Ædui conquered:

propterea quòd Ariovistus, rex Germanorum,
because that Ariovistus, king of the Germans,

consedisset (pl. perf. subj.) in finibus eorum,
had settled in the borders of them,

que occupavisset (pl. perf. subj.) tertiam partem
and had occupied the third part

Sequăni agri, qui esset (imp. subj.) optīmus
of the Sequanian land, which was the best

totius Gallĭæ; et nunc juberet (imp. subj.)
of the whole Gaul; and now did order

Sequănos decedĕre de altĕrâ tertiâ parte;
the Sequani to depart from the other third part;

propterĕa quòd, paucis mensĭbus (abl.) antè,
because that, a few months before,

viginti et quatŭor millĭa hominum Harudum
twenty and four thousands of men of Harudes

venissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad ĕum, quĭbus lŏcus
had come to him, to whom a place

et sedes pararentur: futurum-esse
and seats should be prepared: to-be-about-to-be

paucis annis, ŭtî omnes pellerentur è
in a few years, that all would be driven out-of

finĭbus Gallĭæ, atque omnes Germani
the borders of Gaul, and all the Germans

transirent Rhenum: ĕnim nĕque Gallĭcum
would pass the Rhine: for neither the Gallic (land)

esse conferendum cum agro
to be to be brought-together (compared) with the land

Germanorum, nĕque hanc consuetudĭnem victûs
of the Germans, nor this custom of sustenance

comparandam cum illâ. Autem Ariovistum,
(living) *to-be-compared with that. But Ariovistus,*

ut sĕmel vicĕrit (perf subj.) copĭas Gallorum
when once he conquered the forces of the Gauls

prœlĭo, quod prœlĭum factum-sit (perf. subj.)
in battle, which battle was made

Amagetobrĭæ (gen.), imperare superbè et
(*at*) *Amagetobria, to command proudly and*

crudelĭter, poscĕre lĭbĕros cujusque nobilissĭmi
cruelly, to require the children of every-one most-noble

obsĭdes, et ederĕ omnĭa exempla cruciatûs in
(as) *hostages, and to exhibit all examples of torture upon*

ĕos, si qua res facta-sit (perf. subj.) non ad nutum
them, if any thing has been done not at the nod

aut ad voluntatem ejus: homĭnem esse barbărum,
or at the will of him: the man to be barbarous,

iracundum, temerarĭum: imperĭa ejus non posse
irascible, rash: the commands of him not to be-able

sustineri diutĭùs: nisi quid auxilĭi sit
to be sustained longer: unless some (thing) of aid may be

in Cæsăre que Romano popŭlo, ĭdem esse
in Cæsar and the Roman people, the same to be

faciendum omnĭbus Gallis, quod Helvetĭi fecĕrant,
to-be-done to (by) *all the Gauls, which the Helvetii had done,*

ut emĭgrent dŏmo; pĕtant alĭud
that they may emigrate from home; they may seek another

domicilĭum, alĭas sedes remotas à Germanis, quæ
abode, other seats remote from the Germans, and

experiantur fortunam, quæcunque accĭdat. Si
may try fortune, whatsoever may happen. If

hæc enunciata-sint Ariovisto, non dubitare,
these (things) may have been told to Ariovistus, not to doubt,

quin sumat gravissĭmum supplicĭum de omnĭbus
but-that he may take the heaviest punishment of all

obsidĭbus, qui sint (pres. subj.) ăpud ĕum. Cæsărem,
the hostages, who are with him. Cæsar,

vel sŭâ auctoritate atque exercĭtûs, vel
either by his authority and (that) of (his) army, or

recenti victorĭâ, vel nomĭne Romani popŭli,
by (his) recent victory, or by the name of the Roman people,

posse deterrere, ne major multitudo Germanorum
to be-able to deter, lest a greater multitude of Germans

transducatur Rhenum, que posse defendĕre omnem
may be led-over Rhine, and to be able to defend all

Gallĭam ab injurĭâ Ariovisti.
Gaul from the injury of Ariovistus.

32. Hâc oratione habĭtâ à Divitiăco,
This speech being had (delivered) *by Divitiacus,*

omnes, qui adĕrant, cœperunt petĕre auxilĭum à
all, who were present, began to ask aid from

Cæsăre magno fletu. Cæsar animadvertit Sequănos
Cæsar with great weeping. Cæsar observes the Sequani

unos ex omnĭbus facĕre nĭhil earum rerum,
alone out-of all to do nothing of those things,

quas cætĕri facĕrent (imp. subj.); sed tristes, capĭte
which the rest did do; but sad, head

demisso, intueri terram. Miratus,
being cast-down, to look-upon the earth. Having wondered,

quæ esset caussa ejus rĕi, quæsivit ex
what might be the cause of that thing, he inquired from

ipsis. Sequăni respondêre nĭhil, sed
themselves. The Sequani answered nothing, but

permansêre tacĭti in eâdem tristitĭâ. Quum quærĕret
remained silent in the same sadness. When he did ask

(imp. subj.) sæpĭùs ab ĭis, nĕque posset (imp.
more-often from them, nor was-able

subj.) exprimĕre ullam vocem omnino;
to express (draw forth) *any voice at-all;*

idem Ædŭus Divitiăcus respondit, "Fortunam
the same Æduan Divitiacus answered, "The fortune

Sequanorum esse hôc miseriorem que graviorem,
of the Sequani to be by this more-wretched and more-heavy,

quàm reliquorum, quòd soli auderent (imp.
than of the rest, because (they) alone did dare

subj.) nec quĭdem quĕri in occulto,
neither indeed to complain in hidden (secretly),

nec implorare auxilĭum; que horrerent (imp. subj.)
nor to implore aid; and did dread

crudelitatem absentis Ariovisti, vĕlut si adesset
the cruelty of the absent Ariovistus, as if he was present

(imp. subj.) coràm; propterĕa quòd tămen
before (them); because that notwithstanding

facultas fŭgæ daretur (imp. subj.) relĭquis ;
an opportunity of flight was given to the rest ;

verò omnes cruciatus essent (imp. subj.) perferendi
but all tortures were to be endured

Sequănis, qui recepissent (pl. perf. subj.)
to (by) *the Sequani, who had received*

Ariovistum intra sŭos fines, omnĭa oppĭda quorum
Ariovistus within their borders, all the towns of whom

essent (imp. subj.) in potestate ejus."
were in the power of him."

33. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar confirmavit
These things being known, Cæsar confirmed (cheered)

animos Gallorum verbis, que pollicĭtus-est
the minds of the Gauls with words, and promised

"ĕam rem futuram curæ sĭbi : se
that thing about-to-be for a care to himself : himself

habere magnam spem, Ariovistum adductum sŭo
to have great hope, Ariovistus induced by his

beneficĭo et auctoritate, facturum finem
kindness and authority, about-to-make an end

injurĭis." Hâc oratione habĭtâ, dimisit
to injuries." This speech being had, he dismissed

concilĭum. Et secundùm ĕa multæ res
the council. And next-to those (things) *many things*

hortabantur ĕum, quare putaret ĕam rem
did exhort him, wherefore he should think that thing

cogitandum et suscipiendum sĭbi :
to be considered and to be undertaken to (by) *himself :*

imprimis, quòd videbat Ædŭos, sæpenumĕro
in-the-first, because he did see the Ædui, oftentimes

appellatos fratres que consanguinĕos ab
having been named brothers and kinsmen by

Senatu, teneri in servitute atque in ditione
the Senate, to be held in slavery and in dominion

Germanorum, que intelligebat obsĭdes
of the Germans, and he did understand the hostages

eorum esse ăpud Ariovistum ac Sequănos;
of them to be with Ariovistus and the Sequani;

quod, in tanto imperĭo Romani popŭli,
which, in so-great empire of the Roman people,

arbitrabatur esse turpissĭmum sĭbi et
he did deem to be most-disgraceful to himself and

reipublĭcæ. Autem Germanos consuescĕre
to the republic. But the Germans to be accustomed

paullatim transire Rhenum, et magnam
gradually to pass-over the Rhine, and a great

multitudĭnem eorum venire in Gallĭam, videbat
multitude of them to come into Gaul, he did see

periculosum Romano popŭlo: nĕque existimabat
dangerous to the Roman people: nor did he think

fĕros ac barbăros hŏmines temperaturos
wild and barbarous men about-to-moderate

sĭbi, quin, quum occupâssent
to themselves, but-that, when they had occupied

(pl. perf. subj.) omnem Gallĭam, ut Cimbri quæ
all Gaul, as the Cimbri and

Teutŏni fecissent (pl. perf. subj.) antè, exirent
Teutoni had done before, they would go-out

in Provincĭam, atque inde contendĕrent in
into the Province, and thence would proceed into

Italĭam; præsertim quum Rhodănus dividĕret (imp.
Italy; especially since the Rhone did divide

subj.) Sequănos à nostrâ provincĭâ. Quĭbus
the Sequani from our province. To which

rebus putabat occurrendum
things he did think to be met (he ought to prevent)

quàm-maturĭmè. Autem Ariovistus ipse sumsĕrat
as-early-as-possible. But Ariovistus himself had taken

sĭbi tantos spirĭtus, tantam arrogantĭam,
to himself so-great spirits (pride), *so-great arrogance,*

ut videretur (imp. subj.) non ferendus.
that he did seem not to be borne.

34. Quamŏbrem placŭit ĕi, ut mittĕret
Wherefore it pleased to him, that he should send

legatos ad Ariovistum, qui postularent ab
ambassadors to Ariovistus, who should demand from

ĕo, "ut deligĕret alĭquem lŏcum medĭum
him, "that he should choose some place middle

utriusque colloquĭo; sese velle agĕre
of each for a conference; himself to will to act (treat)

cum ĕo de Republĭcâ et summis rebus
with him about the Republic and the highest affairs

utriusque." Ariovistus respondit ĕi legationi: "Si
of each." Ariovistus answered to that embassy: "If

quid esset (imp. subj.) ŏpus ipsi à
any (thing) was needful to himself from

Cæsăre, sese fuisse venturum ad ĕum;
Cæsar, himself to have been about to-come to him;

si ille vĕlit (pres. subj.) quid à se,
if he wills any (thing) from himself,

oportere illum venire ad se: præterĕa, se
to behove him to come to himself. besides, himself

nĕque audere venire sĭne exercĭtu in ĕas
neither to dare to come without an army into those

partes Gallĭæ, quas Cæsar possideret (imp. subj.);
parts of Gaul, which Cæsar did possess;

nĕque posse contrahĕre exercĭtum in unum
nor to be able to draw-together an army into one

lŏcum sĭne magno commeatu atque molimento:
place without great provision and trouble·

autem videri mirum sĭbi, quid negotĭi
but to seem wonderful to himself, what of business

esset aut Cæsări aut omnino Romano
might be either to Cæsar or at-all to the Roman

popŭlo, in sŭâ Gallĭâ, quam vicisset (pl. perf.
people, in his Gaul, which he had conquered

subj.) bello.
in war.

35. His responsis relatis ad Cæsărem,
These answers being brought-back to Cæsar,

Cæsar itĕrum mittit legatos ad ĕum cum his
Cæsar again sends ambassadors to him with these

mandatis: "Quoniăm affectus tanto beneficĭo
commands: "Since being affected with so-great kindness

sŭo que Romani popŭli (quum
his own (Cæsar's) *and* (*that*) *of the Roman people* (*since*

appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) in sŭo consulatu rex
he had been named in his-own consulship king

atque amicus à Senatu,) referret (imp. subj.) hanc
and friend by the Senate,) *he did return this*

gratĭam sĭbi que Romano popŭlo, ut
gratitude to himself and to the Roman people, that

gravaretur invitatus venire in
he should be-reluctant (*though*) *invited to come into*

colloquĭum, nĕque putaret dicendum
a conference, nor should think (*it*) *to-be-spoken*

sĭbi et cognoscendum de communi
to (by) *himself and to-be-known concerning the common*

re; hæc esse, quæ postularet (imp. subj.)
thing; these to be, (*things*) *which he did demand*

ab ĕo: primùm, ne-transducĕret quam
from him: first, he should not-lead-over any

multitudĭnem homĭnum amplĭùs trans Rhenum in
multitude of men more over the Rhine into

Gallĭam: deinde reddĕret obsĭdes quos
Gaul: then he should restore the hostages which

haberet (imp. subj.) ab Ædŭis; que permittĕret
he did have from the Ædui; and should permit

Sequănis, ut liceret voluntate
to the Sequani, that it should be allowed by the will

ejus reddĕre illis quos illi
of him to restore to them (the Ædui) (*those*) *whom they*

haberent (imp. subj.); nève lacessĕret Æduos
did have; nor he should attack the Ædui

injurĭâ; nĕve inferret bellum his ve
by injury (unjustly); *nor should bring-on war to these, or*

sŏcĭis eorum; si fecisset id ĭtă,
to the allies of them; if he might have done that thus,

perpetŭam gratĭam atque amicĭtĭam futuram
perpetual favour and friendship about-to-be

sĭbi que Romano popŭlo cum ĕo. Si
to himself and to the Roman people with him. If

impetraret (imp. subj.) non, quonĭam, Marco Messalâ,
he did obtain (it) not, since, Marcus Messala,

Marco Pisone consulĭbus, Senatus censuisset
Marcus Piso (being) consuls, the Senate had resolved

(pl. perf. subj.) ŭtì quicunque obtineret Gallĭam
that whosoever should obtain Gaul

provincĭam, defendĕret Æduos que
(as a) province, should defend the Ædui and

cætĕros amicos Romani popŭli, quod
other friends of the Roman people, which (as far as)

posset facĕre commŏdo Reipublĭcæ,
he might be able to do to the advantage of the Republic,

se non neglecturum injurias Æduorum."
himself not about-to-neglect the injuries of the Ædui."

36. Ariovistus respondit ad hæc: "esse
Ariovistus answered to these (things): "to be

jus belli, ut qui vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
the right of war, that (they) who had conquered,

imperarent ĭis (dat.), quos vicissent (pl. perf. subj.),
should rule those, whom they had conquered,

quemadmŏdum vellent: itĭdem Romanum
as they might will: likewise the Roman

popŭlum consuêsse imperare victis (dat.)
people to have been accustomed to rule the conquered

non ad præscriptum alterĭus, sed ad sŭum
not at the prescription of another, but at their-own

arbitrĭum. Si ipse præscribĕret (imp. subj.)
will. If he (himself) did prescribe

non Romano populo, quemadmodum uteretur
not to the Roman people, how it should use

suo jure, non oportere se impediri
with its right, not to behove himself to be hindered

à Romano populo in suo jure: Æduos
by the Roman people in his right: the Æduі

factos-esse stipendarios sibi, quoniam
to have been made tributary to himself, since

tentâssent (pl. perf. subj.) fortunam belli, et
they had tried the fortune of war, and

congressi-essent (pl. perf. subj.) armis ac
had engaged in arms and (had been)

superati: Cæsarem facĕre magnam injuriam, qui
overcome: Cæsar to do great injury, who

suo adventu facĕret (imp. subj.) vectigalia deteriora
by his arrival did make the taxes worse

sibi: se esse non redditurum obsides
to him: himself to be not about-to-restore the hostages

Æduis; neque illaturum bellum injuriâ
to the Æduі; nor about-to-bring-on war by injury

iis, neque sociis eorum, si
(unjustly) *to them, nor to the allies of them if*

manerent in eo, quod convenisset (pl.
they should remain in that, which had been agreed-upon,

perf. subj.), que penderent stipendium quotannis:
and should weigh (pay) *tribute yearly:*

si fecissent non id, fraternum nomen
if they might have done not that, the fraternal name

Romani populi abfuturum longè ab
of the Roman people about-to-be-absent far from

his: quòd Cæsar denuntiaret (imp.
these (useless to them): *that Cæsar did declare*

subj.) sibi, se non neglecturum injurias
to him, himself not about-to-neglect the injuries

Æduorum, nemĭnem contendisse cum se
of the Æduі, no-one to have contended with himself,

sĭne sŭâ pernicĭe : congrederetur, quum
without his-own destruction : he might engage, when

vellet ; intellecturum, quid invicti
he might will ; about-to-understand, what the unconquered

Germani, exercitatissĭmi in armis, qui subîssent
Germans, most-exercised in arms, who had gone-under

(pl. perf. subj.) non tectum intra quatuordĕcim annos,
not a roof within fourteen years,

possent virtute.
might be able (to effect) by valour.

37. Eodem tempŏre hæc mandata
In (at) *the same time these charges*

referebantur Cæsări ; et legati veniebant
were brought-back to Cæsar ; and ambassadors did come

ab Ædŭis et Trevĭris : Ædŭi, questum,
from the Æduі and Treviri : the Æduі, (came) to complain,

quòd "Harudes, qui nuper transportati-essent (pl.
that "the Harudes, who lately had been carried-over

perf. subj.) in Gallĭam, popularentur (imp. subj.)
into Gaul, did lay-waste

fines eorum ; sese potuisse redimĕre
the borders of them ; themselves to have been-able to purchase

pacem Ariovisti, ne quĭdem obsidĭbus
peace of Ariovistus, not indeed (even) *hostages*

dătis." Autem Trevĭri, "centum pagos
being given." But the Treviri, "a hundred districts

Suevorum consedisse ad ripam Rheni, qui
of the Suevi to have settled at the bank of the Rhine, who

conarentur (imp. subj.) transire Rhenum ; fratres
did endeavour to pass-over the Rhine ; the brothers

Nasŭam et Cimbĕrium præesse ĭis (dat.)" Quĭbus
Nasua and Cimberius to be-over these." By which

rebus Cæsar commotus vehementer
things Cæsar being moved violently (strongly impressed)

existimavit maturandum sĭbi, ne, si nŏva mănus
thought to-be-hastened to (by) *himself, lest, if a new band*

Suevorum conjunxisset (pl. perf. subj.) sese cum
of the Suevi *had joined* *itself* *with*

veterĭbus copĭis Ariovisti, posset mĭnùs
the old *forces* *of Ariovistus,* *it might be-able* *less*

facĭlè resisti. Ităque, frumentarĭâ re
easily *to be withstood.* *Therefore,* *corn* *affair*

comparatâ, quàm-celerrĭmè potŭit,
(provisions) *being procured,* *as-quickly-as* *he could,*

contendit magnis itinerĭbus ad Ariovistum.
he hastened *by great* *journies* *to* *Ariovistus.*

38. Quum jam processisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When *now* *he had proceeded*

vĭam tridŭi, nuntiatum-est ĕi,
a way (journey) *of three days,* *it was told* *to him,*

Ariovistum cum omnĭbus sŭis copĭis contendĕre ad
Ariovistus *with* *all* *his* *forces* *to hasten* *to*

occupandum Vescontionem, quod est maxĭmum
occupy *Vesontio,* *which* *is* *the greatest*

oppĭdum Sequanorum, que processisse vĭam
town *of the Sequani,* *and* *to have proceeded* *a way*

tridŭi à sŭis finĭbus. Cæsar
(journey) *of three days* *from* *his* *borders.* *Cæsar*

existimabat præcavendum sĭbi magnopĕre, ne
did think *o be provided* *to* (by) *himself* *greatly,* *lest*

id acciděret: namque ĕrat summa facultas
that *should happen:* *for* *there was* *the highest* *means*

in ĕo oppĭdo omnĭum rerum, quæ ĕrant usŭi ad
in that *town* *of all* *things,* *which* *were* *for use* *to*

bellum, que id muniebatur sic naturâ
war, *and* *that* *was fortified* *so* *by the nature*

lŏci, ut dăret (imp. subj.) magnam facultatem
of the place, *that* *it did give* *great* *means*

ad ducendum bellum; propterĕa quòd flumen
to *lead* (protract) *the war;* *because* *that* *the river*

Dubis, ut circumductum circĭno, cingit
Dubis (Doux), *as* (*if*) *led-around* *by a compass,* *girds*

penè totum oppĭdum; reliquum spatĭum, quod
almost the whole town; the remaining space, which

est non amplĭus sexcentorum pĕdum,
is not more (than the space) of six-hundred feet.

quà flumen intermittit, mons contĭnet,
where the river intermits (discontinues), a mountain contains,

magnâ altitudĭne, ĭta ut radices ejus montis
with (of) great height, so that the roots of that mountain

contingant (pres. subj.) ripæ flumĭnis ex
reach to the bank of the river out-of (on)

utrâque parte. Murus circumdătus efficit hunc
each part. A wall thrown-around makes this

arcem et conjungit cum oppĭdo.
(mountain) a citadel and joins (it) with the town.

Huc Cæsar contendit magnis diurnis que nocturnis
Hither Cæsar hastens by great diurnal and nocturnal

itinerĭbus, que oppĭdo occupato, collocat
journies, and the town being occupied, he places

præsidĭum ĭbi.
a garrison there.

39. Dum moratur paucos dĭes ad Vescontionem
Whilst he delays a few days at Vescontio

caussâ frumentarĭæ rĕi que commeatûs,
by cause (for the sake) of corn affair and of provision,

ex percunctatione nostrorum que vocĭbus
out-of the inquiry of our (men) and the expressions

Gallorum et mercatorum (qui prædicabant
of the Gauls and of the merchants (who did proclaim

"Germanos esse ingenti magnitudĭne corpŏrum,
"the Germani to be with (of) vast size of bodies,

incredibĭli virtute atque exercitatione in armis,
with (of) incredible valour and exercise in arms,

sese sæpenumĕro congressos cum ĭis,
themselves oftentimes having engaged with them

potuisse ne quĭdem ferre vultum atque
to have been-able not indeed (even) to bear the look and

aciem oculorum,") tantus timor subitò
eaye (glance) *of* (*their*) *eyes,*") *so great fear suddenly*

occupavit omnem exercitum, ut perturbaret (imp.
occupied all the army, that it did disturb

subj.) non mediocriter mentes que animos omnium.
not moderately the minds and spirits of all.

Hic primùm ortus-est à tribunis militum,
This (*fear*) *first arose from the tribunes of soldiers,*

ac præfectis, que reliquis, qui caussâ
and prefects, and remaining (*persons*), *who by cause*

amicitiæ secuti Cæsarem
(for the sake) *of friendship having followed Cæsar*

ex urbe, miserebantur magnum periculum,
out-of the city, did deplore the great danger,

quòd habebant non magnum usum in
because they did have not great experience in

militari re: quorum alius, aliâ caussâ
military affair: of whom another, another cause

illatâ, quam dicĕret (imp. subj.) esse
being brought (alleged), *which he did say to be*

necessariam sibi ad proficiscendum, petebat, ut
necessary to himself to set-out, did ask, that

liceret discedĕre voluntate ejus: nonnulli
it might be-allowed to depart by the will of him: some

adducti pudore, ut vitarent suspicionem
induced by shame, that they might avoid the suspicion

timoris, remanebant. Hi potĕrant nĕque fingĕre
of fear, did remain. These were able neither to feign

vultum nĕque interdum tenere lacrymas; abditi
countenance nor sometimes to hold tears; hidden

in tabernaculis, aut querebantur suum
in tents, either they did complain-of their-own

fatum, aut cum suis familiaribus miserebantur
fate, or with their intimates did deplore (*their*)

commune periculum. Vulgò testamenta obsignabantur
common danger. Generally wills were sealed

totis castris (pl.). Vocĭbus ac timore horum
in the whole camp. By words and fear of these

paullatim etĭam ĭi, qui habebant magnum usum
gradually also they, who did have great experience

in castris (pl.), militĕs que centuriones, que qui
in camp, soldiers and centurions, and those who

præĕrant equitatŭi, perturbabantur. Qui ex
were-over to the cavalry, were disturbed. (They) who of

his volebant se existimari mĭnùs timĭdos,
these did will themselves to be thought less fearful,

dicebant se non vereri hostem, sed timere
did say themselves not to dread the enemy, but to fear

angustĭas ĭtinĕris et magnitudĭnem sylvarum,
the straits of the journey and the greatness of the woods,

quæ intercedĕrent (imp. subj.) inter ĕos et
which did intervene between them and

Ariovistum, aut frumentarĭam rem, ut
Ariovistus, or the corn affair (supply), *that*

posset commŏdè sătis supportari.
it might be-able (not) conveniently enough to be carried-up.

Etĭam nonnulli renuntiabant Cæsări, cùm
Also some did relate to Cæsar, when

jussisset (pl. perf. subj.) castra (pl.) moveri, ac
he had ordered camp to be moved, and

signa ferri, militĕs non fŏre
the standards to be borne, the soldiers not to be-about-to-be

audientes dicto, nĕque laturos
hearing (obedient) *to word, nor about-to-bear*

signa propter timorem.
the standards on-account-of fear.

40. Quum Cæsar animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.)
When Cæsar had observed

hæc, concilĭo convocato, que
these (things), a council being called together, and

centurionĭbus omnĭum ordĭnum adhibĭtis ad
the centurions of all ranks being admitted to

id concilĭum, incusavit ĕos vehementer; primùm,
that council, he blamed them vehemently; first,

quòd putarent (imp. subj.) quærendum aut
that they did think to-be-inquired or

cogitandum sĭbi, aut in quam
to-be-considered to (by) *themselves, either into what*

partem, aut quo consilĭo ducerentur (imp. subj.).
part, or with what design they were led.

Ariovistum, se consŭle, cupidissĭmè
Ariovistus, himself (*being*) *consul, most-eagerly*

appetîsse amicitĭam Romani popŭli: cur
to have sought the friendship of the Roman people: why

quisquam judicaret hunc discessurum tam
any-one should judge this (*man*) *about-to-depart so*

temĕrè ab officĭo? Quĭdem persuaderi sĭbi,
rashly from duty? Indeed to be persuaded to himself,

sŭis postulatis cognĭtis, atque æquitate con-
his demands being known, and the equity of the

ditionum perspectâ, ĕum nĕque repudiaturum
conditions being clearly-seen, him neither about-to-reject

sŭam gratĭam nĕque Romani popŭli: quòd
his favour nor (*that*) *of the Roman people: but*

si, impulsus furore atque amentĭâ, intu-
if, impelled by rage and by madness, he might have

lisset bellum, quid tandem vererentur?
brought-on war, what at length should they fear?

aut cur desperarent de suâ
or why should they despair concerning their-own

virtute, aut de diligentĭâ ipsius?
valour, or concerning the diligence of himself (Cæsar)?

Periculum ejus hostis factum me-
Danger (trial) *of that enemy* (*was*) *made in the me-*

morĭâ nostrorum patrum, quum, Cimbris et
mory of our fathers, when, the Cimbri and

Teutŏnis pulsis à Caio Marĭo, exercĭtus
Teutoni being routed by Caius Marius, the army

videbatur meritus non minorem laudem, quàm
did seem having deserved not less praise, than

imperator ipse: etiam factum nuper in
the general himself: also (it was) made lately in

Italiâ, servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquis
Italy, in the servile commotion, whom however some

usus ac disciplina, quam accepissent
experience and discipline, which they had received

(pl. perf. subj.) à nobis, sublevarent. Ex quo
from us, did assist. From which

posset (imp. subj.) judicari, quantum boni
it was able to be judged, how-much of good

constantia haberet (imp. subj.) in se; propterea
firmness did have in itself; because

quòd quos aliquandiu timuissent (pl. perf.
that (those) whom some-while they had feared

subj.) sine caussâ inermes, superâssent (pl.
without cause unarmed, they had conquered,

perf. subj.), hos postea armatos ac victores.
these afterwards armed and conquerors.

Denique, hos esse Germanos cum quibus
Lastly, these to be the Germani with whom

Helvetii sæpenumero congressi non solùm
the Helvetii oftentimes having engaged not only

in suis, sed etiam in finibus illorum
in their-own, but also in the borders of them

plerumque superâssent (pl. perf. subj.); qui tamen
generally had overcome; who notwithstanding

potuerint (perf. subj.) non esse pares nostro
have been able not to be equal to our

exercitui. Si adversum prœlium et fuga Gallorum
army. If the adverse battle and flight of the Gauls

commoveret quos, hos posse reperire,
might move (affect) any, these to-be-able to find,

si quærerent (imp. subj.), Gallis defatigatis
if they did inquire. the Gauls being wearied

diuturnitate belli, Ariovistum, quum
by the long-continuance of the war, Ariovistus, when

continuisset (pl. perf. subj.) se multos menses
he had kept himself many months

castris ac paludĭbus, nĕque fecisset (pl. perf. subj.)
in camps and marshes, nor had made

potestatem sŭi, adortum
power of himself (given opportunity), *having attacked*

subĭtò jam desperantes de pugnâ et
suddenly (those) *now despairing of battle and*

dispersos, vicisse măgis ratione
scattered, to have conquered more by reason (plan)

ac consilĭo quàm virtute: cui rationi
and by counsel than by valour: for which reason

lŏcus fuisset contra barbăros atque
(plan) *place might have been against barbarous and*

imperitos homĭnes: hâc ne quĭdem
unskilled men: by this (plan) *not indeed* (even)

ipsum sperare nostros exercĭtus posse càpi.
himself to hope our armies to be able to be taken.

Qui conferrent (imp. subj.) sŭum timorem in
(*They*) *who did confer* (attribute) *their fear upon*

simulationem frumentarĭæ rĕi que angustias
pretence of corn affair and the straits

itinĕrum, facĕre arroganter, quùm
of the journeys, to do assumingly, when (since)

viderentur (imp. subj.) aut desperare de officio
they did seem either to despair of the duty

imperatoris, aut præscribĕre ĕi: hæc
of the commander, or to prescribe to him: these (*things*)

esse curæ sĭbi; Sequănos, Leucos,
to be for a care to himself; the Sequani, Leuci,

Lingŏnes subministrare frumentum; que jam
Lingones to supply corn; and now

frumenta (pl.) esse matura in agris. De itinĕre
corn to be ripe in the lands. Of the journey

ipsos judicaturos brĕvi tempŏre. Quòd
themselves about-to-judge in a short time. That

milites dicantur (pres. subj.) non fŏre
the soldiers are said not to be-about-to-be

audientes dicto, nĕque laturi
hearing to word (obedient to command), *nor about-to-bear*

signa, se commoveri
the standards (about to advance), *himself to be moved*

nihil ĕâ re; enim scire, quibuscunque
nothing by that thing; for to know (he knew), *to whomsoever*

exercitus fuĕrit (perf. subj.) non audĭens dicto,
an army has been not hearing to word (obedient),

aut, re gestâ mălè, fortunam
either, an affair being carried-on ill, fortune

defuisse; aut alĭquo facinŏre comperto,
to have failed; or some crime being found-out,

avaritĭam convictam-esse: sŭam innocentĭam
(their) avarice to have been proved: his innocence

perpetŭâ vitâ, felicitatem bello Helvetiorum
in perpetual life, success in the war of the Helvetii

perspectam-esse. Ităque, se præ-
to have been clearly-seen. Therefore, himself about-to-

sentaturum quod esset (imp. subj.)
do-presently (that) which he was (otherwise)

collaturus in longiorem dĭem; et
about-to-confer (defer) *into a more-distant day; and*

proximâ nocte de quartâ vigiliâ
in the nearest (next) *night from* (at) *the fourth watch*

moturum castra (pl.), ut quam primùm
about-to-move the camp, that as soonest

posset intelligĕre,
(as soon as possible) *he might be-able to understand,*

utrùm pŭdor atque officĭum, an tĭmor valeret
whether shame and duty, or fear might prevail

plùs ăpud ĕos. Quòd si nemo præterĕa sequatur
more with them. But if no-one beside follow,

(pres. subj.), tămen se iturum cum decĭmâ
yet himself about-to-go with the tenth

legione solâ, de quâ dubitaret (imp. subj.) non;
legion alone, of which he did doubt not;

que ĕam futuram Prætorĭam cohortem sĭbi."
and that about-to-be a Prætorian cohort to himself."

Cæsar et indulsĕrat præcipŭè huic legioni et
Cæsar both had indulged especially to this legion and

confidebat maxĭmè propter virtutem.
did trust chiefly on-account-of (its) valour.

41. Hâc oratione habĭtâ, mentes omnĭum
This speech being had, the minds of all

conversæ-sunt in mirum mŏdum, que
were changed into (in) a wonderful manner, and

summa alacrĭtas et cupidĭtas belli gerendi
the highest alacrity and eagerness of war to be carried-on

innata-est: que decĭma legĭo prĭnceps
was born-in (inspired): and the tenth legion first

egit gratĭas ĕi per Tribunos
acted (returned) thanks to him through the Tribunes

milĭtum, quòd fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) optĭmum
of soldiers, that he had made the best

judicĭum de se, que confirmavit se esse
judgment of itself, and confirmed itself to be

paratissĭmam ad bellum gerendum. Inde
most-prepared to war to be carried on. Then

relĭquæ legiones egerunt per Tribunos
the remaining legions acted through the Tribunes

milĭtum et centuriones primorum ordĭnum, ŭtì
of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks, that

satisfacĕrent Cæsări; "se nĕque unquam
they might satisfy to Cæsar; "themselves neither ever

dubitâsse, nĕque timuisse, nĕque existimavisse
to have doubted, nor to have feared, nor to have thought

judicĭum de summâ belli esse
the judgment of the sum (highest concerns) of war to be

sŭum sed imperatoris."
their-own (appertaining to them) *but of the commander."*

Satisfactione eorum acceptâ, et itinĕre
The satisfaction of them being received, and the journey

exquisito per Divitĭăcum, (quòd habebat
being reconnoitred by Divitiacus, (because he did have

maxĭmam fĭdem ĕi ex alĭis Gallis) ut
greatest faith to him out-of the other Gauls) that

ducĕret exercĭtum apertis lŏcis, circuĭtu
he might lead the army in the open places, by a circuit

amplĭus quadraginta millĭum, profectus-est de
of more (than) forty miles, he set-out from (at)

quartâ vigilĭâ, ŭtì dixĕrat. Septĭmo dĭe,
the fourth watch, as he had said. On the seventh day,

quum intermittĕret (imp. subj.) non ĭter,
when he did intermit not the journey,

factus-est certĭor ab exploratorĭbus, copĭas
he was made more-certain by scouts, the forces

Ariovisti abesse à nostris quatŭor et
of Ariovistus to be-distant from our (forces) four and

viginti millĭbus (abl.) passŭum.
twenty thousands of paces.

42. Adventu Cæsăris cognĭto, Ariovistus
The arrival of Cæsar being known Ariovistus

mittit legatos ad ĕum; "id licere
sends ambassadors to him; "that to be-lawful

fiĕri per se, quod antĕa postulâsset
to be done by himself, which before he had demanded

(pl. perf. subj.) de colloquĭo, quoniam
concerning a conference, since

accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) propĭùs; que existimaret
he had approached nearer; and he did think

(imp. subj.) se posse facĕre id sine
himself to be able to do that without

periculo." Cæsar respŭit non conditionem, que
danger." Cæsar rejected not the condition, and

arbitrabatur cum jam reverti ad sanitatem, quum
did imagine him now to return to soundness (reason), *when*

polliceretur (imp. subj.) ultrò id, quod
he did promise *spontaneously that, which*

antĕa denegâsset (pl. perf. subj.) petenti;
before he had denied *to (him) asking;*

que veniebat in magnam spem, pro sŭis
and he did come into great hope, for his

tantis beneficĭis que Romani popŭli
so-great benefits and (those) of the Roman people

in eum, sŭis postulatis cognĭtis, fŏre
towards him, his demands being known, to be-about-to-be

ŭtî desistĕret pertinacîâ. Quintus dies
that he would desist from obstinacy. The fifth day

ex ĕo dĭe dictus-est colloquĭo.
from that day was said (appointed) *for the conference.*

Intĕrim, quum legati mitterentur (imp. subj.)
Meanwhile, when ambassadors were sent

sæpe ultrò que citro inter ĕos, Ariovistus
often thither and hither between them, Ariovistus

postulavit; "Cæsar ne-adducĕret quem pedĭtem
requested; "*Cæsar should not-lead-up any foot-soldier*

ad colloquĭum, se vereri ne circum-
to the conference, himself to dread lest he should

veniretur ab ĕo per insidĭas (pl.): uterque
be circumvented by him by ambush: each

veniret cum equitatu, alĭâ ratione se
should come with cavalry, in other method himself

esse non venturum." Cæsar, quòd volebat
to be not about-to-come." Cæsar, because he did will

nĕque colloquĭum tolli, caussâ
neither the conference to be taken-away, cause

interpositâ; nĕque audebat committĕre, sŭam
being interposed; nor did dare to commit his

salutem equitatu (*for* equitatŭi) Gallorum; statŭit
safety to the cavalry of the Gauls; determined

esse commodissĭmum, omnĭbus Gallis equitĭbus
to be most-convenient, all the Gallic horsemen

detractis ĕquis, imponĕre ĕò
being withdrawn from the horses, to set-on there (them)

legionarĭos milĭtes decĭmæ legionis, cui
the legionary soldiers of the tenth legion, to which

confidebat quàm-maxĭmè; ut haberet
he did confide as-much-as-possible; that he might have

quàm-amicissĭmum præsidĭum, si quid ŏpus
as-friendly-as-possible guard, if any need

esset facto (abl.). Quum quod fiĕret (imp. subj.),
should be of deed. When which was done,

quidam ex militĭbus decĭmæ legionis
a certain-one of the soldiers of the tenth legion

dixit non irridicŭlè, "Cæsărem facĕre plus quàm
said not unwittily, "Cæsar to do more than

pollicĭtus-esset (pl. perf. subj.); pollicĭtum habi-
he had promised; having promised about-

turum decĭmam legionem in lŏco prætorĭæ
to-have the tenth legion in place of a prætorian

cohortis; nunc rescribĕre ad ĕquum."
cohort; now to write to a horse (that he now en-

rolled them with the horse)."

43. Erat magna planitĭes et in ĕâ terrĕus
(*There*) *was a great plain and in it an earthy*

tumŭlus sătis grandis. Hic lŏcus abĕrat
hillock sufficiently large. This place was distant

spatĭo fĕrè æquo ab utrisque castris (pl.).
by a space nearly equal from each camp.

Eò, ut dictum-ĕrat, venerunt ad
Thither, as had been said (appointed), *they came to*

colloquĭum. Cæsar constitŭit legionem, quam
the conference. Cæsar arranged the legion, which

devexĕrat ĕquis, ducentis passĭbus (abl.)
he had carried-down with horses, two-hundred paces

ab ĕo tumŭlo: que ĭtem equĭtes
from that hillock: and likewise the horsemen

Ariovisti constiterunt părі intervallo.
of Ariovistus stood with equal interval.

Ariovistus postulavit, ut colloquerentur ex
Ariovistus demanded, that they should converse from

ĕquis et ut adducĕrent denos præter
horses and that they should lead-up ten besides

se ad colloquĭum. Ubi ventum-est ĕò,
themselves to the conference. When it was come thither,

Cæsar, initĭo orationis, commemoravit
Cæsar, in the beginning of (his) speech, recounted

sŭa que beneficĭa Senatûs in ĕum,
his-own and the benefits of the Senate towards him,

"quòd appellatus-esset (pl. perf. subj.) rex à
"*that he had been called king by*

Senatu, quòd amicus, quòd
the Senate, that (he had been called) a friend, that

amplissĭma muněra missa; quam rem,"
most-ample gifts (had been) sent; which thing,"

docebat, "et contigisse
he did teach (he informed him), "*both to have happened*

paucis, et consuevisse tribŭi à
to few, and to have been accustomed to be granted by

Romanis pro maxĭmis officĭis homĭnum;
the Romans for the greatest services of men;

illum, quum haberet (imp. subj.) něque adĭtum,
him, when he did have neither access,

něque justam caussam postulandi, beneficĭo
nor just cause of demanding, by (his) bounty

ac sŭâ liberalitate ac Senatûs,
and by his liberality and (that) of the Senate,

consecutum ĕa præmĭa." Docebat
having obtained those rewards (honours)." *He did teach*

etĭam, "quàm vetĕres, que quàm justæ
(inform him) *also, "how old, and how just*

caussæ necessitudĭnis intercedĕrent (imp. subj.)
causes *of close-alliance* *did intervene* (subsist)

ipsis cum Æduis; quæ consulta Senatûs,
to themselves *with* *the Ædui;* *what* *decrees* *of the Senate,*

quotĭes, que quàm honorifica facta-essent (pl.
how often, *and* *how* *honourable* *had been made*

perf. subj.) in ĕos; ut omni tempŏre,
towards *them;* *that* *in all* *time,*

Æduĭ tenuissent (pl. perf. subj.) principatum
Ædui *had held* *supremacy*

totius Gallĭæ, etĭam prĭusquàm
of the whole *Gaul,* *also* (even) *before-that*

appetîssent (pl. perf. subj.) nostram amicitĭam:
they had sought *our* *friendship:*

hanc esse consuetudĭnem Romani popŭli,
this *to be* *the custom* *of the Roman* *people,*

ut vĕlit socĭos atque amicos non
that *it may will* (its) *allies* *and* *friends* *not*

mŏdò deperdĕre nĭhil sŭi, sed esse
only *to lose* *nothing* *of their-own,* *but* *to be*

auctos gratĭâ, dignitate, honore: verò
increased *in favour,* *in dignity,* *in honour:* *but*

quis posset păti id eripi
who *would be able* *to suffer* *that* *to be snatched*

ĭis (dat.), quod attulissent (pl. perf. subj.) ad
from them, *which* *they had brought* *to*

amicitĭam Romani popŭli?" Deinde
the friendship *of the Roman* *people?"* *Afterwards*

postulavit eădem, quæ dedĕrat in
he demanded *the same* (*things*), *which* *he had given* *in*

mandatis legatis "ne-inferret
charges *to ambassadors* "*that-he-should-not-bring-on*

bellum aut Æduis, aut socĭis eorum;
war *either* *to the Ædui,* *or* *to the allies* *of them;*

redderet obsĭdes; si posset (imp. subj.)
he should restore *the hostages;* *if* *he was able*

remittĕre dŏmum nullam partem Germanorum;
to send-back home no part of the Germans;

at ne-pateretur quos amplĭùs transire
but that-he-should-not-suffer any more to pass

Rhenum."
the Rhine."

44. Ariovistus respondit pauca ad postulata
Ariovistus answered few (things) to the demands

Cæsăris: prædicavit multa de sŭis virtutĭbus;
of Cæsar: declaimed many (things) of his-own virtues;

sese transîsse Rhenum non sŭâ sponte,
himself to have passed the Rhine not by his-own accord,

sed rogatum et accersitum à Gallis: reliquisse
but asked and sent-for by the Gauls: to have left

dŏmum que propinquos non sĭne magnâ spe
home and relations not without great hope

que magnis præmĭis: habere sedes in Gallĭâ
and great rewards: to have settlements in Gaul

concessas ab ipsis, obsĭdes dătos voluntate
granted by themselves, hostages given by the will

eorum; capĕre stipendĭum jure belli, quod
of them; to take tribute by right of war, which

victores consuevĕrint (perf. subj.) imponĕre
conquerors have been accustomed to impose

victis; se non intulisse bellum
to the conquered; himself not to have brought-on war

Gallis, sed Gallos sĭbi; omnes civitates
to the Gauls, but the Gauls to himself; all the states

Gallĭæ venisse ad oppugnandum se, ac
of Gaul to have come to to oppose himself, and

habuisse castra contra se; omnes ĕas copĭas
to have had camps against himself; all those forces

fusas-esse ac superatas abs se uno
to have been routed and overcome by himself in one

prœlĭo. Si vĕlint (pres. subj.) experiri ĭtĕrum,
battle. If they will to try again,

se paratum decertare: sin malint (pres.
himself prepared to contend: but-if they will-rather

subj.) uti pace (abl.), esse iniquum recusare
to use peace, to be unjust to refuse

de stipendĭo, quod pependĕrint (perf.
(complain) *about the tribute, which they payed*

subj.) sŭâ voluntate ad id tempus?
by their own will at that time:

oportere amicitĭam Romani popŭli esse
to behove the friendship of the Roman people to be

ornamento et præsidĭo sĭbi, non
for an ornament and guard to himself, not

detrimento; que se petîsse id ĕâ
for detriment; and himself to have sought it in that

spe. Si stipendĭum remittatur (pres. subj.) per
hope. If the tribute be remitted by

Romanum popŭlum, et deditĭtĭi subtrahantur
the Roman people, and the surrendered be withdrawn,

(pres. subj.), sese recusaturum non mĭnùs libenter
himself about-to-refuse not less willingly

amicitĭam Romani popŭli, quàm appetîerit
the friendship of the Roman people, than he sought (it).

(perf. subj.). Quòd transducat (pres. subj.) multitudĭnem
That he leads-over a multitude

Germanorum in Gallĭam, se facĕre id
of the Germani into Gaul, himself to do that

caussâ sŭi muniendi, non Gallĭæ
for the sake of himself to-be-fortified, not of Gaul

impugnandæ: esse testimonĭum ejus
to be fought-against: to be a testimony (proof) of that

rĕi quòd venĕrit (perf. subj.) non nĭsi
thing that he came not unless (until)

rogatus, et quòd intulĕrit (perf. subj.) non
asked, and that he has brought-on not

bellum, sed defendĕrit (perf. subj.): se venisse
war, but has defended (himself): himself to have come

in Gallĭam prĭùs quàm Romanum popŭlum.
into Gaul before than the Roman people.

Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercĭtum Romani
Never before this time an army of the Roman

popŭli egressum fines provincĭæ
people (to have) gone-out-of the borders of the province

Gallĭæ: quid vellet (imp. subj.) sĭbi? cur
of Gaul: what did he will to himself? why

veniret (imp. subj.) in sŭas possessiones? hanc
did he come into his possessions? this

Gallĭam esse sŭam provincĭam, sicŭti illam nostram:
Gaul to be his province, as that our:

ut oporteret (imp. subj.) non concedi sĭbi,
as it did behove (it ought) not to be conceded to himself,

si facĕret impĕtum in nostros fines; sic
if he should make an attack upon our borders; so

itĕrum, nos esse iniquos, quòd interpellaremus
again, us to be unjust, because we did interrupt

(imp. subj.) se in sŭo jure: quòd dicĕret
himself in his right: that he did say

(imp. subj.) Ædŭos appellatos amicos ex consulto
the Ædui named friends from a decree

Senatûs, se esse non tam barbărum, nĕque
of the Senate, himself to be not so barbarous, nor

tam imperitum rerum, ut sciret (imp. subj.)
so inexperienced of things, that he did know

non, Ædŭos nĕque tulisse auxilĭum
not. the Ædui neither to have brought aid

Romanis proxĭmo bello Allobrŏgum,
to the Romans in the nearest (latest) war of the Allobroges,

nĕque ipsos in his contentionĭbus, quas
nor themselves in these contentions, which

Ædŭi habuissent (pl. perf. subj.) cum se et
the Ædui had had with himself and

cum Sequănis, usos-esse auxilĭo (abl.) Romani
with the Sequani, to have-used the aid of the Roman

popŭli: se debere suspicari, amicitiâ
people: himself to owe (ought) *to suspect, friendship*

simulatâ, Cæsărem, quòd habĕat (pres. subj.)
being pretended, Cæsar, because he has

exercĭtum in Gallîâ, habere caussâ sŭi
an army in Gaul, to have (it) *for the sake of himself*

opprimendi: quòd nĭsi decedat (pres. subj.) aut
to-be-oppressed: that unless he depart or

deducat (pres. subj.) exercĭtum ex his regionĭbus,
lead-away (*his*) *army from these regions,*

sese habiturum illum non pro amico, sed
himself about-to-have him not for a friend, but

pro hoste: quòd si interfecĕrit (perf. subj.) ĕum,
for an enemy: that if he killed him,

sese esse facturum gratum multis
himself to be about-to-do a grateful (*thing*) *to many*

nobilĭbus que principĭbus Romani popŭli:
nobles and chiefs of the Roman people:

se habere id compertum ab ipsis
himself to have that found-out from themselves

per nuntĭos eorum; gratĭam atque amicitĭam
by messengers of them; the favour and friendship

omnĭum quorum posset (imp. subj.) rediměre
of all of whom he was-able to purchase

morte ejus: quòd si discessisset (pl. perf. subj.)
by the death of him: that if he had departed

ac tradidisset (pl. perf. subj.) libĕram possessionem
and had delivered free possession

Gallĭæ sĭbi, se remuneraturum illum
of Gaul to himself, himself about-to-remunerate him

magno præmĭo, et confecturum, quæcunque
with great reward, and about-to-dispatch, whatever

bella vellet (imp. subj.) gĕri sĭne ullo
wars he did will to be carried-on without any

labore et periculo ejus.
labour and danger of him.

45. Multa dicta-sunt à Cæsăre in ĕam
Many (things) were said by Cæsar upon that

sententĭam, quare posset (imp. subj.) non
opinion; wherefore he was-able not

desistĕre negotĭo, et nĕque sŭam nĕque
to desist from the business, and neither his nor

consuetudĭnem Romani popŭli păti, ŭtî
the custom of the Roman people to suffer, that

deserĕret socĭos meritos optĭmè; nĕque
he should desert allies having deserved best; nor

se judicare Gallĭam esse potĭùs
himself to judge Gaul to be rather (the property)

Ariovisti, quàm Romani popŭli. Arvernos
of Ariovistus, than of the Roman people. The Arverni

et Rutenos superatos-esse bello à Quinto
and Ruteni to have been overcome in war by Quintus

Fabĭo Maxĭmo; quĭbus Romanus popŭlus
Fabius Maximus; to whom the Roman people

ignovisset (pl. perf. subj.), nĕque redegisset (pl. perf.
had pardoned, nor had reduced (them)

subj.) in provincĭam nĕque imposuisset (pl. perf.
into a province nor had imposed

subj.) stipendĭum: quòd si oporteret (imp. subj.)
tribute: that if it did behove

quodque antiquissĭmum tempus spectari, imperĭum
every most-ancient time to be regarded, the empire

Romani popŭli in Gallĭâ esse justissĭmum; si
of the Roman people in Gaul to be most-just; if

oporteret (imp. subj.) judicĭum Senatûs
it did behove the judgment of the Senate

servari, Gallĭam debere esse lĭbĕram,
to be kept, Gaul to owe (ought) to be free.

quam victam bello voluisset (pl. perf.
which (though) conquered in war it had willed

subj.) uti sŭis legĭbus" (abl.).
to use its-own laws."

46. Dum hæc geruntur in collo-
Whilst these (things) are carried-on in the confe-

quĭo, nuntiatum-est Cæsări, equĭtes Ariovisti
rence, it was-told to Cæsar, the horsemen of Ariovistus

accedĕre propĭùs tumŭlum, et adequitare ad
to approach nearer the hillock, and to ride-up to

nostros, conjicĕre lapĭdes que tela in
our (men) to throw stones and darts against

nostros. Cæsar fecit finem loquendi que
our (men). Cæsar made an end of speaking and

recepit se ad sŭos, que imperavit
betook himself to his-own (men), and ordered

sŭis ne-rejicĕrent quod
to his-own (men) that they should not throw-back any

telum omnino in hostes: nam etsi
dart at-all against the enemies: for although

videbat prœlĭum fŏre cum equitatu
he did see a battle to be-about-to-be with the cavalry

sine ullo periculo delectæ legionis; tămen
without any danger of (his) chosen legion; yet

putabat committendum non, ut, hostĭbus
he did think to be committed not, that, the enemies

pulsis, posset dici, ĕos
being driven-away, it might be-able to be said, them

circumventos à se per fĭdem in collo-
circumvented by himself through faith in the con-

quĭo. Posteăquam elatum-est in
ference. After-that it was carried-out (reported) into

vulgus milĭtum, quâ arrogantĭâ (abl.)
(among) *the common-sort of soldiers, what arrogance*

Ariovistus usus interdixisset (pl. perf. subj.)
Ariovistus having used had interdicted

Romanis (dat.) omni Gallĭâ; que equĭtes
the Romans from all Gaul; and the horsemen

ejus decissent (pl. perf. subj.) impĕtum in nostros;
of him had made an attack upon our (men);

que ĕa res diremisset (pl. perf. subj.)
and that thing had broken-off

colloquĭum ; multò major alacrĭtās que majus
the conference ; by-much greater alacrity and greater

studĭum pugnandi injectum-est exercitŭi.
desire of fighting was thrown-in to the army.

47. Bidŭo pòst Ariovistus mittit
In two-days afterwards Ariovistus sends

legatos ad Cæsărem, "se velle agĕre
ambassadors to Cæsar (to say), "himself to will to act

cum ĕo de his rebus, quæ cœptæ-essent
(treat) *with him about these things, which had been-begun*

(pl. perf. subj.) ăgi inter ĕos,
to be acted (treated) *between them,*

nĕque perfectæ-essent (pl. perf. subj.) : ŭtĭ aut
nor had been perfected that either

constituĕret itĕrum dĭem colloquĭo, aut
he would determine again a day for a conference, or

si vellet (imp. subj.) mĭnùs id, mittĕret
if he did will less (not) *that, he would send*

alĭquem ex sŭis legatis ad se. Caussa
some-one out-of his ambassadors to himself. A cause

colloquendi visa-est non Cæsări; et
of conferring seemed not (was not evident) *to Cæsar; and*

ĕò-măgis, quòd pridĭe ejŭs diei, Germani
by that-more, that the-day-before of that day the Germani

potuĕrant non retineri, quin conjicĕrent
had been-able not to be restrained, but-that they would throw

tela in nostros. Existimabat sese missurum
darts against our (men). He did think himself about-to-send

legatum ex sŭis cum magno periclŭlo ad
an ambassador out-of his-own with great danger to

ĕum, et objecturum fĕris hominĭbus
him, and about-to-expose to savage men.

Visum-est commodissĭmum mittĕre ad ĕum Caĭum
It seemed most-convenient to send to him Caius

Valerĭum Procillum, filĭum Caĭi Valerĭi
Valerius Procillus, a son of Caius Valerius

Caburi, adolescentem summâ virtute et
Caburus, a young-man with highest virtue and

humanitatĕ, (păter cujus donatus-ĕrat
politeness, (the father of whom had been presented

civĭtâte à Caĭo Valerĭo Flacco) et
with citizenship by Caius Valerius Flaccus) and (both)

propter fĭdem et propter scientĭam
on-account-of (his) fidelity and on-account-of (his) knowledge

Gallicæ linguæ, quâ (abl.) Ariovistus utebatur
of the Gallic tongue, which Ariovistus did use

multâ (adj.) jam longinquâ consuetudĭne, et quòd
much (fluently) now by long custom, and because

caussa peccandi esset (imp. subj.) non
a cause of transgressing was not

Germanis in ĕo; et Marcum Mettĭum, qui
to the Germani in him; and Marcus Mettius, who

usus-ĕrat hospitĭo (abl.) Ariovisti. Mandavit
had used the hospitality of Ariovistus. He charged

his, ut cognoscĕrent, quæ Ariovistus
to these, that they should know, what (things) Ariovistus

dicĕret, et referrent ad se. Quos
might say, and should bring-back to himself. Whom

quum Ariovistus conspexisset (pl. perf. subj.) in
when Ariovistus had beheld in

castris (pl.) ăpud se, sŭo exercĭtu
(his) camp with himself, his army (being)

præsente, conclamavit: "Quid venirent (imp. subj.)
present, he cried-out: "Why did they come

ad se? an caussâ speculandi?" Prohibŭit
to himself? whether by reason of spying?" He prevented

conantes dicĕre, et conjecit in
(them) endeavouring to speak, and cast (them) into

catenas.
chains.

48. Eodem dĭe promovit castra (pl.),
In the same day he moved-forward (his) camp,

et consedit sub monte sex millĭbus (abl.)
and sat-down under a mountain six thousands

passŭum à castris (pl.) Cæsăris. Postridĭe
of paces from the camp of Cæsar The day-after

ejus diei transduxit sŭas copĭas præter castra (pl.)
of that day he led-over his forces beyond the camp

Cæsăris et fecit castra (pl.) duobus
of Cæsar and made camp (encamped) by two

millĭbus (abl.) passŭum ultra ĕum, ĕo
thousands of paces beyond him, with this

consilĭo, ŭtĭ intercluděret Cæsărem frumento
design, that he might shut-in Cæsar from corn

que commeatu, qui supportaretur ex
and provision, which might be carried-up from

Sequănis et Ædŭis. Ex ĕo dĭe Cæsar
the Sequani and the Ædui. From that day Cæsar

produxit sŭas copĭas quinque continŭos
led-forth his forces five continual (successive)

dĭes pro castris (pl.), et habŭit aciem
days before the camp, and had (his) battle-line

instructam, ut si Ariovistus vellet contendĕre
arrayed, that if Ariovistus might will to contend

prœlĭo, potestas deesset non ĕi.
in battle, the power might be-wanting not to him.

Ariovistus omnĭbus his diebus continŭit exercĭtum
Ariovistus in all these days retained (his) army

castris (pl.); contendit quotidĭe prœlĭo equestri (adj.).
in camp; he contended daily in battle of-horse.

Hoc ĕrat gĕnus pugnæ, quo Germani
This was the kind of battle, in which the Germans

exercuĕrant se. Erant sex millĭa
had exercised themselves. (There) were six thousands

equĭtum, totĭdem numĕro pedĭtes velocissĭmi
of horsemen, as many in number foot-soldiers most-swift

ac fortissimi, singŭlos quos singŭli
and most-brave, each whom each

delegĕrant ex omni copĭâ, caussâ
had chosen from all the force, by reason (for the

sŭæ salutis. Versabantur cum
sake) *of-their-own safety. They were employed with*

his in prœlĭis; equĭtes recipiebant
these in battles; the horsemen did betake

se ad hos: hi, si quid
themselves to these: these, if any (*thing*)

ĕrat durĭus, concurrebant: si qui,
was more-hard, did run-together (*to succour*): *if any,*

graviore vulnĕre accepto, deciderant
a heavier (very severe) *wound being received, had fallen-down*

ĕquo, circumsistebant: si ĕrat
from horse, they did stand-around: if it was

prodeundum longĭùs aut recipiendum
to-be-advanced farther or to-be-retreated

celerĭùs quò, tanta ĕrat celerĭtas
more-quickly any-where, so great was the speed

horum exercitatione, ut, sublevati jŭbis
of these by exercise, that, lifted-up by the manes

equorum, adæquarent cursum.
of the horses, they would equal (*their*) *course.*

49. Ubi Cæsar intellexit ĕum tenere sese
When Cæsar understood him to hold himself

castris, ne-prohiberetur diutĭùs
in camps, that he might not be prohibited longer

commeatu, delegit lŏcum idonĕum castris,
from provision, he chose a place suitable for camps,

circĭter sex-cēntos passus ultra ĕum lŏcum, in quo
about six hundred paces beyond that place, in which

lŏco Germani conseděrant, que triplĭci
place the Germans had sat-down (encamped) *and a triple*

acie instructâ, venit ad ĕum lŏcum. Jussit
line being arrayed, he came to that place. He ordered

primam et secundam aciem esse in armis, tertiam
the first and second line to be in arms, the third

munire castra (pl.). Hic locus, ut dictum-est,
to fortify the camp. This place, as has been said,

abĕrat ab hoste circiter sex-centos passus.
was-distant from the enemy about six-hundred paces.

Eò Ariovistus misit numĕrum hominum circiter
Thither Ariovistus sent a number of men about

sexdĕcim millia expedita, cum omni equitatu;
sixteen thousands light-armed, with all the cavalry;

quæ copiæ perterrerent nostros, et prohiberent
which forces should alarm our (men), and should prohibit

munitione. Nihilo secius Cæsar,
from fortifying. By nothing less (nevertheless) *Cæsar,*

ut constituĕrat antè, jussit duas acies
as he had determined before, ordered the two lines

propulsare hostem, tertiam perficĕre opus.
to repel the enemy, the third to complete the work.

Castris munitis, reliquit ibi duas legiones
The camps being fortified, he left there two legions

et partem auxiliorum; reduxit quatuor
and part of the auxiliaries; he led-back the four

reliquas in majora castra (pl.).
(remaining (legions) into the greater camp.

50. Proximo die, Cæsar suo instituto
In the next day, Cæsar in his institution (custom)

eduxit suas copias ex utrisque castris; que
led-forth his forces out-of each camps; and

progressus paullulum à majoribus, instruxit
having advanced very-little from the greater, arrayed

aciem que fecit hostibus potestatem pugnandi.
(his) line and made to the enemies power of fighting.

Ubi intellexit eos ne tum quidem
When he understood them not then indeed (even)

prodire, circiter meridiem reduxit exercitum
to come-forth, about mid-day he led-back the army

in castra (pl.). Tum demum Ariovistus misit
into camp. *Then at-last* *Ariovistus sent*

partem suarum copiarum, quæ oppugnaret minora
part of his forces, *which might assault the less*

castra (pl.). Pugnatum-est acrĭter utrinque usque
camp. *It was fought sharply on-both-sides until*

ad vespĕrum. Occasu solis Ariovistus reduxit
to evening. *With setting of the sun* *Ariovistus led-back*

sŭas copĭas in castra (pl.), multis vulnerĭbus et
his forces into camp, *many wounds both*

illatis et acceptis. Quum Cæsar
being brought-on (given) *and received.* *When Cæsar*

quærĕret (imp. subj.) ex captivis, quamŏbrem
did inquire *from the captives,* *wherefore*

Ariovistus decertaret (imp. subj.) non prœlĭo,
Ariovistus did contend *not in battle,*

reperiebat hanc caussam: Quòd ĕa consuetudo
he did find *this the cause:* *Because that custom*

esset (imp. subj.) ăpud Germanos, ut matres-
was *with the Germans,* *that the mothers-*

familĭâs eorum declararent sortĭbus et
of family *of them* *should declare* *by lots and*

vaticinationĭbus, utrùm esset ex usu
by prophecies, *whether it might be* *out-of use* (ad-

prœlĭum committi necne: ĕas dicĕre
vantageous) *battle* *to be engaged* *or-not:* *them to say*

ĭta, "Non esse fas Germanos superare, si
thus, "*Not to be lawful* *the Germans to conquer, if*

contendissent prœlĭo ante nŏvam
they might have contended *in battle* *before* *the new*

lunam."
moon."

51. Postridĭe ejus diei, præsidĭo relicto
The day-after *of that day,* *a guard being left*

utrisque castris, quod visum-est sătis, constitŭit
to each camps, which seemed sufficient, he arranged

omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro
all *the flankers* *in* *sight* *of the enemies* *before*

minoribus castris (plur.), (quod valebat
the less *camp,* (*because* *he did avail* (was strong)

minus multitudine legionariorum militum pro
less *in the multitude* *of legionary* *soldiers* *for*

numero hostium;) ut uterctur
(considering) *the number* *of the enemies;*) *that* *he might use*

alariis (abl.) ad speciem. Ipse, triplici
the flankers *to* (for) *appearance.* (*He*) *himself,* *a triple*

acie instructâ, accessit usque ad castra
line *being arrayed.* *approached* *as-far-as* *to* *the camps*

hostium. Tum demum necessariò Germani
of the enemies. *Then* *at-last* *necessarily* *the Germans*

eduxerunt suas copias è castris: que
led-out *their* *forces* *from* *the camps:* *and*

constituerunt generatim; que paribus
arranged (*them*) *by-sorts* (tribes); *and* *at equal*

intervallis, Harudes, Marcomanos, Tribocos,
intervals, *the Harudes,* *Marcomani,* *Tribocci,*

Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos; que
Vangiones, *Nemetes,* *Sedusii,* *Suevi;* *and*

circumdederunt omnem suam aciem rhedis
surrounded *all* *their* *line* *with carriages*

et carris. Eò imposuerunt mulieres, quæ,
and *waggons.* *There* *they placed-on* *the women,* *who,*

crinibus passis, flentes
(*their*) *hairs* (locks) *being spread* (dishevelled), *weeping*

implorabant milites proficiscentes in prœlium,
did implore *the soldiers* *setting-out* *into* *battle,*

ne-traderent se in servitutem
that they would not deliver *themselves* *into* *slavery*

Romanis.
to the Romans.

52. Cæsar præfecit singulos legatos
Cæsar *set-over* *each* (separate) *lieutenants*

et quæstorem singŭlis legionĭbus, ŭtî quisque
and a quæstor to each legions, that every-one

haberet ĕos testes sŭæ virtutis. Ipse
might have them witnesses of his valour. (He) himself

à dextro cornu, quòd animadvertĕrat
from the right horn (wing), *because he had observed*

ĕam partem hostĭum esse minĭmè firmam,
that part of the enemies to be least firm,

commisit prœlium. Nostri, signo dăto,
engaged battle. Our (men), the sign being given,

fecerunt impĕtum ĭta acrĭter in hostes: que
made an attack so sharply upon the enemies: and

hostes procurrerunt ĭta repentè que celerĭter, ut
the enemies ran-forward so suddenly and quickly, that

spatĭum conjiciendi pila in hostes
space of throwing the javelins against the enemies

daretur non. Pilis rejectis,
might be given not. The javelins being thrown-away,

pugnatum-est comĭnus gladĭis. At Germani
it was fought hand-to-hand with swords. But the Germans

celerĭter ex sŭâ consuetudĭne, phalange
quickly according-to their custom, a phalanx

factâ, exceperunt impĕtus gladiorum. Complures
being made, received the attacks of the swords. Very-many

nostri milites reperti-sunt, qui insilirent in
our soldiers were-found, who would leap-up upon

phalanges et revellĕrent scuta
the phalanxes and would pull-back the shields

manĭbus, et vulnerarent desŭper. Quum
with (their) hands, and would wound from above. When

acĭes hostĭum pulsa-esset (pl. perf. subj.) à
the line of the enemies had been repulsed from (on)

sinistro cornu, atque conversa in fŭgam,
the left horn (wing), *and turned into flight,*

premebant nostram acĭem vehementer à
they did press our line vehemently from (on)

dextro cornu multitudĭne suorum.
the right horn (wing), *by the multitude of their* (*men*).

Quum Publĭus Crassŭs adolescens, qui præĕrat
When Publius Crassus a young-man, who was-over

equitatŭi, animadvertisset (pl. perf. subj.) id,
to the cavalry, had perceived that,

quòd ĕrat expeditĭor quàm hi, qui
because he was more-disengaged than these, who

versabantur inter acĭem, misit tertĭam acĭem
were engaged amid the line, he sent the third line

nostris laborantĭbus subsidĭo.
to our (*men*) *labouring* (distressed) *for a reserve.*

53. Ita prœlĭum restitutum-est atque omnes
Thus the battle was restored and all

hostes verterunt terga, nĕque destiterunt
the enemies turned (*their*) *backs, nor desisted*

fugĕre, prĭùs quàm pervenerunt ad flumen
to flee, before than they arrived at the river

Rhenum, circĭter quinquaginta millĭa passŭum ex
Rhine, about fifty thousands of paces from

ĕo lŏco. Ibi perpauci, aut confisi
that place. There very-few, either having trusted

virĭbus (pl.), contenderunt transnatare; aut,
to strength, strained (endeavoured) *to swim-over; or,*

lintrĭbus inventis, petierunt salutem sĭbi.
barks being found, sought safety to themselves.

In his fŭit Ariovistus, qui, nactus
In these was Ariovistus, who, having obtained

navicŭlam deligatam ad ripam, profugit ĕâ:
a little-ship bound at the bank, escaped in it:

nostri equĭtes consecuti interfecerunt omnes
our horsemen having overtaken killed all

relĭquos. Uxores Ariovisti fuerunt dŭæ,
the remaining. The wives of Ariovistus were two,

una Sueva natione, quam adduxĕrat
one a Suevian by nation, whom he had led-up

secum dŏmo; altĕra Norĭca, sŏror
with himself from home; the other a Norican, sister

regis Vocionis, quam duxĕrat Gallĭâ,
of king Vocio, whom he had led (married) in Gaul,

missam à fratre: utrăque perĭit in ĕâ
sent by (her) brother: each perished in that

fŭgâ: dŭæ filĭæ harum, altĕra
flight: (there were) two daughters of these, the other

occisa-est, altĕra capta. Caĭus Valerĭus
(one) was slain, the other taken. Caius Valerius

Procillus, quum traheretur (imp. subj.) in
Procillus, when he was dragged in (their)

fŭgâ vinctus trinis catenis à custodĭbus,
flight bound with three chains by (his) keepers,

incĭdit in Cæsărem ipsum persequentem
fell upon (fell in with) Cæsar himself pursuing

equitatum hostĭum. Quæ res quĭdem
the cavalry of the enemies. Which thing indeed

attŭlit non minorem voluptatem Cæsări, quàm
brought not less pleasure to Cæsar, than

victorĭa ipsa; quòd videbat honestissĭmum
the victory itself; because he did see a most-honourable

hominem provincĭæ Gallĭæ, sŭum familiarem
man of the province of Gaul, his acquaintance

et hospĭtem, ereptum è manĭbus hostĭum,
and host, rescued out-of the hands of the enemies,

restitutum sĭbi: nĕque fortuna diminuĕrat
restored to himself: nor fortune had diminished

quidquam de tantâ voluptate et gratulatione
any-thing from so-great pleasure and congratulation

calamitate ejus. Is dicebat consultum (-esse)
by the calamity of him. He did say to have been consulted

sortĭbus ter, se præsente, de
by lots thrice, himself (being) present, about

se, utrùm necaretur stătim igni,
himself, whether he should be killed immediately with fire,

an reservaretur in alĭud tempus: se
or should be reserved unto another time: himself

esse incolúmen beneficĭo sortĭum. Item
to be safe by the kindness of the lots. Likewise

Marcus Mettĭus repertus-est et reductus ad ĕum.
Marcus Mettius was found and led back to him.

54. Hoc prœlĭo nuntiato trans Rhenum,
This battle being announced beyond the Rhine,

Suevi, qui veněrant ad ripas Rheni,
the Suevi, who had come to the banks of the Rhine,

cœperunt reverti dŏmum: quos Ubĭi, qui
began to return home: whom the Ubii, who

incŏlunt proxĭmè Rhenum, insecuti
inhabit nearest the Rhine, having followed-up

perterrĭtos, occiderunt magnum numĕrum ex his.
dismayed, slew a great number out-of these.

Cæsar, duobus maxĭmis bellis confectis unâ
Cæsar, two greatest wars being finished in one

æstáte, deduxit paullo maturĭùs, quàm tempus
summer, led-away a little earlier, than the time

anni postulabat, exercĭtum in hiberna
of the year did demand, the army into winter-quarters

in Sequănos: præposŭit Labienum hibernis:
into the Sequani: he set-over Labienus to the winter-quarters:

ipse profectus-est in citeriorem Gallĭam ad
himself departed into hither Gaul to

conventus agendos.
assemblies to-be-acted (held).

LIBER SECUNDUS.

BOOK SECOND.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Secundus lĭber contĭnet quatŭor bellĭcas expeditiones;
The second book contains four warlike expeditions;

nempe, bellum contra Belgas, contra Nervĭos;
namely, the war against the Belgæ, against the Nervii;

contra Atuatĭcos; contra Armorĭcos, quos
against the Atuatici; against the Armorici, whom

postremos P. Crassus legatus ejus debellavit
last P. Crassus lieutenant of him vanquished

sub auspicĭis ejus. Hæc gesta-sunt
under the auspices of him. These (things) were done

sexcentesĭmo nonagesĭmo septĭmo anno ab
in the six hundredth ninetieth seventh year from

urbe condĭtâ.
the city being built.

1. QUUM Cæsar esset (imp. subj.) in citeriore
When Cæsar was in hither

Gallĭâ in hibernis, ĭta ŭtì demonstravĭmus
Gaul in winter-quarters, so as we have shown

suprà, crebri rumores afferebantur ad ĕum, que
above, frequent rumours were brought to him, and

ĭtem fiebat certĭor lĭtĕrıs (pl.) Labieni,
likewise he was made more-sure by letters of Labienus,

omnes Belgas, quam dixeramus esse tertĭam
all the Belgæ, which we have said to be the third

partem Gallĭæ, conjurare contra Romanum popŭlum,
part of Gaul, to conspire against the Roman people,

que dăre obsĭdes inter se. Has esse
and to give hostages between themselves. These to be

caussas conjurandi: primùm, quòd vererentur
the causes of conspiring: first, because they did fear

(imp. subj.) ne, omni Gallĭâ pacatâ, noster
lest, all Gaul being subdued, our

exercĭtus adduceretur ad ĕos: deinde, quòd
army should be led-up to them: next, because

sollicitarentur (imp. subj.) ab nonnullis Gallis, partim
they were solicited by some Gauls, partly

qui, ut nollent (imp. subj.) Germanos versari
who, as they were-unwilling the Germani to be engaged

diutĭùs in Gallĭâ, ĭta ferebant molestè exercĭtum
longer in Gaul, so they did bear uneasily the army

Romani popŭli hiemare atque inveterascĕre in
of the Roman people to winter and to grow-old in

Gallĭâ; partim qui, mobilitate et levitate anĭmi,
Gaul; partly who, by fickleness and lightness of mind,

studebant nŏvis imperĭis; etĭam
aid study (were favourable) *to new governments; also*

ab nonnullis, quòd in Gallĭâ regna vulgò
by some, because in Gaul kingdoms commonly

occupabantur à potentiorĭbus atque iis, qui
were occupied by the more-powerful and by those, who

habebant facultates ad homĭnes conducendos; qui
did have means to men to-be-hired; who

potĕrant mĭnùs facĭlè consĕqui ĕam rem nostro
were-able less easily to attain that thing (under) *our*

imperĭo.
government.

2. Cæsar commotus ïis nuntïis que
Cæsar moved by those announcements and

litĕris conscripsit duas nŏvas legiones in citeriore
letters levied two new legions in hither

Gallîâ, et æstate inĭtâ, misit Quintum
Gaul, and summer being entered, he sent Quintus

Pedĭum legatum qui deducĕret in
Pedius (his) lieutenant who might lead (them) down into

interiorem Gallĭam. Ipse, quum primùm copĭa
inner Gaul. Himself, when first plenty

pabŭli incipĕret (imp. subj.) esse, venit ad exercĭtum.
of forage did begin to be, came to the army.

Dat negotĭum Senonĭbus que
He gives business (he commissions) *to the Senones and*

relĭquis Gallis, qui ĕrant finitĭmi Belgis,
to the remaining Gauls, who were bordering to the Belgæ,

ŭtì cognoscant ĕa, quæ gerantur
that they may learn those (things), which are carried-on

(pres. subj.) ăpud ĕos, et facĭant se
with them, and may make himself

certiorem de his rebus.
more-certain (may inform him) *about these things.*

Omnes hi constanter nunciaverunt, măgnus
All these constantly announced, bands

cogi, exercĭtum conduci
to be brought-together (collected), *an army to be led-together*

in unum lŏcum. Tum verò existimavit non
into one place. Then indeed he thought not

dubitandum, quin proficisceretur ad ĕos
to-be-doubted, but-that he should set-out to them

duodecĭmo dĭe. Re frumentarîâ
on the twelfth day. The affair relating-to-corn (the supplies)

provisâ, mŏvet castra (pl.) que diebus
being provided, he moves camp and in days

circĭter quindĕcim pervĕnit ad fines Belgarum.
about fifteen arrives to the borders of the Belgæ.

3. Quum venisset (pl. perf. subj.) ĕò de
When he had come *thither* *from*

improviso que celerĭùs opinione
unexpected (unexpectedly) *and more-quickly than the opinion*

omnĭum, Rhemi, qui sunt proxĭmi ex Belgis
of all, the Rhemi, who are nearest out-of the Belgæ

Gallĭæ, miserunt ad ĕum legatos, Iccĭum et
to Gaul,[1] *sent to him ambassadors, Iccius and*

Antebrogĭum primos sŭæ civitatis, qui dicĕrent,
Antebrogius first (*men*) *of their state, who might say,*

"permittĕre se que omnĭa sŭa
" *to permit* (to yield) *themselves and all their* (*effects*)

in fĭdem atque potestatem Romani popŭli,
into the faith and power of the Roman people,

nĕque se consensisse cum relĭquis
nor themselves to have consented with the remaining

Belgis, nĕque conjurâsse omnino contra
Belgæ, nor to have conspired at all against

Romanum popŭlum, que esse paratos et dăre
the Roman people, and to be prepared both to give

obsĭdes, et facĕre imperata, et recipĕre
hostages, and to do (*things*) *commanded, and to receive*

oppĭdis et juvare frumento que cætĕris
(*them*) *in towns and to aid with corn and with other*

rebus; omnes relĭquos Belgas esse in armis:
things: all the remaining Belgæ to be in arms:

que Germanos, qui incŏlunt cis Rhenum
and the Germans, who inhabit on-this-side the Rhine

conjunxisse sese cum his; que
to have joined together themselves with these (Belgæ): *and*

tantum esse furorem omnĭum eorum, ut
so-great to be the fury of all of them, that

potuĕrint (perf. subj.) deterrere ne quĭdem
they have been able to deter not indeed (even)

Suessiones, sŭos fratres que consanguinĕos, qui
the Suessiones, their brothers and kinsmen, who

utantur (pres. subj.) eodem jure, iisdem
use *with the same* *right,* *with the same*

legĭbus, habĕant (pres. subj.) unum imperĭum, que
laws, *have* *one* *government,* *and*

unum magistratum cum ipsis, quin
one *magistracy* *with* *themselves,* *but-that*

consentirent cum his.
they would consent *with* *these.*

4. Quum quærĕret (imp. subj.) ab his, quæ
When *he did inquire* *from* *these,* *what*

civitates que quantæ essent (imp. subj.) in armis,
states *and* *how-great* *were* *in* *arms,*

et quid possent (imp. subj.) in bello, reperiebat
and *what* *they were-able* *in* *war,* *he did find*

sic; plerosque Belgas ortos-esse
thus; *the most-of* *the Belgæ* *to have sprung* *from*

Germanis que antiquĭtùs transductos Rhenum,
the Germans *and* *anciently* *led-over* *the Rhine,*

consedisse ĭbi propter fertilitatem
to have sat-down (settled) *there* *on-account-of* *the fertility*

agri; que expulisse Gallos, qui
of the land; *and* *to have driven-out* *the Gauls,* *who*

incolĕrent (imp. subj.) ĕas lŏca; que esse solos,
did inhabit *those* *places;* *and* *to be* *alone,*

qui, memorĭâ nostrorum patrum, omni Gallĭâ
who, *in the memory* *of our* *fathers,* *all* *Gaul*

vexatâ, prohibuĕrint (perf. subj.) Teutŏnes que
being harassed, *prohibited* *the Teutones* *and*

Cimbros ingrĕdi intra sŭos fines. Ex quâ
Cimbri *to enter* *within* *their* *borders.* *Out-of* *which*

re fĭĕri ŭtĭ sumĕrent (imp. subj.)
thing *to be made* (it happened) *that* *they did take*

magnam auctoritatem que magnos spirĭtus in
great *authority* *and* *great* *spirits* *in*

militari re sĭbi, memorĭâ eorum
military *affair* *to themselves,* *by the memory* *of those*

rerum. Rhemi dicebant se habere
things. *The Rhemi* *did say* *themselves* *to have*

omnĭa explorata de numĕro eorum, propterĕa
all (*things*) *explored* *about* *the number* *of them,* *because*

quòd conjuncti propinquitatĭbus (pl.) atque
that *joined-together* *by kindred* *and*

affinitatĭbus, cognovĕrint (perf. subj.) quantam
by marriage-alliances, *they knew* *how-great*

multitudĭnem quisque pollicĭtus-sit (perf. subj.) in
a multitude *each* *promised* *in*

communi concilĭo Belgarum ad id bellum.
the common *council* *of the Belgæ* *to* *that* *war.*

Bellovăcos valere plurĭmum inter ĕos, et
The Bellovaci *to prevail* *most* *among* *them,* *both*

virtute, et auctoritate, et numĕro homĭnum;
in valour, *and* *in authority,* *and* *in the number* *of men;*

hos posse conficĕre centum millĭa
these *to-be-able* *to accomplish* (raise) *a hundred* *thousands*

armata; pollicĭtos sexaginta millĭa lecta
armed (men); *having promised* *sixty* *thousands* *chosen*

ex ĕo numĕro, que postulare imperĭum
out-of *that* *number,* *and* *to demand* *the supreme-authority*

belli sĭbi. Suessiones esse sŭos
of the war *to themselves.* *The Suessiones* *to be* *their*

finitĭmos; possidere latissĭmos que feracissĭmos
neighbours; *to possess* *the most-wide* *and* *most-productive*

agros; Divitiăcum fuisse rĕgem ăpud ĕos,
lands: *Divitiacus* *to have-been* *king* *with* (over) *them.*

potentissĭmum totius Gallĭæ, etĭam nostrâ
the most-powerful *of the whole* *Gaul,* *even* *in our*

memorĭâ, qui cùm obtinuĕrit (perf. subj.)
memory, *who* *when* (both) *obtained*

imperĭum magnæ partis harum regionum, tum
the empire *of great* *part* *of these* *regions,* *then* (as)

etĭam Britannĭæ; Galbam nunc esse regem;
also *of Britain;* *Galba* *now* *to be* (*their*) *king;*

summam totius belli deferri
the sum (chief command) *of the whole war to be conferr-d*

ad hunc voluntate omnĭum; habere duodĕcim
to this (*man*) *by the will of all; to have twelve*

oppĭda numĕro: polliceri quinquaginta millĭa
towns in number; to promise fifty thousands

armata: Nervĭos, totĭdem, qui habeantur (pres.
armed: the Nervii, just-as-many, who are-had (deemed)

subj.) maxĭmè-fĕri inter ipsos que absint (pres. subj.)
the most-fierce among them and are-distant

longissĭmè; Atrebătes, quindĕcim millĭa;
farthest; the Atrebates, fifteen thousands;

Ambianos, decem millĭa; Morĭnos, viginti
the Ambiani, ten thousands; the Morini, twenty

quinque millĭa; Menapĭos, novem millĭa;
five thousands; the Menapii nine thousands;

Calĕtes decem millĭa; Velocasses et
the Caletes ten thousands; the Velocasses and

Veromandŭos totĭdem; Aduatĭcos, viginti nŏvem
Veromandui just-as-many; the Aduatici, twenty nine

millĭa; arbitrari Condrusos, Eburones, Cæresos,
thousands; to deem the Condrusi, Eburones, Cæresi,

Pæmanos, qui appellantur uno nomĭne Germani,
Pæmani, who are called by one name Germans,

ad quadraginta millĭa.
to forty thousands.

5. Cæsar, cohortatus Rhemos, que
Cæsar, having encouraged the Rhemi, and

prosecutus liberalĭter oratione, jussit
having followed-up liberally (kindly) *with speech, ordered*

omnem senatum convenire ad se, que
all (*their*) *senate to come-together to himself, and*

lĭbĕros princĭpum adduci obsĭdes ad
the children of chiefs to be brought (*as*) *hostages to*

se. Omnĭa quæ facta-sunt diligenter
himself. All which (*things*) *were-done diligently*

ab his ad dĭem. Ipse cohortatus
by these to the day. Himself having encouraged

magnopĕre Æduum Divitiăcum, que dŏcet
earnestly the Æduan Divitiacus, both teaches

quantopĕre intersit (pres. subj.) Reipublĭcæ (gen.) que
how-greatly it concerns the Republic and

communis salutis, mănus hostĭum distineri,
the common safety, the bands of the enemies to be separated,

ne sit cŏnfligendum uno tempŏre cum
lest it may be to be fought in one time with

tantâ multitudĭne; id posse fĭĕri, si
so-great a multitude; that to be able to be done, if

Æduĭ introduxĕrint sŭas copĭas in
the Æduі shall have introduced their forces into

fines Bellovacorum et cœpĕrint (fut. subj.)
the borders of the Bellovaci and begun

populari agros eorum. His mandatis,
to ravage the lands of them. These (things) being enjoined,

dimittit ĕum ab se. Postquam cognovit
he dismisses him from himself. After-that he knew

ab his exploratorĭbus, quos misĕrat, et
from these scouts, whom he had sent, and

ab Rhemis, omnes copĭas Belgarum coactas
from the Rhemi, all the forces of the Belgæ collected

in unum lŏcum venire ad se, nĕque jam
into one place to come to himself, nor now

abesse longĕ; maturavit transducĕre flumen
to be-distant far; he hastened to lead-over (cross) the river

Axŏnam, quod est in extremis finĭbus Rhemorum,
Axona, which is in the extreme borders of the Rhemi,

exercĭtum, atque ĭbi posŭit castra (pl.). Quæ
the army, and there placed (his) camp. Which

res et muniebat unum lătus castrorum (pl.)
thing both did fortify one side of the camp

ripis flumĭnis et reddebat ĕa
by the banks of the river and did render those (things)

quæ ĕrant pòst, tuta ab hostĭbus, et
which were behind, safe from the enemies, and

efficiebat, ut commeatus posset portari
did effect, that provision might-be-able to be carried

ad ĕum ab Rhemis, que relĭquis civitatĭbus
to him from the Rhemi, and the remaining states

sine periculo. Pons ĕrat in ĕo flumĭne;
without danger. A bridge was in (on) *that river;*

ibi ponit præsidĭum, et reliquit Quintum
there he places a guard, and left Quintus

Titurĭum Sabinum legatum in altĕrâ parte
Titurius Sabinus (*his*) *lieutenant in the other part* (side)

flumĭnis cum sex cohortĭbus; jŭbet
of the river with six cohorts; he orders (*them*)

munire castra (pl.) vallo in altitudĭnem
to fortify the camp with a rampart into height

duodĕcim pĕdum que fossâ duodeviginti
of twelve feet and with a trench of eighteen

pĕdum.
feet.

6. Oppĭdum Rhemorum, nomĭne Bibrax, abĕrat
A town of the Rhemi, by name Bibrax, was-distant

octo millĭa passŭum ab castris ipsis;
eight thousands of paces from the camps themselves;

Belgæ cœperunt oppugnare id magno impĕtu
the Belgæ began to assault it with great violence

ex itinĕre: sustentatum est
out-of (on) (*their*) *journey* (march): *it* (the assault) *was sustained*

ægrè ĕo dĭe. Oppugnatio Gallorum atqu
hardly in that day. The assault of the Gauls and

Belgarum est eădem. Hi, ŭbi, multitudĭne
of the Belgæ is the same. These, when, a multitude

homĭnum circumjectâ totis mœnĭbus (data),
of men being thrown-around the whole walls

lapĭdes cœpti-sunt jăci in murum
stones were-begun to be thrown against the wa

undĭque que murus nudatus-est defensorĭbus;
on-all-sides and the wall was-stripped from defenders:

testudĭne factâ, succedunt
a tortoise (a military covering) *being made, approach*

portis (dat.) que subrŭunt murum. Quod tum
the gates and undermine the wall. Which then

fiebat facĭlè; nam tanta multitudo conjiciebant
was done easily; for so-great a multitude did throw

lapĭdes ac tela, ut potestas consistendi in
stones and darts, that a power of standing in (on)

muro esset (imp. subj.) nulli. Quum nox fecisset
wall was to none. When night had made

(pl. perf. subj.) finem oppugnandi, Rhemus Iccĭus,
an end of assaulting, the Rhemian Iccius,

summâ nobilitate et gratĭâ inter
with (of the) *highest nobility and favour among*

sŭos, qui tum præĕrat oppĭdo; unus ex
his-own, who then was-over to the town; one out-of

ĭis, qui venĕrant ad Cæsărem legati
those, who had come to Cæsar (as) *ambassadors*

de pace, mittit nuntĭos ad ĕum, nĭsi
about peace, sends messengers to him, unless

subsidĭum mittatur (pres. subj.) sĭbi, se
a succour is sent to himself, himself

posse non sustinere diutĭùs.
to be able not to sustain (hold out) *longer.*

7. Eò de medĭâ nocte, Cæsar usus
Thither about middle night, Cæsar having used

iisdem ducĭbus, qui venĕrant nuntĭi
with the same guides, who had come (as) *messengers*

ab Iccĭo, mittit Numĭdas et Cretas sagittarĭos
from Iccius, sends Numidian and Cretan archers

et Baleares funditores subsidĭo oppidanis.
and Balearic slingers for a succour to the townsmen.

Adventu quorum, et studĭum propugnandi
By the arrival of whom, both eagerness of resisting

cum spe defensionis accessit
with hope of defence approached (was added)

Rhemis, et de eâdem caussâ spes
to the Rhemi, and from the same cause the hope

potiundi oppĭdi discessit hostĭbus.
of gaining the town departed from the enemies.

Itaque morati paulisper ăpud oppĭdum
Therefore having delayed a little-while at the town

que depopulati agros Rhemorum, omnĭbus
and having laid-waste the lands of the Rhemi, all

vicis que ædificĭis incensis, quò
the villages and edifices having been burnt, where

potĕrant adire, contenderunt
they were able to approach, they strained (hastened)

ad castra Cæsăris cum omnĭbus copĭis,
to the camps of Cæsar with all (their) *forces,*

et posuerunt castra (pl.) à mĭnùs duobus
and placed camp from (at) *less than two*

millĭbus passŭum, quæ castra (pl.), ut significabatur
thousands of paces, which camp as was signified

fumo atque ignĭbus, patebant in latitudĭnem
by smoke and by fires, did extend into breadth

amplĭus octo millĭbus passŭum.
more (than) *eight thousands of paces.*

8. Cæsar primò statŭit supersedĕre
Cæsar at-first determined to supersede (abstain

prœlĭo (abl.) et propter multitudĭnem
from) *battle both on-account-of the multitude*

hostĭum et propter eximĭam opinionem
of the enemies and on-account-of the eminent opinion

virtutis; tămen periclitabatur quotidĭe
of (their) *valour; yet he did hazard* (make trial) *daily*

equestrĭbus prœlĭis, quid hostis posset
in cavalry battles, what the enemy might-be-able

virtute, et quid nostri auderent. Ubi
in valour, and what our (men) *might-dare. When*

intellexit nostros esse non inferiores, lŏco
he understood our (men) to be not inferior, the place

pro castris (pl.) opportuno atque idonĕo
before the camp (being) opportune and fit

naturâ ad acĭem instruendam; quòd is
by nature to the line to-be-arrayed; because that

collis ŭbi castra (pl.) posita-ĕrant, edĭtus
hill where the camp had been placed, being raised

paullŭlum ex planitĭe, patebat in
a little out-of the plain, did lie-open (extend) into

latitudĭnem adversus antum lŏci, quantum
breadth opposite so-much of place, as-much-as

acies instructa potĕrat occupare atque habebat
the line (of battle) *arrayed was-able to occupy, and did have*

dejectus latĕris ex utrâque parte, et
descents of the side from (on) *either part, and*

leniter fastigiatus in fronte, paullatim redibat
gently pointed (sloping) *in front, gradually did return*

ad planitĭem: ab utroque latĕre ejus collis
to a plain: from each side of that hill

obduxit transversam fossam circĭter quadringenorum
he led-over a transverse trench about of four-hundred

passŭum, et ad extremas fossas
paces, and at the extreme (both ends of) *the trenches*

constitŭit castella, que ĭbi collocavit tormenta;
he erected castles, and there placed engines;

ne, quum instruxisset (pl. perf. subj.) acĭem,
lest, when he had arrayed (his) *line,*

hostes (quòd potĕrant tantum multitudĭne)
the enemies (because *they were-able so-much by multitude*)

possent circumvenire à lateribus sŭos
might be-able to surround from (on) *the flanks his* (men)

pugnantes. Hoc facto, duabus legionĭbus, quas
fighting. This being done, two legions, which

conscripsĕrat proxĭmè, relictis in castris,
he had levied most-nearly (last), *being left in camp*

ut, si quid ŏpus esset possent
that, if any need hould be, they might be-able

duci subsidĭo, constitŭit relĭquas sex
to be led for a relief, he arranged the remaining six

legiones in acĭe pro castris (pl.). Item
legions in line before the camp. Likewise

hostes instruxĕrant sŭas copĭas eductas ex
the enemies had arrayed their forces led-out from

castris (pl.).
the camp.

9. Pălus non magna ĕrat inter nostrum atque
A marsh not great was between our (men) and

exercĭtum hostĭum; hostes expectabant, si
the army of the enemies; the enemies did await, if

nostri transirent hanc; autem nŏstri ĕrant
our (men) would pass-over this; but our (men) were

parati in armis ut, si initĭum transeundi
prepared in arms that, if a beginning of passing

fĭĕret ab illis, aggrederentur impeditos.
should be made by them, they might attack (them) entangled.

Intĕrim contendebatur equestri prœlĭo
Meanwhile it was contended in an equestrian battle

inter; dŭas acĭes. Ubi neutri facĭunt
between the two lines. When neither make

initĭum transeundi, prœlĭo nostrorum equĭtum
a beginning of passing, the battle of our horsemen

secundiore, Cæsar reduxit sŭos (in
(being) more successful, Cæsar led-back his (men) into

castra. Hostes protĭnus contenderunt
the camps. The enemies forthwith strained (hastened)

ex ĕo lŏco ad flumen Axŏnam, quod
from that place to the river Axona, which

demonstratum-est esse post nostra castra (pl.); ibi
has been pointed-out to be behind our camp; there

vădis repertis, conati-sunt transducĕre
fords being found, they endeavoured to lead-over

partem suarum copiarum, ĕo consilĭo, ut,
part of their forces, with this design, that,

si possent, expugnarent castellum,
if they should be-able, they might storm the castle,

cui Q. Titurĭus legatus præĕrat, que
to which Q. Titurius the lieutenant was-over, and

interscinderent pontem: si mĭnùs, popula-
might cut-down the bridge: if less (not), *they might*

rentur agros Rhemorum, qui ĕrant magno
ravage the lands of the Rhemi, which were for (of) *great*

usŭi nobis ad bellum gerendum que sustinebant
use to us to the war to-be-carried-on and did sustain

nostros commeatus.
our provisions.

10. Cæsar factus certĭor à Titurĭo,
Cæsar being made more-sure by Titurius,

transducit pontem omnem equitatum, et Numĭdas
leads-over the bridge all the cavalry. and Numidians

lĕvis armaturæ, funditores que sagittarĭos, atque
of light armour, the slingers and archers, and

contendit ad ĕos. Pugnatum-est acrĭter in
strains (hastens) *to them. It was fought sharply in*

ĕo lŏco: nostri aggressi hostes
that place: our (men) *having attacked the enemies*

impeditos in flumĭne, occiderunt magnum numĕrum
entangled in the river, slew a great number

eorum: repulerunt multitudĭne telorum
of them: they repulsed with a multitude of weapons

relĭquos conantes audacissĭmè transire
the remaining (men) *endeavouring most-boldly to pass*

per corpŏra eorum: interfecerunt primos, qui
through the bodies of them: they killed the first, who

transiĕrant, circumventos equitatu. Hostes,
had passed, surrounded with the cavalry. The enemies,

ŭbi intellexerunt spem fefellisse se
when they understood hope to have deceived themselves

et de oppĭdo expugnando, et de flumĭne
and (both) *of the town to-be-stormed, and of the river*

transeundo, nĕque viderunt nostros progrĕdi
to-be-passed-over, nor saw our (*men*) *to advance*

in iniquiorem lŏcum caussâ
into more-unequal (disadvantageous) *place by cause* (for

pugnandi, atque frumentarĭa res
the sake) *of fighting, and corn thing* (provisions)

cœpit deficĕre ĕos; concilĭo convocato,
began to fail them; a council being called-together,

constituerunt esse optĭmum quemque reverti sŭam
they resolved to be best each to return (*to*) *his*

dŏmum: et convenire undĭque ad ĕos
home: and to assemble from-all-sides to them

defendendos, in fines quorum Romani
to-be-defended, into the borders of whom the Romans

primùm introduxissent exercĭtum; ut decertarent
first might have led-in the army; that they might contend

potĭùs in sŭis, quàm alienis finĭbus, et
rather in their-own, than in foreign borders, and

uterentur domesticis copĭis (abl.) frumentarĭæ rĕi.
might use domestic supplies of corn thing

Quŏque hæc ratĭo, cum relĭquis
(provisions). *Also this reason, with the remaining*

caussis, deduxit ĕos ad ĕam sententĭam,
causes, brought them to that opinion (resolution),

quòd cognovĕrant Divitĭăcum atque Ædŭos
because they had known Divitiacus and the Ædui

appropinquare finĭbus Bellovacorum. Potĕrat
to approach to the borders of the Bellovaci. It-was-able

non persuaderi his, ut morarentur
not to be persuaded to those, that they should delay

diutĭùs, nĕque ferrent auxilĭum suis.
longer, nor should bring assistance to their (*countrymen*).

11. Eâ re constitutâ, secundâ vigilĭâ,
That thing being resolved, in the second watch,

egressi castris cum magno strepĭtu
having gone-out from the camps with great noise

ac tumultu, nullo certo ordĭne nĕque imperĭo,
and tumult, in no certain order neither command,

quum quisque petĕret (imp. subj.) primum lŏcum
when each did seek the first place

itinĕris sĭbi, et properaret (imp. subj.)
of the journey to himself, and did-hasten

pervenire dŏmum, fecerunt, ut profectĭo
to arrive (to) home, they made, that (their) departure

videretur (imp. subj.) consimĭlis fŭgæ. Hâc
did seem like to a flight. This

re stătim cognĭta per speculatores, Cæsar
thing immediately being known by scouts, Cæsar

verĭtus insidĭas, quòd perspexĕrat nondum
having feared snares, because he had seen-clearly not-yet

de quâ caussâ discedĕrent (imp. subj.) continŭit
from what cause they did depart held

exercĭtum, que equitatum castris. Primâ luce
the army, and cavalry in camp. In first light,

re confirmatâ ab exploratorĭbus,
the thing being confirmed by scouts,

præmisit omnem equitatum, qui moraretur
he sent-before all the cavalry, which should delay

novissĭmum agmen; que præfecit
(detain) *the last troop* (rear); *and he appointed*

Quintum Pedĭum, et Lucĭum Aurunculeĭum Cottam
Quintus Pedius, and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta

legatos ĕi: jussit Titum Labienum
lieutenants to it: he ordered Titus Labienus

legatum subsĕqui cum trĭbus legionĭbus.
the lieutenant to follow-close with three legions

Hi adorti novissĭmos et prosecuti
These having attacked the last (rear) *and having pursued*

multa millĭa passŭum, conciderunt magnam
(*them*) *many thousands of paces, cut-up a great*

multitudĭnem eorum fugentĭum. Quum hi ab
multitude of them fleeing. When those from (on)

extremo agmĭne, ad quos ventum-ĕrat,
the last troop (rear), *to whom it had been come,*

consistĕrent (imp. subj.), que sustinerent (imp. subj.)
did stand-together, and did sustain

fortĭter impĕtum nostrorum militum; priores,
bravely the attack of our soldiers; the former (the

quòd viderentur (imp. subj.) abesse à
van), *because they did seem to be distant from*

periculo, nĕque continerentur (imp. subj.) ullâ
danger, nor were held-together by any

necessitate nĕque imperĭo, clamore exaudito,
necessity nor command, the noise being heard,

ordinĭbus perturbatis, omnes posuerunt
the ranks being disturbed (confused), *all placed*

præsidĭum sĭbi in fŭgâ. Ita sine ullo
safe-guard to themselves in flight. Thus without any

periculo nostri interfecerunt tantam multitudĭnem
danger our (men) *killed so-great a multitude*

eorum, quantum spatĭum diei fŭit; que
of them, as the space of the day was; and

sub occasum solis destiterunt
under (about) *the going-down of the sun they desisted*

sĕqui, que receperunt se in castra, ŭtì
to follow, and betook themselves into camps, as

imperatum-ĕrat.
it had been commanded.

12. Postridĭe ejus diei, priùs-quàm hostes
The day after of that day, before-that the enemies

recipĕrent se ex terrore ac fŭgâ,
might recover themselves out-of terror and flight,

Cæsar duxit exercĭtum in fines Suessi-
Cæsar led (his) *army into the borders of the Su-*

onum, qui ĕrant proxĭmi Rhemis; et
essiones. who were nearest to the Rhemi, and

magno itinĕre confecto, contendit ad
a great journey being accomplished, he hastened to

oppĭdum, Noviodunum. Conatus oppugnare
the town, Noviodunum. Having attempted to storm

id ex itinĕre, quòd audiebat
that out-of the journey (in his march), *because he did hear*

esse vacŭum ab defensorĭbus, potŭit
(*it*) *to be void from* (of) *defenders, he was-able*

non expugnare propter latitudĭnem fossæ,
not to storm (*it*) *on-account-of the breadth of the ditch,*

que altitudĭnem muri, paucis defendentĭbus.
and the height of the wall, few (*men*) *defending* (*it*).

Castris munitis cœpit agĕre
The camps being fortified he began to act (to apply)

vinĕas, que comparare quæ ĕrant
mantlets, and to prepare (*the things*) *which were*

usŭi ad oppugnandum. Intĕrim omnis multitudo
to use to to-storming. Meanwhile all the multitude

Suessionum ex fŭgâ convĕnit in
of the Suessiones out-of flight comes-together into

oppĭdum proxĭmâ nocte. Vinĕis actis
the town in the nearest (next) *night. Mantlets being applied*

celerĭter ad oppĭdum, aggĕre jacto, que
quickly to the town, a mound being thrown-up, and

turrĭbus constitutis, Galli permoti
towers erected, the Gauls much-moved (alarmed)

magnitudĭne opĕrum, quæ nĕque viderant
by the greatness of the works, which neither they had seen

antè nĕque audiĕrant, et celeritate
before nor had heard, and by the quickness

Romanorum, mittunt legatos ad Cæsărem
of the Romans, send ambassadors to Cæsar

de deditione; et, Rhemis petentĭbus,
about a surrender; and, the Rhemi seeking (asking),

ut conservarentur, impĕtrant.
that they might be preserved, they obtain (*safety*)

13. Primis civitatis, atque duobus filĭis
The first (men) of the state, and two sons

regis Galbæ ipsius acceptis obsidĭbus, que
of king Galba himself being received (as) hostages, and

omnĭbus armis transdĭtis ex oppĭdo, Cæsar
all arms being delivered out-of the town, Cæsar

accepit Suessiones in deditionem; que duxit
received the Suessiones into a surrender; and led

exercĭtum in Bellovăcos: qui quum contu-
the army into the Bellovaci: who when they had

lissent (pl. perf. subj.) se que omnĭa
brought-together themselves and all

sŭa in oppĭdum Bratuspantĭum, atque Cæsar,
their (things) into the town Bratuspantium, and Cæsar,

cum exercĭtu, abesset (imp. subj.) ab ĕo oppĭdo
with the army, was-distant from that town

circĭter quinque millĭa passùum, omnes
about five thousands of paces, all (those)

majores natu egressi ex oppĭdo,
greater by birth (elders) having gone-out from the town,

cœperunt tendĕre mănus ad Cæsărem,
began to stretch (their) hands to Cæsar,

significare voce, sese venire in fĭdem
to signify by voice, themselves to come into the faith

ac potestatem ejus nĕque contendĕre contra
and power of him nor to contend against

Romanum popŭlum armis: ĭtem, quum
the Roman people with arms: also, when

accessisset (pl. perf. subj.) ad oppĭdum, que
he had approached to the town, and

ponĕret (imp. subj.) castra ĭbi, puĕri que
did place camps there, the boys and

mulĭĕres ex muro, manĭbus passis,
women out-of (from) the wall, with hands stretched-out,

sŭo more, petierunt pacem à Romanis.
by their custom, sought peace from the Romans.

14. Divitiăcus făcit verba pro his
Divitiacus makes words (a speech) for these

(nam post discessum Belgarum, copĭis
(for after the departure of the Belgæ, the forces

Æduorum dimissis, revertĕrat ad
of the Æduі being sent-away, he had returned to

ĕum): Bellovăcos omni tempŏre fuisse
him (Cæsar)): *the Bellovaci in all time to have been*

in fĭde atque amicitiâ Ædŭæ civitatis;
in the faith and friendship of the Æduan state:

impulsos à sŭis principĭbus, qui dicĕrent (imp.
impelled by their chiefs, who did say

subj.) Ædŭos redactos in servitutem à Cæsăre,
the Æduі reduced into servitude by Cæsar,

perferre omnes indignitates que contumelĭas, et
to endure all indignities and affronts, and

defecisse ab Ædŭis, et intulisse
(both) *to have revolted from the Æduі, and to have brought-on*

bellum Romano popŭlo. Qui fuissent
war to the Roman people. (Those) who had been

(pl. perf. subj.) princĭpes hujus consilii, quòd
chiefs (authors) *of this counsel, because*

intelligĕrent (imp. subj.) quantam calamitatem
they did understand how-great a calamity

intulissent (pl. perf. subj.) civitati, profugisse
they had brought-on to the state, to have fled

in Britanniam. Non solùm Bellovăcos petĕre,
into Britain. Not only the Bellovaci to entreat

sed etĭam Ædŭos, pro his, ut utatur
but also the Æduі, for these, that he may use

sŭâ clementiâ ac mansuetudĭne in ĕos:
with his clemency and mildness towards them.

quod si fecĕrit, amplificaturum auctoritatem
which if he shall have done. about-to-enlarge the authority

Æduorum ăpud omnes Belgas, auxilĭis
of the Æduі at (among) *all the Belgæ, by aids*

atque opĭbus quorum consuevĕrint (perf. subj.)
and resources of whom they have been-accustomed

sustentare, si qua bella inciděrint.
to sustain, if any wars may have happened.

15. Cæsar, caussâ honoris
Cæsar, by cause (for the sake) of the honour

Divitiăci atque Æduorum, dixit sese
of Divitiacus and of the Ædui, said himself

recepturum ĕos in fĭdem et conservaturum;
about-to-receive them into faith and about-to-preserve

et quòd civĭtas ĕrat magna et
(them); and because the state was great and

præstabat inter Belgas auctoritate ac multitudĭne
did excel among the Belgæ in authority and in multitude

hominum, poposcit sex-centos obsĭdes: his
of men, he required six-hundred hostages: these

tradĭtis que omnĭbus armis collatis
being delivered and all (their) arms brought-together

ex oppĭdo, pervenit ab ĕo lŏco in
out-of the town, he arrived from that place into

fines Ambianorum, qui dediderunt se
the borders of the Ambiani, who surrendered themselves

que omnĭa sŭa sĭne mŏrâ. Nervĭi
and all their (things) without delay. The Nervians

attingebant fines eorum: de naturâ que
did reach-to the borders of them: of the nature and

morĭbus quorum, quum Cæsar quærĕret (imp. subj.),
manners of whom, when Cæsar did inquire,

reperiebat sic; nullum adĭtum esse mercatorĭbus
he did find thus; no access to be to merchants

ad ĕos; pătì nihil vini, que reliquarum
to them; to suffer nothing of wine, and of remaining

rerum pertinentĭum ad luxurĭam, inferri:
things tending to luxury, to be brought-in:

quòd existimarent (imp. subj.) animos eorum
because they did think the minds of them

relanguescĕre, que virtutem remitti his
to grow-feeble, and (their) virtue to be relaxed by these

rebus: homĭnes esse fĕros, que magnæ virtutis:
things: the men to be fierce, and of great virtue

increpitare atque incusare relĭquos
(valour): *to chide and to blame the remaining*

Belgas, qui dedissent (pl. perf. subj.) se
Belgæ, who had surrendered themselves

Romano popŭlo, que projecissent (pl. perf. subj.)
to the Roman people, and had cast-off

patrĭam virtutem; confirmare, se nĕque
(their) native virtue; to affirm, themselves neither

missuros legatos, nĕque accepturos ullam
about-to-send ambassadors, nor about-to-receive any

conditionem pacis
condition of peace.

16. Quum fecisset (pl. perf. subj.) ĭter
When he had made a journey

tridŭo per fines eorum, inveniebat
for three-days through the borders of them, he did find

ex captivis, flumen Sabin abesse ab
from the captives, the river Subis to be-distant from

sŭis castris non amplĭùs decem millĭa
his camps not more (than) ten thousands

passŭum: omnes Nervĭos consedisse
of paces: all the Nervii to have sat-down (were posted)

trans id flumen, que ĭbi unà cum
beyond that river, and there together with

Atrebatĭbus et Veromandŭis, sŭis finitĭmis,
the Atrebates and Veromandui, their neighbours,

expectare adventum Romanorum; nam
to await the arrival of the Romans; for

persuasĕrant utrisque his, ut experirentur
they had persuaded to both these, that they should try

eandem fortunam belli; etĭam copĭas
the same fortune of war; also the forces

Aduaticorum expectari ab his, atque esse
of the Aduatici to be waited-for by these, and to be

in itinĕre: conjecisse mulĭeres,
in way (march): *to have thrown-together the women,*

que qui per ætatem viderentur (imp. subj.)
and (those) who through age did seem

inutĭles ad pugnam, in ĕum lŏcum, quò
useless to fight, into that place, whither

propter paludes aditus esset non exercitŭi.
on-account-of the marshes access might be not to an army.

17. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar præmittit
These things being known, Cæsar sends-before

exploratores, que centuriones, qui delĭgant lŏcum
scouts, and centurions, who may choose a place

idonĕum castris: que quum complures ex
fit for camps: and when many out-of

Belgis que relĭquis Gallis deditităis,
the Belgæ and remaining Gauls surrendered,

secuti Cæsărem, facĕrent (imp. subj.)
having followed Cæsar, did make (their)

iter unà: quidam ex his, ut
journey together: certain-ones out-of these, as

postĕa cognĭtum-est ex captivis, consuetudĭne
afterwards it was known from the captives, the custom

itinĕris nostri exercĭtûs eorum dierum
of the journey (march) *of our army of those days*

perspectâ, pervenerunt nocte ad Nervĭos
being fully-seen, arrived by night to the Nervii

atque demonstraverunt ĭis magnum numĕrum
and shewed to those a great many

impedimentorum intercedĕre inter singŭlas
of baggage-waggons to come-between between each

legiones; nĕque esse quidquam negotii,
(the several) *legions; nor to be any-thing of business*

cùm prima legĭo venisset in
difficulty), *when the first legion might have come into*

castris, que relĭquæ legiones abessent
camps, and the remaining legions might be-distant

magnum spatĭum, adoriri hanc sub sarcĭnis:
a great space, to attack this under packs

quâ pulsâ, que impedimentis
(baggage): *which oeing routed, and the baggage-waggons*

direptis, futurum, ut relĭquæ
being plundered, about-to-be, that the remaining (legions)

auderent non consistĕre contrà. Etĭam adjuvabit
would dare not to stand against. Also it did assist

consilĭum eorum, qui deferebant rem,
the counsel of those, who did bring (report) the thing,

quòd Nervĭi antiquĭtùs, quum possent
because the Nervii anciently, when they were able (to do)

(imp. subj.) nĭhil equitatu, (ĕnim nĕque ad hoc
nothing in cavalry, (for neither to this

tempus stŭdent ĕi rĕi, sed, quidquid
time they study to that thing, but, whatever

possunt, vălent pedestrĭbus copĭis,) quò
they are-able, they are-strong in foot forces,) that

impedirent facilĭùs equitatum fini-
they might hinder more-easily the cavalry of (their)

timorum, si venisset ad ĕos caussâ
neighbours, if it might have come to them by cause

prædandi, tenĕris arborĭbus incisis
(for the sake) *of robbing, tender trees being cut*

atque inflexis, que crebris ramis enatis in
and bent-in, and thick boughs sprung-forth into

latitudĭnem, et rŭbis que sentĭbus inter-
breadth, and brambles and thorns being cast-

jectis, effecĕrant, ut hæ sepes præberent
between, they had effected, that these hedges did afford,

(imp. subj.) munimenta instar muri; quò
fortifications like of a wall; whither

posset (imp. subj.) non mŏdò non intrari, sed
it was able not only not to be entered, but

ne quĭdem perspĭci. Quum ĭter
not indeed to be seen-through. When the journey

nostri agmĭnis impediretur (imp. subj.) his
(march) *of our army was hindered by these*

rebus Nervĭi existimaverunt consilium non
things the Nervii thought the advice not

omittendum sĭbi.
to-be-omitted (neglected) *to* (by) *themselves.*

18. Hæc ĕrat natura lŏci, quem
This was the nature of the place, which

nostri delegĕrant castris. Collis æqualĭter
(*our*) *men had chosen for camps. A hill equally*

declivis ab summo vergebat ad
slanting from the highest (*place*) *did decline to*

flumen Sabim, quod nominavĭmus suprà:
the river Sabis (Sambre), *which we have named above:*

ab ĕo flumĭne pări acclivitate collis
from that river with equal acclivity a hill

nascebatur adversus et contrarĭus huic, infĭmus
did rise opposite and facing to this, the lowest

circĭter ducentos passus apertus,
(the bottom of the hill) *about two-hundred paces open,*

silvestris ab superiore parte; ut posset (imp.
woody from (on) *the higher part; that it was able*

subj.) non perspĭci facĭlè introrsus. Intra
not to be seen-through easily inwardly. Within

ĕas silvas hostes continebant se in
those woods the enemies did hold themselves in

occulto. In aperto lŏco, secundùm flumen,
secret. In the open place, near (along) *the river,*

paucæ stationes equĭtum videbantur. Altitudo
a few stations of horsemen were seen. The depth

flumĭnis ĕrat circĭter trĭum pĕdum.
of the river was about of three feet.

19. Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequebatur
Cæsar, the cavalry being sent before, did follow-closely

omnĭbus copĭis: sed ratĭo que ordo
with all (*his*) *forces:* *but* *the manner* *and* *order*

agmĭnis habebat se alĭter ac
of the troop (*on the march*) *did have* *itself* *otherwise* *and*

Belgæ detulĕrant ad Nervĭos.
(than) *the Belg* *had carried* (reported) *to* *the Nervii.*

Nam, quòd hŏstis appropinquabat, Cæsar sŭâ
For, *because* *the enemy* *did approach,* *Cæsar* *by his*

consuetudĭne ducebat sex expeditas legiones: post
custom *did lead* *six* *light-armed* *legions:* *after*

ĕas collocabat impedimenta
(behind) *those* *he did place* *the baggage-waggons*

totius exercĭtûs: inde dŭæ legiones, quæ
of the whole *army:* *then* *two* *legions,* *which*

conscriptæ-ĕrant proxĭmè, claudebant totum
had been enrolled *last,* *did shut* (close) *the whole*

agmen, que ĕrant præsidĭo impedi-
army (march), *and* *were* *for safeguard* *to the baggage-*

mentis. Nostri equĭtes cum funditorĭbus que
waggons. *Our* *horsemen* *with* *the slingers* *and*

sagittarĭis transgressi flumen, commiserunt prœlĭum
archers *having passed* *the river,* *joined* *battle*

cum equitatu hostĭum. Quum illi identĭdem
with *the cavalry* *of the enemies.* *When* *they* *now-and-then*

recipĕrent (imp. subj.) se in silvas ad sŭos,
did betake *themselves* *into* *the woods* *to* *their*

ac rursus facĕrent (imp. subj.) impĕtum in
(*men*), *and* *again* *did make* *an attack* *upon*

nostros ex silvâ; nĕque nostri auderent
our (*men*) *out-of* *the wood;* *nor* *our* (*men*) *did dare*

(imp. subj.) insĕqui cedentes longĭùs, quam ad
to pursue (*those*) *yielding* *further,* *than* *to*

quem finem porrecta ac aperta lŏca pertinebant:
what *end* *the extended* *and* *open* *places* *did reach:*

intĕrim sex legiones, quæ veněran primæ,
meanwhile *the six* *legions,* *which* *had come* *first,*

opĕre dimenso, cœperunt munire castra.
the work being measured, began to fortify camps.

Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercĭtûs visa-
When the first baggage-waggons of our army were-

sunt ab ĭis, qui latebant abdĭti in silvis,
seen by those, who did lie-hid concealed in the woods,

quod tempus convenĕrat inter ĕos
which time had been agreed-upon between them

committendi prœlĭum: ut constituĕrant intra
of joining battle: as they had placed within

silvas acĭem que ordĭnes, atque
the woods the line (of battle) and ranks, and

ipsi confirmavĕrant sese, subĭtò
themselves had strengthened themselves, suddenly

provolaverunt omnĭbus copĭis, que fecerunt
they flew-forth with all (their) forces, and made

impĕtum in nostros equĭtes. His pulsis
an attack upon our horsemen. These being routed

facĭlè ac proturbatis, decucurrerent incredibĭli
easily and disordered, they ran-down with incredible

celeritate ad flumen; ut penè uno tempŏre
quickness to the river; so-that almost in one time

hostes viderentur (imp. subj.) et ad
the enemies did seem and (both) at

silvas, et in flumĭne, et jam in nostris
the woods, and in the river, and now in our

manĭbus. Autem contenderunt eâdem
hands (close at hand). *But they hastened with the same*

celeritate adverso colle at nostra castra, atque ĕos
quickness in (up) *the opposite hill to our camps, and those*

qui ĕrant occupati in opĕre.
who were occupied in the work.

20. Omnĭa ĕrant agenda Cæsări uno
All (things) were to-be-acted to (by) *Cæsar in one*

tempŏre: vexillum proponendum, quod ĕrat
time: the standard to-be-set-up, which was

insigne, quum oporteret concurri ad
the sign, when it might behove to be run-together to

arma: signum dandum tŭbâ: milĭtes
arms: the signal to-be-given with trumpet: the soldiers

revocandi ab opĕre: qui processĕrant
to-be-recalled from the work: (those) who had proceeded

paullò longĭùs, caussâ aggĕris
a little further, by cause (for the sake) *of the rampart*

petendi, accersendi, acĭes
(*materials*) *to-be-sought* (*were*) *to-be-sent-for; the line*

instruenda: milĭtes cohortandi:
(*of battle*) *to be arranged: the soldiers to-be-exhorted:*

signum dandum. Magnam partem quarum rerum
the signal to-be-given. A great part of which things

brevĭtas tempŏris, et successus et incursus
the shortness of the time, and the coming-up and charge

hostĭum impediebat. Dŭæ res ĕrant subsidĭo
of the enemies did hinder. Two things were for aid

his difficultatĭbus, scientĭa atque usus
to these difficulties, the knowledge and experience

milĭtum, quòd, exercitati superiorĭbus
of the soldiers, because, being exercised in former

prœlĭis, potĕrant ipsi præscribĕre
battles, they were-able themselves to prescribe

sĭbi quid oporteret fiĕri, non mĭnùs
to themselves what it might behove to be done, not less

commŏdè, quàm doceri ab alĭis;
conveniently (properly), *than to be taught by others;*

et quòd Cæsar vetuĕrat singŭlos legatos
and because Cæsar had forbid the several lieutenants

discedĕre ab opĕre que singŭlis legionĭbus,
to depart from the work and (*their*) *several legions,*

nĭsi castris munitis. Hi, propter
unless the camps being fortified. These, on-account-of

propinquitatem et celeritatem hostĭum,
the nearness and swiftness of the enemies,

spectabant nĭhil jam imperĭum Cæsăris;
did regard (await) *not-at-all now the command of Cæsar:*

sed per se, administrabant quæ
but by themselves, did manage what (*things*)

videbantur.
did seem (*fit*).

21. Necessarĭis rebus imperatis, Cæsar
The necessary things being commanded, Cæsar

decucurrit ad milĭtes cohortandos in partem,
ran-down to the soldiers to-be-encouraged into a part,

quam fors obtŭlit; et devenit ad decĭmam
which chance presented; and came-down to the tenth

legionem. Cohortatus-est milĭtes non longiore
legion. He encouraged the soldiers not with longer

oratione, quàm ŭtì retinerent memorĭam
speech, than that they should retain the memory

sŭæ pristĭnæ virtutis, neu perturbarentur anĭmo
of their former valour, nor should be troubled in mind

que sustinerent fortĭter impĕtum hostĭum;
and should sustain bravely the attack of the enemies;

et, quòd hostes abĕrant non longĭùs,
and, because the enemies were-distant not farther,

quàm quò telum posset adjĭci, dĕdit
than whither a dart might be-able to be cast, he gave

signum prœlĭi committendi: atque profectus
the signal of battle to be engaged: and having set-out

ĭtem in altĕram partem, caussâ
likewise into another part, by cause (for the sake)

cohortandi, occurrit pugnantĭbus. Tanta
of encouraging, he meets (*them*) *fighting. So-great* (such)

fŭit exiguĭtas tempŏris, que tam paratus anĭmus
was the smallness of the time, and so prepared the mind

hostĭum ad dimicandum, ut tempus defuĕrit
of the enemies to contending, that time was wanting

(perf. subj.) non mŏdò ad insignĭa accommodanda,
not only to the ensigns to-be-arranged,

sed etĭam ad galĕas induendas, que tegmenta
but even to the helmets to-be-put-on, and the coverings

detrahenda scutis. In quam partem
to-be-drawn-off from the shields. Into what part

quisque devenit casu ab opĕre, que quæ
each came-down by chance from the work, and what

signa conspexit prima, constĭtit ad hæc, ne
standards he beheld first, he stood at these, lest

dimittĕret tempus pugnandi in quærendo
he might let-slip the time of fighting in seeking

sŭos.
his-own (comrades).

22. Exercĭtu instructo, măgis ut natura
The army being arranged, rather as the nature

lŏci que dejectus collis, et necessĭtas
of the place and the declivity of the hill, and the necessity

tempŏris postulabat, quàm ut ratĭo atque
of the time did require, than as the plan and

ordo militaris rĕi; quum alĭæ legiones
arrangement of military affair; when other legions

in alĭâ parte resistĕrent (imp. subj.)
in another part did resist (i. e. some in one part, some

hostĭbus diversis lŏcis, que
in another) *to the enemies in different places, and*

densissĭmis sepĭbus interjectis, ut demon-
very-thick hedges being thrown-between, as we have

stravĭmus antè, prospectus impediretur (imp. subj.):
shown before, the view was impeded:

nĕque certa subsidĭa potĕrant collocari, nĕque
neither sure reserves were able to be placed, nor

provideri, quid esset ŏpus in quâque
to be foreseen, what might be needful in each

parte; nĕque omnĭa imperĭa administrari ab
part; nor all the orders to be managed by

uno. Ităque, in tantâ iniquitate
one. Therefore, in so-great unfavourableness

rerum, varii eventus fortunæ quŏque sequebantur.
of things, various events of fortune also did follow.

23. Milĭtes nonæ et decĭmæ legionis,
The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legion,

ut constitĕrant in sinistrâ parte aciei,
as they had stood in the left part of the line, (their)

pilis emissis, celerĭter compulerunt ex
javelins being thrown, quickly forced from

superiore lŏco in flumen Atrebates, (nam
the higher place into the river the Atrebates, (for

ĕa pars obvenĕrat his) exanimatos cursu
that part had chanced to these) spent with running

ac lassitudĭne, que confectos vulnerĭbus;
and fatigue, and finished (exhausted) with wounds;

et insecuti gladĭis conantes
and having pursued with swords (them) endeavouring

transire, interfecerunt magnam partem eorum
to cross over, they killed a great part of them

impeditam. Ipsi dubitaverunt non transire flumen;
encumbered. They hesitated not to cross the river;

et progressi in iniquum lŏcum,
and having advanced into an unfavourable place,

dederunt in fŭgam hostes regressos
gave (put) into flight the enemies having returned

rursus ac resistentes, prœlĭo redintegrato. Item
again and resisting, the battle being renewed. Also

in alĭâ parte, dŭæ diversæ legiones, undecĭma
in another part, two different legions, the eleventh

et octava, Veromandŭis profligatis, cum quĭbus
and eighth, the Veromandui being routed, with whom

congressi-ĕrant, prœliabantur ex superiore
they had encountered, did fight from the higher

lŏco in ripis ipsis flumĭnis. At
place in (on) the banks themselves of the river But

totis castris fĕrè nudatis à fronte
the whole camps nearly being exposed from the front

et à sinistrâ parte, cùm duodecĭma legĭo
and from the left part (side), *when the twelfth legion*

et septĭma non magno intervallo ab ĕâ,
and the seventh not in great distance from it

constitisset (pl. perf. subj.) in dextro cornu
had stood-together in the right wing,

omnes Nervĭi confertissĭmo agmĭne, duce
all the Nervii in closest troop (array), *the leader*

Boduognato, qui tenebat summam
(*being*) *Boduognatus, who did hold the chief-place*

imperĭi, contenderunt ad ĕum lŏcum: pars
of command, hastened to that place: part

quorum cœpit circumvenire legiones aperto
of whom began to surround the legions (*on*) *the open*

latĕrĭ pars petĕre summum lŏcum castrorum.
flank, part to seek (attack) *the highest place of the camps.*

24. Eodem tempŏre nostri equĭtes que pedĭtes
In the same time our cavalry and infantry

lĕvis armaturæ, qui fuĕrant unà cum his,
of light armour, who had been together with these,

quos dixĕram pulsos(-esse) primo impĕtu
whom I had said to have been routed in the first attack

hostĭum, cùm recipĕrent (imp. subj.) se
of the enemies, when they did betake themselves

in castra, occurrebant hostĭbus adversis
into camps, did meet to the enemies opposite (in front)

ac rursus petebant fŭgam in alĭam partem.
and again did seek flight into another part.

Et calones, qui conspexĕrant à
And the soldiers'-servants, who had beheld from

Decumanâ portâ, ac summo jŭgo collis
the Decuman gate, and the highest ridge of the hill

nostros victores transire flumen, egressi
our (*men*) *conquerors to cross the river, having gone-out*

caussâ prædandi, quum respex-
by cause (for the sake) *of plundering, when they had*

issent (pluperf. subj.) et vidissent (pluperf. subj.)
looked-back *and* *had seen*

hostes versari in nostris castris, præcipĭtes
the enemies *to be engaged* *in* *our* *camps,* *hasty*

mandabant sese fŭgæ : sĭmul
did commit *themselves* *to flight :* *at the same-time*

clamor que fremĭtus eorum qui veniebant cum
the cry *and* *uproar* *of those* *who* *did come* *with*

impedimentis oriebatur, que alĭi
the baggage-waggons *did arise,* *and* *others* (some)

perterrĭti ferebantur in alĭam partem.
dismayed *were borne* *into* *another* (one) *part,* (*others*

Omnĭbus quĭbus rebus Trevĭri
into another part). *By all* *which* *things,* *the Trevirian*

equĭtes permoti, virtutis quorum est
cavalry *being alarmed,* *of the valour* *of whom* *there is*

singŭlaris opinĭo inter Gallos, qui
a singular (very high) *opinion* *among* *the Gauls,* *who*

missi caussâ auxilĭi à civitate,
being sent *by cause* (for the sake) *of aid* *by* *the state,*

venĕrant ad Cæsărem, quum vidissent (pluperf. subj.)
had come *to* *Cæsar,* *when* *they had seen*

nostra castra compleri multitudĭne hostĭum,
our *camps* *to be filled* *with a multitude* *of the enemies,*

legiones prĕmi, et teneri penè
the legions *to be pressed,* *and* *to be held* *almost*

circumventas, calones, equĭtes, Numĭdas
surrounded, *the soldiers'-servants,* *cavalry,* *Numidian*

funditores, diversos que dissipatos fugĕre in omnes
slingers, *apart* *and* *scattered* *to flee* *into* *all*

partes, nostris rebus desperatis, contenderunt
parts, *our* *things* (affairs) *being despaired of* *hastened*

dŏmum ; renŭntiaverunt civitati, Romanos pulsos
home ; *they announced* *to the state,* *the Romans* *routed*

que superatos, hostes potitos castris
and *overcome,* *the enemies* *having possessed* *the camps*

que impedimentis eorum.
and *baggage-waggons* *of them.*

25. Cæsar profectus ab cohortatione
Cæsar having set-out from the exhortation

decĭmæ legionis ad dextrum cornu, ŭbi vidit
of the tenth legion to the right wing, when he saw

sŭos urgeri, que signis
his (men) to-be-pressed-hard, and the standards

collatis in unum lŏcum, milĭtes
being brought-together into one place, the soldiers

duodecĭmæ legionis confertos esse impedi-
of the twelfth legion close-together to-be for an impe-

mento sĭbi-ipsis ad pugnam, omnĭbus centurionĭbus
diment to themselves to battle; all the centurions

quartæ cohortis occisis, que signi-
of the fourth cohort being killed, and the standard-

fĕro interfecto, signo amisso, fĕrè omnĭbus
bearer being slain, the standard being lost, almost all

centurionĭbus reliquarum cohortĭum, aut
the centurions of the remaining cohorts, either

vulneratis aut occisis, in his
being wounded or killed, in (among) these

primopilo Publĭo Sextĭo Bacŭlo, fortissĭmo
the first-centurion Publius Sextius Baculus, a very-brave

vĭro, confecto multis que gravĭbus vulnerĭbus,
man, being spent with many and heavy wounds,

ut jam posset (imp. subj.) non sustinere
(so) that now he was able not to support

se; relĭquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos
himself; the rest to be more-slow, and some

deŝertos à novissĭmis excedĕre prœlĭo,
being deserted by the rear to depart from the battle,

ac vitare tela; hostes nĕque inter
and to avoid the weapons; the enemies neither to inter-

mittĕre, subeuntes à fronte ex
mit, going-up (advancing) from the front from

inferiore lŏco, et instare ab utroque
the lower place (ground), and to press-on from either

latĕre, et rem esse in angusto,
flank, and the affair to be in a narrow (critical *state*),

nĕque esse ullum subsidĭum, quod posset
neither to be any aid, which might be-able

submitti; scuto detracto uni
to be sent-up; a shield being drawn-away to (from) *one*

milĭti ab novissĭmis (quòd ipse venĕrat
soldier from the latest (rear) (*because himself had come*

ĕò sĭne scuto) processit in primam
thither without a shield) *he advanced into the first*

aciem; que centurionĭbus appellatis nominatim,
line; and the centurions being called by-name,

cohortatus relĭquos, jussit milĭtes
having encouraged the rest, he commanded the soldiers

inferre signa, et laxare
to bear-on the standards, and to loosen (widen)

manipŭlos, quò possent uti
the companies. in-order-that they might be-able to use

gladĭis (abl.) facilĭùs. Spe illatâ
(*their*) *swords more-easily. Hope being brought-in*

milĭtĭbus adventu ejus, ac anĭmo
to the soldiers by the arrival of him, and mind (spirit)

redintegrato, quum quisque pro se cupĕret
being renewed, when every-one for himself did desire

(imp. subj.) navare opĕram
to ply (*his*) *endeavour* (to act with vigour)

in conspectu Imperatoris, etĭam in sŭis extremis
in sight of the General, even in his extreme

rebus. impĕtus hostĭum tardatus-est paullùm.
affairs (danger), *the violence of the enemies was retarded a-little.*

26. Quum Cæsar vidisset (pluperf. subj.) septĭmam
When Cæsar had seen the seventh

legionem, quæ constitĕrat juxtà, urgeri
legion, which had stood near, to be pressed

ĭtem ab hoste, monŭit tribunos milĭtum,
likewise by the enemy, he advised the tribunes of soldiers,

ut legiones conjungĕrent sese paullatim, et
that the legions should join themselves gradually, and

inferrent signa conversa
should-bear-on the standards turned (*on different sides*. i. e.

in hostes. Quo facto,
with double front) *against the enemies. Which being done,*

quum alĭi ferrent (imp. subj.) subsidĭum
when others (some) *did bring aid*

alĭis nĕque timerent (imp. subj.) ne aversi
to others nor did fear lest being turned

circumvenirentur ab noste, cœperunt
they might be surrounded by the enemy, they began

resistĕre audacĭùs ac pugnare fortĭùs.
to resist more-boldly and to fight more-bravely.

Intĕrim milĭtes duarum legionum, quæ
Meanwhile the soldiers of the two legions, which

fuĕrant in novissĭmo agmĭne præsidĭo
had been in the last troop (rear) *for protection*

impedimentis, prœlĭo nuntiato, cursu
to the baggages, the battle being announced, (*their*) *course*

incitato, conspiciebantur in summo
being accelerated, were beheld on the highest (the top

colle ab hostĭbus: et Titus Labienus
of) *the hill by the enemies: and Titus Labienus*

potitus castris (abl.) hostĭum, et
having possessed the camps of the enemies, and

conspicatus ex superiore lŏco, quæ res
having beheld from the higher place, what things

gererentur (imp. subj.) in nostris castris, misit
were carried-on in our camps. sent

decĭmam legionem subsidĭo nostris; qui
the tenth legion for (as) *aid to our* (*men*); *who*

quum cognovissent (pl. perf. subj.) ex fŭgâ
when they had known from the flight

equĭtum et calonum, in quo
of the cavalry and of the soldiers'-servants, in what

lŏco res esset (imp. subj.), que
place (situation) *the affair* *was,* *and*

quanto periculo et castra et legiones
in how-great *danger* *both* *the camps* *and* *legions*

et Imperator versaretur, fecerunt nĭhil
and *the Commander* *might-be,* *made* *nothing*

relĭqui sĭbi ad celeritatem.
of left (left nothing undone) *for themselves* *to* *speed.*

27 Tanta commutatĭo rerum facta-est
So-great *a change* *of things* *was made*

adventu horum, ut nostri etĭam qui
by the arrival *of these,* *that* *our* (*men*) *even* *who*

procubuissent (pluperf. subj.) confecti vulnerĭbus,
had lain-down *spent* *with wounds,*

innixi scutis, redintegrarent (imp. subj.)
having leaned *to* (on) *the shields,* *did renew*

prœlĭum. Tum calones conspicati
the battle. *Then* *the soldiers'-servants* *having beheld*

hostes perterrĭtos, etĭam inermes occurrĕrent
the enemies *dismayed,* *even* *unarmed* *did oppose*

(imp. subj.) armatis: equĭtes verò,
the armed (*enemies*): *the cavalry* *indeed,*

ut delerent turpitudĭnem fŭgæ virtute,
that *they might blot-out* *the disgrace* *of flight* *by valour,*

pugnabant in omnĭbus lŏcis, quò præferrent
did fight *in* *all* *places, in-order-that* *they might prefer*

se legionarĭis militĭbus. At
themselves (surpass) *to the legionary* *soldiers.* *But*

hostes, etĭam in extremâ spe salutis,
the enemies, *even* *in* *extreme* (last) *hope* *of safety*

præstiterunt tantam virtutem, ut, quum
performed (exhibited) *so-great* *valour,* *that,* *when*

primi eorum cecidissent proxĭmi insis-
the first *of them* *might have-fallen* *the nearest* *would*

tĕrent jacentĭbus, atque pugnarent
stand-on (*those*) *lying-down* (the slain), *and* *would fight*

ex corporibus eorum : his dejectis, et
from the bodies of them : these being prostrated, and

cadaveribus coacervatis qui
the dead-bodies being heaped-up (so that) (those) who

superessent, conjicerent tela in nostros ut ex
might remain, would hurl the darts upon our (men) as from

tumulo, que remitterent intercepta pila :
a hillock, and would hurl-back the intercepted javelins :

ut deberet (imp. subj.) judicari non nequidquam
so-that it ought to be judged not in vain

homines tantæ virtutis ausos-esse transire
men of so-great valour to have dared to cross

latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas,
a very-broad river, to ascend very-high banks,

subire iniquissimum locum : quæ
to go-up a most-unfavourable place : which (things)

magnitudo animi redegerat
the greatness of (their) mind had reduced (had rendered)

facilia ex difficillimis.
easy from most-difficult.

28. Hoc prœlio facto, et gente
This battle being made (fought), *and the nation*

hac nomine Nerviorum redacto prope ad
and name of the Nervii being reduced nearly to

internecionem : majores natu,
utter-destruction : (those) greater by birth (the elders),

quos dixeramus collectos una cum pueris
whom we had said being collected together with the boys

que mulieribus in æstuaria ac paludes, hac
and women into the estuaries (swamps) *and marshes, this*

pugna nuntiata, quum arbitrarentur (imp. subj.)
battle being announced, when they did think

nihil impeditum victoribus, nihil
nothing entangled (an obstacle) *to the conquerors, nothing*

tutum victis ; consensu omnium, qui
safe to the conquered ; by consent of all, who

superĕrant, miserunt legatos ad Cæsărem que
did remain, sent ambassadors to Cæsar and

dediderunt se ĕi: et in calamitate
surrendered themselves to him: and in the calamity

civitatis commemorandâ, dixerunt: sese
of the state to-be-recounted, they said: themselves

esse redactos ex sexcentis ad tres senatores;
to be reduced out-of six-hundred to three senators;

ex sexaginta millĭa homĭnum, ad vix
out-of sixty thousands of men, to scarcely

quingentos, qui possent ferre arma; quos
five-hundred, who might be-able to bear arms; whom

Cæsar conservavit diligentissĭmè, que jussit
Cæsar preserved most-carefully, and commanded

uti súis finĭbus atque oppĭdis, ut
to use with their-own territories and towns, that

videretur usus misericordĭâ in
he might seem having used with compassion unto

miseros ac supplĭces; et imperavit
the wretched and suppliant; and ordered

finitĭmus ut prohiberent
to the neighbouring (people) that they would prohibit (restrain)

se que sŭos ab injurĭâ et
themselves and their-own (people) from injury and

maleficĭo.
malice.

29. Aduatĭci, de quĭbus scripsĭmus suprà,
The Aduatici, of whom we have written above,

quum venirent (imp. subj.) omnĭbus copĭis
when they did come with all (their) forces

auxilĭo Nervĭis, hâc pugnâ nuntiatâ,
for (as) *aid to the Nervii, this battle being announced.*

reverterunt dŏmum ex itinĕre; cunctis
returned home from the journey (march); *all*

oppĭdis que castellis desertis, ontulerunt
the towns and castles being deserted, they brought-together

omnĭa sŭa in unum oppĭdum egregiè
all their (effects) into one town excellently

munitum naturâ: quum quod haberet
fortified by nature: when which (town) aid have

(imp. subj.) altissĭmas rupes que despectus
very-high rocks and views (precipices)

ex omnĭbus partĭbus in circuĭtu,
out-of all parts in compass (all round),

aditus leniter acclivis relinquebatur, ex unâ
an access gently steep was-left, from one

parte, non amplĭùs ducentis pĕdum in
part, not more (than) two-hundred of feet into (in)

latitudĭnem: quem lŏcum muniĕrant
breadth: which place they had fortified

altissĭmo duplĭci muro: tum collocârant
with a very-high double wall: then they had placed

saxa magni ponděris, et præacutas trăbes
stones of great weight, and sharp-pointed beams

in muro. Ipsi ĕrant prognati ex Cimbris
on the wall. They were descended from the Cimbri

que Teutŏnis. qui, quum facĕrent (imp. subj.)
and Teutoni: who, when they did make

ĭter in nostram Provincĭam atque Italĭam,
(their) march into our Province and Italy,

his impedimentis, quæ potĕrant non agĕre
those baggages, which they were-able not to act

ac portare secum, depositis
(manage) *and to carry with them, being deposited*

citra flumen Rhenum, reliquerunt unà
on-this-side the river Rhine, they left together

sex millĭa homĭnum ex sŭis custodĭæ
six thousands of men out-of their-own for a guard

ac præsidĭo. Hi, post obĭtum eorum,
and protection. These, after the death of them,

exagitati multos annos à finitĭmis,
being harassed many years by (their) neighbours,

quum aliàs inferrent (imp. subj.)
when otherwise (sometimes) *they did bring on*

bellum, aliàs defendĕrent (imp.
war, otherwise (at another time) *did repel* (*it*)

subj.) illatum, pace factâ consensu
brought-on, a peace being made by consent

omnĭum, delegerunt hunc lŏcum domicilĭo.
of all, chose this place for an abode.

30. Ac primo adventu nostri exercĭtûs,
And in the first arrival of our army,

faciebant crebras excursiones ex
they did make frequent excursions (sallies) *from*

oppĭdo, que contendebant parvŭlis prœliis
the town, and did contend in trifling battles

cum nostris. Postĕa circummuniti
with our (*men*). *Afterwards being fortified-around*

vallo duodĕcim pĕdum, quindĕcim millĭum
with a rampart of twelve feet, fifteen thousand

in circuĭtu, que crebris
(*feet*) *in compass, and with frequent* (numerous)

castellis, continebant sese oppĭdo.
castles, they did contain themselves in the town.

Ubi, vinĕis actis, aggĕre
When, the mantelets being acted (advanced), *a mound*

exstructo, viderunt turrim constitŭi
being constructed, they saw a tower to be erected

prŏcul, primùm irridere ex
at-a-distance, (*they began*) *firstly to mock from*

muro atque increpitare vocĭbus: quò
the wall and to chide by sayings: whither (to

tanta machinatĭo instituĕretur
what purpose) *so-great a machine might be constructed*

ab tanto spatĭo! quibusnam manĭbus,
from so-great a space (distance)! *with what hands,*

aut quĭbus virĭbus, confidĕrent sese
or with what forces, might they trust themselves

collocare turrim tanti oněris in muros,
to place a tower of so-great burden against the walls,

præsertim homĭnes tantŭlæ staturæ, (nam nostra
especially men of so-little stature, (for our

brevĭtas est contemptŭi plerisque Gallis hominĭbus,
shortness is for contempt to most Gallic men,

præ magnitudĭne suorum
before (in comparison with) *the magnitude of their-own*

corpŏrum).
bodies).

31. Verò ŭbi viderunt moveri, et
But when they saw (it) to be moved, and

appropinquare mœnĭbus, commoti nŏvâ
to approach to the walls, being alarmed by the new

et inusitatâ speciĕ, miserunt legatos ad
and unusual appearance, they sent ambassadors to

Cæsărem de pace: qui locuti (-sunt) ad hunc
Cæsar about peace: who spoke to this

mŏdum: Se existimare Romānos gerĕre
manner: Themselves to think the Romans to carry-on

bellum non sĭne ŏpe Deorum, qui
war not without the assistance of the Gods, who

possent promovere machinationes tantæ
might be able to move-forward machines of so-great

altitudĭnis tantâ celeritate, et pugnare ex
height with so-great speed, and to fight from

propinquitate: dixerunt permittĕre se que
nearness (close quarters): *they said to give-up themselves and*

omnĭa sŭa potestati eorum: petĕre
all their (effects) to the power of them: to seek

ac deprecari unum, si pro sŭâ
and to beg one (thing), if for (according-to) *his*

clementĭâ ac mansuetudĭne, quam ipsi audîssent
clemency and mildness, which they had heard

(pluperf. subj.) ab alĭis, statuisset
from others, he might have determined

fortè Aduatĭcos esse conservandos,
by-chance (perhaps) *the Aduatici to be to-be-preserved.*

ne-despoliaret se armis: omnes
he would not-deprive themselves from (of) *arms: all*

finitĭmos fĕrè esse inimicos sĭbi, ac
the neighbours nearly to be hostile to themselves, and

invidere sŭæ virtuti, à quĭbus possent
to envy to their valour, from whom they might be-able

non defendĕre se, armis tradĭtis;
not to defend themselves, (their) arms being delivered;

præstare sĭbi păti quamvis
to excel (to be better) *for themselves to endure any*

fortunam à Romano popŭlo, si deducerentur
fortune from the Roman people, if they should be led

in ĕum casum, quàm interfĭci ab his inter
into that calamity, than to be slain by those among

quos consuêssent (pluperf. subj.) dominari.
whom they had been accustomed to rule.

32. Cæsar respondit ad hæc: Se
Cæsar answered to these (words): *Himself*

conservaturum civitatem măgis sŭâ consuetudĭne
about-to-preserve the state rather by his custom

quàm merĭto eorum, si dedidissent
than by the merit of them, if they might have surrendered

se, prĭùs-quàm arĭes attigisset
themselves, before-that the battering-ram might have touched

murum: sed nullam conditionem deditionis esse,
the wall: but no condition of surrender to be,

nĭsi armis tradĭtis: se facturum
unless the arms being delivered-up: himself about-to-do

id, quod fecisset (pluperf. subj.) in Nervĭos;
that, which he had done unto the Nervii;

que imperaturum finitĭmis,
and about-to-order to the neighbouring (people),

ne-inferrent quam injurĭam deditĭtĭis
that they should not-bring any injury to the surrendered

Romani populi. Re nuntiatâ
(*subjects*) *of the Roman people. The thing being announced*

ad suos, illi dixerunt se facĕre, quæ
to their-own, they said themselves to do, what

imperarentur. Magnâ multitudĭne armorum
(*things*) *might be ordered. A great multitude of arms*

jactâ de muro in fossam, quæ ĕrat
being thrown from the wall into the ditch which was

ante oppĭdum, sic ut acervi armorum
before the town, so that the heaps of arms

adæquarent (imp. subj.) propè summam altitudĭnem
did equal nearly the highest height

muri que aggĕris: et tămen circĭter
of the wall and of the mound: and however about

tertĭâ parte celatâ, (ut perspectum-est
a third part being concealed, (as was clearly-seen

postĕa,) atque retentâ in oppĭdo, portis
afterwards,) and being retained in the town, the gates

patefactis, usi-sunt pace (abl.) ĕo
being thrown-open, they used (enjoyed) *peace on that*

dĭe.
day.

33. Sub vespĕrum Cæsar jussit
Under (towards) *evening Cæsar ordered*

portas claudi, que milĭtes exire
the gates to be shut, and the soldiers to go-out

ex oppĭdo, ne oppidani accipĕrent quam
from the town, lest the townsmen might receive any

injurĭam à militĭbus noctu. Illi, consilio
injury from the soldiers by night. They, a plan

inĭto antè, ut intellectum-est, quòd,
being entered-into before, as it was understood, because,

deditione factâ, crediderant nostros
the surrender being made, they had believed our (*people*)

non inducturos præsidĭa, aut denĭque
not about-to-introduce garrisons, or in-fine

servaturos indiligentĭùs: partim cum
about-to-keep (watch) very-carelessly: partly with

his armis, quæ retinuĕrant et celavĕrant,
those arms, which they had retained and had concealed,

partim scutis factis ex cortĭce, aut intextis
partly with shields made out-of bark, or woven

vimĭnĭbus, quæ induxĕrant pellĭbus
twigs, which they had laid-on (covered) with hides

subĭtò (ut exiguĭtas tempŏris postulabat),
suddenly (as the smallness of the time did require),

fecerunt eruptionem repentè ex oppĭdo omnĭbus
made a sally suddenly from the town with all

copĭis, tertĭâ vigilĭâ, quà ascensus ad
the forces, in the third watch, where the ascent to

nostras munitiones videbatur minĭmè ardŭus.
our fortifications did seem least difficult.

Significatione factâ celerĭter ignĭbus, ut Cæsar
A signal being made quickly by fires, as Cæsar

imperavĕrat antè, concursum-est ĕò ex
had ordered before, it was run-together thither from

proxĭmis castellis; que pugnatum (-est) ab
the nearest castles; and it was fought by

hostĭbus ĭta acrĭter, ut debŭit pugnari
the enemies so vigorously, as it ought to be fought

à forfĭbus vĭris in extremâ spe salutis,
by brave men in the last hope of safety,

iniquo lŏco, contra ĕos, qui jacĕrent (imp.
in an unfavorable place, against those, who did cast

subj.) tĕla ex vallo que turrĭbus, quum
weapons from the rampart and towers, when

omnis spes salutis consistĕret (imp. subj.) in
all hope of safety did consist in

virtute unâ. Ad quatŭor millĭbus homĭnum
valour alone. To (about) four thousands of men

occisis, relĭqui rejecti-sunt in oppĭdum.
being killed the rest were thrown-back into the town.

Postridĭe ejus diei, portis refractis, quum
The-day-after of that day, the gates being broken, when

nemo jam defendĕret (imp. subj.), atque nostris
no-one now did defend, and our

militĭbus intromissis, Cæsar vendĭdit universam
soldiers being let-in, Cæsar sold the entire

sectionem ejus oppĭdi. Numĕrus quinquaginta
section (allotment) *of that town. The number of fifty*

trĭum millĭum capĭtum relatus-est ab
three thousands of heads was brought back (reported) *by*

his qui emĕrant.
those who had bought (*them*).

34. Eodem tempŏre factus-est certĭor
In the same time he was made more-sure (was

à Publio Crasso, quem misĕrat cum
informed) *by Publius Crassus, whom he had sent with*

unâ legione ad Venĕtos, Unellos, Osismĭos,
one legion to the Veneti, Unelli, Osismii,

Curiosolitas, Sesuvĭos, Aulercos, Rhedŏnes, quæ
Curiosolitæ, Sesuvii, Aulerci, Rhedones, which

sunt maritĭmæ civitates, que attingunt occănum,
are maritime states, and touch-on the ocean,

omnes ĕas civitates redactas-esse in ditionem
all those states to have been-reduced into the authority

que potestatem Romani popŭli.
and power of the Roman people.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallĭâ
These things being carried-on, all Gaul

pacatâ, tantâ opinĭo hujus belli
being subdued, so-great an opinion of this war

perlata-est ad Barbăros, ut legati
was-carried to the Barbarians, that ambassadors

mitterentur (imp. subj.) ad Cæsărem ab nationĭbus,
were-sent to Cæsar by the nations,

quæ incolĕrent (imp. subj.) trans Rhenum, quæ
which did inhabit across the Rhine, which

pollicerentur (imp. subj.) se daturas obsĭdes,
did promise *themselves* *about-to-give* *hostages,*

facturas imperata: quas legationes
about-to-do (the things) *commanded:* *which* *embassies*

Cæsar jussit reverti ad se, proxĭmâ
Cæsar *commanded* *to return* *to* *himself,* *the next*

æstate inĭtâ, quòd properabat in
summer *being entered-on,* *because* *he did hasten* *into*

Italĭam, que Illyrĭcum. Ipse profectus-est in
Italy, *and* *Illyricum.* *Himself* *set-out* *into*

Italĭam, legionĭbus deductis in hiberna
Italy, *the legions* *being led-down* *into* *winter-quarters*

in Carnutes, Andes, Turŏnes, quæ civitates
into *the Carnutes,* *Andes,* *Turones,* *which* *states*

ĕrant propinquæ his lŏcis, ŭbi gessĕrat
were *neighbouring* *to those places,* *where* *he had carried-on*

bellum. Ex litĕris Cæsăris, supplicatĭo
war. *From* *the letters* *of Cæsar,* *a general-thanksgiving*

quindĕcim dĭes decreta-est ob ĕas
(for) fifteen *days* *was decreed* *on-account-of* *those*

res: quod accidĕrat nulli ante id
things: *which* *had happened* *to no-one* *before* *that*

tempus.
time.

TERTIUS LIBER.

THIRD BOOK.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Quinque bella gesta adversus varĭas gentes
Five wars carried-on against various nations

Gallĭæ describuntur hoc libro: primum adversus
of Gaul are described in this book: the first against

Veragros et Sedunos, quod gestum-fŭit,
the Veragri and Seduni, which was carried-on,

ipso quĭdem absente, sed auspicĭis
himself indeed (being) absent, but (under his) auspices

à Galbâ legato: secundum, contra
by Galba (his) lieutenant: the second, against

Venĕtos, quod ipse confecit navali prœlĭo:
the Veneti, which himself finished by a naval battle:

tertĭum, quod à legato
the third, which (was carried on) by (his) lieutenant

Titurĭo Sabino contra Unellos, Aulercos,
Titurius Sabinus against the Unelli, Aulerci,

Eburovĭces, et Lexovĭos: quartum, quo
Eburovices, and Lexovii: the fourth, in which

Sontiates et cætĕri Aquitani debellati-sunt
the Sontiates and the other Aquitani were subdued

à Publĭo Crasso: quintum, adversus Morĭnos
by Publius Crassus: the fifth, against the Morini

et Menapĭos, quod coactus-est relinquĕre
and Menapii, which he was compelled to leave

infectum propter tempus anni Omnĭa
unfinished on-account-of the time of the year. All

quæ peracta-sunt tertĭo anno Gallĭci
which were accomplished in the third year of the Gallic

belli, qui fŭit sexcentesĭmus nonagesĭmus
war, which was the six-hundredth ninetieth

octavus ab urbe condĭtâ, Cneĭo Lentŭlo
eighth from the city being built, Cneius Lentulus

Marcellino, Lucĭo Marcello Philippo
Marcellinus, Lucius Marcellus Philippus

Consulĭbus.
(being) Consuls.

1. Quum Cæsar proficisceretur (imp. subj.) in
When Cæsar did set-out into

Italĭam, misit Sergĭum Galbam cum duodecĭmâ
Italy, he sent Sergius Galba with the twelfth

legione et parte equitatûs in Nantuates,
legion, and part of the cavalry into the Nantuates,

Veragros, que Sedunos; qui pertĭnent à
Veragri, and Seduni; who reach from

finĭbus Allobrŏgum, et lăcu Lemano
the borders of the Allobroges, and the lake Lemanus

et flumĭne Rhodăno, ad summas
and the river Rhone, to the highest (top of the)

Alpes. Caussa mittendi fŭit, quòd
Alps. The cause of sending (him) was, because

volebat ĭter patefiĕri per Alpes,
he did will a passage to be laid-open through the Alps,

quo mercatores consuevĕrant ire cum
by which merchants had been accustomed to go with

magno periculo que magnis portorĭis. Permisit
great danger, and great tolls. He permitted

huic, si arbitraretur esse ŏpus, ŭtî
to him, if he should think (it) to be necessary, that

collocaret legionem in ŭis lŏcis, caussâ
he might place *a legion* *in* *those* *places,* *by cause*

hiemandi. Galba, alĭquot secundis
(for the sake) *of wintering.* *Galba,* *some* *successful*

prœlĭis factis, que cŏmplurĭbus castellis eorum
battles *being made,* *and* *several* *castles* *of them*

expugnatis, legatis missis undĭque ad
being stormed, *ambassadors* *being sent* *from-every-side* *to*

ĕum, que obsidĭbus dătis, et pace factâ,
him, *and* *hostages* *being given,* *and* *peace* *being made,*

constitŭit collocare dŭas cohortes in
resolved *to place* *two* *cohorts* *in* (among)

Nantuatĭbus; ipse hiemare cum relĭquis
the Nantuates; *himself* *to winter* *with* *the rest*

cohortĭbus ejŭs legionis, in vico
(remaining) *cohorts* *of that* *legion,* *in* *a village*

Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus: qui
of the Veragri, *which* *is called* *Octodurus:* *which*

vicus posĭtus in valle, non magnâ planitĭe
village *being placed* *in* *a valley,* *not* *a great* *plain*

adjectâ, continetur undĭque altissĭmis
being added, *is bounded* *on-every-side* *by very-high*

montĭbus.
mountains.

2. Quum hic divideretur (imp subj.) in dŭas
Since *this* *was divided* *into* *two*

partes flumĭne, concessit altĕram partem
parts *by the river,* *he granted* *the other* (one) *part*

ejus vici Gallis; attribŭit altĕram
of that *village* *to the Gauls;* *he assigned* *the other*

relictam vacŭam ab illis cohortĭbus ad-hiemandum:
left *vacant* *by* *them* *to the cohorts* *to-winter:*

munivit ĕum lŏcum vallo que fossâ.
he fortified *that* *place* *with a rampart* *and* *with a trench.*

Quum complures dĭes hibernorum transîssent
When *several* *days* *of the winter-quarters* *had passed*

(pluperf. subj.) que jussisset (pluperf. subj.) frumentum
and *he had ordered* *corn*

comportari ĕò, factus-est certĭor
to be brought *thither,* *he was made* *more sure* (was in-

subĭtò per exploratores, omnes
formed) *suddenly* *by* *scouts,* *all* (*the people*)

discessisse noctu ex ĕâ parte vici,
to have departed *by night* *from* *that* *part* *of the village,*

quam concessĕrat Gallis; que montes,
which *he had granted* *to the Gauls;* *and* *the mountains,*

qui impenderent (imp. subj.), teneri à max-
which *did impend,* *to be held* *by* *a very-*

ĭmâ multitudĭne Sedunorum et Veragrorum.
great *multitude* *of the Seduni* *and* *of the Veragri.*

Id acciderat de alĭquot caussis, ut
That *had happened* *from* *some* *causes,* *that*

Galli capĕrent (imp. subj.) subĭtò consilĭum
the Gauls *did take* *suddenly* *the design*

belli renovandi que legionis opprimendæ.
of the war *to-be-renewed* *and* *of the legion* *to-be-overwhelmed.*

Primùm, quòd despiciebant legionem, propter
First, *because* *they did despise* *the legions,* *on-account-of*

paucitatem, nĕque ĕam plenissĭmam, duabus
(*its*) *fewness,* *neither* *that* *very-full,* *two*

cohortĭbus detractis et complurĭbus
cohorts *having been drawn-out* (*of it*) *and* *many* (*men*)

sigillatim absentĭbus, qui missi-ĕrant caussâ
individually (*being*) *absent,* *who* *had been sent* *by cause*

commeatûs petendi: tum etĭam,
(for the purpose) *of provision* *to-be-sought:* *then* *also,*

quòd existimabant ne quĭdem primum
because *they did think* *not* *indeed* (even) *the first*

impĕtum posse sustineri, quum
shock *to be able* *to be withstood* (by the Romans), *when*

ipsi decurrĕrent ex montĭbus in vallem,
themselves *might run-down* *from* *the mountains* *into* *the valley*

et conjicĕrent tela. Accedebat,
and they might hurl (their) darts. It did approach

quòd dolebant sŭos lĭbĕros
(added to this), *because they did grieve their children*

abstractos ab se nomĭne
being drawn-away from themselves (under) the name

obsĭdum; et habebant persuasum
of hostages; and they did have (it) persuaded

sĭbi Romanos conari occupare culmĭna
to themselves the Romans to endeavour to occupy the tops

Alpĭum non solùm caussâ
of the Alps not only by cause (for the sake)

itinĕris, sed etĭam perpetŭæ possessionis,
of a way (passage), *but also of perpetual possession,*

et adjungĕre ĕa lŏca finitĭmæ
and to unite those places to the neighbouring

provincĭæ.
province.

3. His nuncĭis acceptis, quum
These messages (news) *being received, when*

nĕque ŏpus hibernorum, que muni-
neither the work of the winter-quarters, and the for-

tiones essent (imp. subj.) plenè perfectæ, nĕque
tifications were fully finished, nor

esset (imp. subj.) provisum sătis de frumento,
it was provided sufficiently about corn,

que relĭquo commeatu, quòd, deditione
and the rest (other) *provision, because, a surrender*

factâ, que obsidĭbus acceptis, Galba
being made, and hostages being received, Galba

existimavĕrat nĭhil timendum dè bello:
had thought nothing to-be-feared about war:

concilĭo convocato celerĭter, cœpit exquirĕre
council being called-together quickly, he began to seek

sententĭas. In quo concilĭo, quum
(its) opinions. In which council, when (since)

tantum repentini periculi accidisset (plup.
so-great (so much) *of sudden danger had happened*

subj.) præter opinionem, ac jam ferè omnia
contrary-to opinion, and now nearly all

superiora loca conspicerentur (imp. subj.) completa
the higher places were seen filled

multitudine armatorum, neque posset (imp.
with a multitude of armed (men), neither it was-able

subj.) veniri subsidio, neque commeatus
to be come to aid (secure re-inforcements), *neither provision*

supportari, itineribus interclusis: jam salute
to be brought-up, the ways being shut-up: now safety

propè desperatâ, nonnullæ sententiæ hujusmodi
nearly being despaired-of, some opinions of this kind

dicebantur; ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione
were said; that, the baggages being left, a sally

factâ, contenderent ad salutem, iisdem
being made, they should set-out to safety, by the same

itineribus, quibus pervenissent (plup. subj.) eò.
ways, by which they had arrived thither.

Tamen placuit majori parti, hoc consilio
However it pleased to the greater part, this counsel

reservato ad extremum, experiri eventum
being reserved to the last, to try the issue

rei interim, et defendere castra.
of the thing meanwhile, and to defend the camps.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto,
A short space being cast-between (having elapsed),

vix ut tempus daretur his rebus,
scarcely that time might be given for these things,

quas constituissent (pluperf. subj.), collocandis
which they had resolved, to-be-arranged

atque administrandis, hostes decurrere
and to-be-managed, the enemies (*began*) *to run-down*

ex omnibus partibus, signo dato,
from all parts, a sign being given, (*and*)

conjicĕre lapĭdes que gæsa in vallum.
to hurl stones and heavy darts into the rampart.

Nostri primò repugnare fortĭter intĕgris
Our (men) at first to (did) *repulse* (resisted) *bravely with entire*

virĭbus nĕque mittĕre
forces (while their strength was fresh), *nor to* (did they) *cast*

ullum telum frustrà ex superiore lŏco: ut
any weapon in-vain from the higher place: as

quæque pars castrorum nudata defensorĭbus
each part of the camps stripped from (of) *defenders*

videbatur prĕmi, occurrĕre ĕò, et ferre
did seem to be pressed, to run thither, and to bring

auxilĭum: sed superari hoc, quòd hostes
aid: but to be surpassed in this, because the enemies

defessi diuturnitate pugnæ excedebant prœlĭo,
wearied by the length of the fight did retire from battle,

alĭi succedebant intĕgris virĭbus:
others did succeed with entire (fresh) *forces* (strength):

nĭhil quarum rerum potĕrat fiĕri à
nothing of which things was-able to be done by

nostris propter paucitatem; ac non
our (men) on-account-of (their) fewness; and not

mŏdò facultas dabatur defesso excedendi
only (no) power was given to a wearied (man) of retiring

ex pugnâ, sed ne quĭdem saucĭo
from the fight, but not indeed (even) *to a wounded (man)*

relinquendi ejus lŏci, ŭbi constitĕrat, ac
of leaving of that place, where he had stood, and

recipiendi sŭi.
of taking-away of himself.

5. Quum pugnaretur jam continenter amplĭùs
When it was fought now unceasingly more (than)

sex horis, ac non solùm vires sed etĭam
six hours, and not only forces (strength) *but also*

tela deficĕrent (imp. subj.) nostris, atque
weapons did fail to our (men), and

hostes instarent (imp. subj.) acrĭùs, que
the enemies did press-on more-vigorously, and

nostris languidioribus, cœpissent (pluperf. subj.)
our (men) (being) more-faint, had begun

scindĕre vallum et complere fossas, que
to tear the rampart and to fill-up the ditches, and

res esset (imp. subj.) jam deducta ad
the affair was now led (brought) *to*

extremum casum; Publĭus Sextĭus Bacŭlus, centurĭo
the last chance; Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion

primipili quem dixĭmus confectum (-esse)
of the first-rank whom we have said to have been finished

compluribus vulneribus Nervĭco
(exhausted) *with many wounds in the Nervian*

prœlio, et ĭtem Caĭus Volusenus, tribunus milĭtum,
battle, and also Caius Volusenus, a tribune of soldiers,

vir et magni consilĭi et virtutis, accurrunt ad
a man both of great counsel and valour, run-up to

Galbam, atque docent unam spem
Galba, and teach (inform him) *one* (the only) *hope*

salutis esse, si eruptione factâ, experirentur
of safety to be, if a sally being made, they should try

extremum auxilĭum. Ităque centurionibus
the last aid. Therefore the centurions

convocatis, făcit milites certiores
being called-together, he makes the soldiers more-sure

intermittĕrent prœlĭum paullisper,
(informs them) *they should intermit the battle a little-while,*

ac excipĕrent tantummŏdo tela missa,
and should receive only the weapons sent

que reficĕrunt se ex labore;
(thrown), *and should refresh themselves from labour;*

pòst, signo dato, erumpĕrent
afterwards, a sign being given, they should burst-forth

è castris, atque ponĕrent omnem spem
from the camps, and should place all hope

salutis in virtute.
of safety in valour.

6. Facĭunt, quod jussi-sunt; ac eruptione
They do, what they were-ordered; and a sally

factâ subĭtò omnĭbus portis, relinquunt
being made suddenly from all the gates, they leave

facultatem hostĭbus nĕque cognoscendi quid
power to the enemies neither of knowing what

fiĕret, nĕque sŭi colligendi.
might be done, nor of themselves to-be-collected (of

collecting themselves). Ita, fortunâ commutatâ,
Thus, fortune being changed,

interficĭunt ĕos circumventos undĭque, qui
they slay those surrounded on-every-side, who

venĕrant in spem castrorum potiundorum; et
had come into hope of the camps to-be-possessed; and

ex amplĭus triginta millĭbus homĭnum, (quem
out-of more (*than*) *thirty thousands of men,* (*which*

numĕrum barbarorum constabat venisse
number of the barbarians it was-manifest to have come

ad castra) plus tertĭâ parte interfectâ,
to the camps) *more* (*than*) *the third part being killed,*

conjicĭunt in fŭgam relĭquos perterrĭtos; ac
they throw into flight the rest affrighted; and

patiuntur consistĕre ne quĭdem in superioribus
suffer (*them*) *to stand not indeed* (even) *in the higher*

lŏcis. Sic omnĭbus copĭis hostĭum
places. Thus all the forces of the enemies

fusis, que exutis armis, recipĭunt
being routed, and stripped-of (*their*) *arms, they betake*

se in castra que sŭas munitiones.
themselves into the camps and their fortifications.

Quo prœlĭo facto, quòd Galba nolebat
Which battle being made, because Galba was-unwilling

tentare fortunam sæpĭùs, atque meminĕrat
to try fortune too-often, and he had remembered

sese venisse alĭo consilĭo
himself to have come with another (different) *intention*

in hiberna, videbat occurrisse
into winter-quarters, he did see (himself) to have met

aliis rebus; permotus maxĭmè inopĭâ
to other things; being moved chiefly with the want

frumenti que commeatûs: postĕro dĭe,
of corn and of provision: on the following day,

omnĭbus ædificĭis ejus vici incensis,
all the buildings of that village being burned,

contendit reverti in provincĭam: ac nullo
he hastened to return into the province: and no

hoste prohibente, aut demorante ĭter, perduxit
enemy preventing, or delaying (his) journey, he led

legionem incolŭmem in Nantuates, inde in
the legion safe into the Nantuates, thence into

Allobrŏges, que hiemavit ĭbi.
the Allobroges, and he wintered there.

7. His rebus gestis, quum Cæsar
These things being carried-on, when Cæsar

existimaret (imp. subj.) Gallĭam pacatam de omnĭbus
did think Gaul subdued from all

caussis; Belgis superatis, Germanis
(*these*) *reasons; the Belgæ being overcome, the Germans*

expulsis, Sedunis in Álpĭbus victis,
being expelled, the Seduni in the Alps being conquered,

atque ĭta hiĕme inĭtâ profectus-esset
and thus the winter being entered-on had set-out

(plup. subj.) in Illyrĭcum, quòd volebat
into Illyricum, because he did wish

adire ĕas nationes quŏque et cognoscĕre
to go-to those nations also and to know (become

regiones; subĭtum bellum
acquainted with) *the countries; a sudden war*

coortum-est in Gallĭâ Hæc fŭit caussa ejus
arose in Gaul. This was the cause of that

belli. Publĭus Crassus adolescens hiemabat cum
war. Publius Crassus a young-man did winter with

septĭmâ legione in Andĭbus proxĭmus Oceănum
the seventh legion in the Andes nearest the Ocean

măre. Is dimisit complures præfectos que
sea. He dismissed many prefects and

tribunos militum in finitĭmas civitates,
tribunes of soldiers into the neighbouring states,

caussâ frumenti que commeatûs
by cause (for the sake) of corn and of provision

petendi, quòd inopĭa frumenti ĕrat in his
to-be-sought, because a want of corn was in these

locis: in quo numĕro Titus Terrasidĭus
places: in which number Titus Terrasidius

missus-ĕrat in Eusubĭos; Marcus Trebĭus
had been sent unto the Eusubii; Marcus Trebius

Gallus in Curiosolitas; Quintus Velanĭus cum
Gallus unto the Curiosolitæ, Quintus Velanius with

Tito Silĭo in Venĕtos.
Titus Silius unto the Veneti.

8. Auctorĭtas hujus civitatis est longè
The authority of this state is by-far

amplissĭma omnis maritĭmæ oræ earum
the most-extensive of all the maritime coast of those

regionum; quòd Venĕti habent et plurĭmas
countries; because the Veneti have both very-many

naves, quĭbus consueverunt navigare in
ships, with which they have been accustomed to sail into

Britanniam; et antecedunt cætĕros scientĭâ
Britain; and they excel the rest in the knowledge

atque usu nauticarum rerum; et in magno atque
and use of naval things; and in a great and

aperto impĕtu măris, paucis portŭbus interjectis,
open violence of sea, few harbours being cast-between

quos ipsi tĕnent, hăbent fĕrè
(intervening), *which themselves hold, they have nearly*

omnes vectigales, qui consueverunt ius
all tributary, who have been accustomed to use

eodem mări. Initĭum Silĭi atque
with the same sea. The beginning of Silius and

Velanĭi retinendi fŭit ab ĭis, quòd per
of Velanius to be retained was from those, because through

ĕos existimabant se recuperaturos sŭos
them they did think themselves about-to-recover their

obsĭdes, quos dedissent (pluperf. subj.) Crasso.
hostages, whom they had given to Crassus.

Finitĭmi adducti auctoritate
The neighbouring (people) induced by the authority

horum (ut consilĭa Gallorum sunt subĭta et
of these (as the counsels of the Gauls are sudden and

repentina) retĭnent Trebĭum que Terrasidĭum de
immediate) detain Trebius and Terrasidius from

eâdem caussâ: et legatis missis celerĭter,
the same cause: and ambassadors being sent quickly,

conjurant inter se per sŭos princĭpes;
they conspire among themselves through their chiefs;

esse acturos nĭhil nĭsi communi consilĭo,
to be about-to-act (would do) *nothing unless by common counsel,*

que laturos eundem exĭtum omnis fortunæ; que
and about-to-bear the same issue of all fortune; and

sollicĭtant relĭquas civitates, ut mallent
they solicit the remaining states, that they would-rather

permanere in ĕâ libertate, quam accepĕrant
to remain in that liberty, which they had received

à majorĭbus, quàm perferre servitutem
from (their) ancestors, than to endure the slavery

Romanorum. Omni maritĭmâ orâ perductâ
of the Romans. All the maritime coast being led-over

celerĭter ad sŭam sententĭam, mittunt communem
quickly to their opinion, they send a common

legationem ad Publĭum Crassum, "Si
(general) *embassy to Publius Crassus, "If*

vĕlit recipĕre sŭos, remittat
he may will to receive his (ambassadors), he may send-back

obsĭdes sĭbi."
(their) hostages to themselves."

9. De quĭbus rebus Cæsar factus
Concerning which things Cæsar being made

certĭor à Crasso, jŭbet
more-sure (being informed) *by Crassus, he orders*

longas naves ædificari intĕrim in
long ships (ships of war) *to be built meanwhile on*

flumĭne Ligĕri, quod inflŭit Oceănum,
the river Liger (Loire), *which flows-into the Ocean,*

remĭges institŭi ex Provincîâ, nautas
rowers to be prepared from the Province, sailors

que gubernatores comparari, quòd ipse
and pilots to be procured, because himself

abĕrat longĭus. His rebus administratis
was-distant farther (too far). *These things being managed*

celerĭter, ipse contendit ad exercĭtum, quàm-primùm
quickly, himself hastened to the army, as-soon-as

potŭit per tempus anni. Venĕti
he was-able through the time of the year. The Veneti

que ĭtem relĭquæ civitates, adventu Cæsăris
and also the rest (other) *states, the arrival of Cæsar*

cognĭto, sĭmul quòd intelligebant
being known, at the same-time because they did understand

quantum facĭnus admisissent (pluperf. subj.) in
how-great a crime they had admitted unto

se legatos, nomen quod semper fuisset
themselves, the ambassadors, a name which always had been

(pluperf. subj.) sanctum que inviolatum ăpud
holy and inviolate at (among)

omnes nationes, retentos ab se et
all nations, being detained by themselves and

conjectos in vincŭla; institŭunt parare bellum
cast into chains; resolve to prepare war

pro magnitudĭne pericŭli, et
for (in proportion to) *the greatness of the danger, and*

maxĭmè providere ĕa quæ pertinerent
chiefly to provide those (things) *which did relate*

(imp. subj.) ad usum navĭum; hôc,
to the use of ships; from this (on this

majore spe, quòd confidebant
account), *with greater hope, because they did trust*

multùm naturâ lŏci. Sciebant
much in the nature of the place. They did know

pedestrĭa itinĕra concisa-esse æstuarĭis;
the foot (land) *ways to have been cut-up by æstuaries*

navigationem impeditam propter inscientĭam
navigation prevented on-account-of (our) *ignorance*

locorum que paucitatem portŭum: confidebant
of the places and the fewness of the harbours: they did trust

nostros exercĭtus nĕque posse morari diutĭùs
our armies neither to be able to delay longer

ăpud se, propter inopĭam frumenti.
at (among) *themselves, on-account-of the want of corn*.

Ac jam, ut omnĭa acciderent contra
And now, though all (things) *might-happen against*

opinionem, tămen se posse
(*their*) *opinion, yet themselves to be able* (to do)

plurĭmum navĭbus: Romanos habere nĕque ullam
very much in ships: the Romans to have neither any

facultatem navĭum, nĕque novisse văda,
power of ships, nor to have-known the shallows,

portus, insŭlas eorum locorum, ŭbi essent (imp.
harbours, islands of those places, where they were

subj.) gesturi bellum: ac perspiciebant
about-to-carry-on war: and they did clearly-see

navigationem in concluso mări, atque in
navigation in an inclosed sea, and in

vastissĭmo atque apertissĭmo Oceăno, esse longè
a most-immense and most-open Ocean, to be far

alĭam. His consilĭis inĭtis,
other (different). *These counsels being entered-into,*

munĭunt oppĭda, comportant frumenta (pl.)
they fortify the towns, they bring-together corn

ex agris in oppĭda; cogunt naves
from the lands into the towns; they collect (their) ships

quàm-plurĭmas possunt, in Venetĭam, ŭbi
as-many-as they can, into Venetia, where

constabat Cæsărem primum gesturum
it was-evident Cæsar (to be) first about to carry-on

bellum. Adsciscunt socĭos sĭbi ad id
the war. They unite (as) allies to themselves to that

bellum Osismĭos, Lexovĭos, Nannetes, Ambialites,
war the Osismii, Lexovii, Nannetes, Ambialites,

Morĭnos, Diablintes, Menapĭos; accersunt auxilĭa
Morini, Diablintes, Menapii; they send-for auxiliaries

ex Britannĭâ, quæ est posĭta contra
from Britain, which is placed against (opposite)

eas regiones.
those countries.

10. Hæ ĕrant difficultates belĭi gerendi,
These were the difficulties of a war to-be-carried-on,

quas ostendĭmus suprà: sed tămen multa
which we have shown above: but however many (*things*)

incitabant Cæsărem ad id bellum: injurĭæ
did urge Cæsar to that war: the injuries

Romanorum equĭtum retentorum: rebellĭo
of Roman knights being detained: the rebellion

facta post deditionem: defectio, obsidĭbus
being made after a surrender: the revolt, hostages

dătis: conjuratĭo tot civitatum:
having been given: the conspiracy of so-many states:

in-primis, ne, hâc parte neglectâ, relĭquæ
in-particular, lest, this part being neglected, the rest

nationes arbitrarentur ĭdem licere
(other) *nations might think the same* (*thing*) *to-be-lawful*

sĭbi. Ităque quum intelligĕret (imp. subj.)
for themselves. Therefore when he understood

fĕrè omnes Gallos studere nŏvis
nearly all the Gauls to study (to be desirous) *for new*

rebus, et excitari mobilĭter que
things (revolution), *and to-be-roused changeably and*

celerĭter ad bellum; autem omnes homĭnes naturâ
quickly to war; but all men by nature

studere libertati, et odisse
to study for liberty, and to have hated (to hate)

conditionem servitutis; prĭùs-quam plures civitates
the condition of slavery; before-that more states

conspirarent, putavit exercĭtum partiendum, ac
should conspire, he thought the army to-be-divided, and

distribuendum latĭùs sĭbi.
to-be-distributed more-widely to (by) *himself.*

11. Ităque mittit Titum Labienum legatum
Therefore he sends Titus Labienus (*his*) *lieutenant*

cum equitatu in Trevĭros, qui sunt proxĭmi
with the cavalry unto the Treviri, who are nearest

flumĭni Rheno. Mandat huic, aděat
to the river Rhine. He charges to him, (*that*) *he may go-to*

Rhemos que relĭquos Belgas, atque continĕat
the Rhemi and the rest-of the Belgæ, and may constrain

in officĭo; que prohibĕat Germanos, qui
(*them*) *in duty; and may prevent the Germans, who*

dicebantur accersiti auxilĭo à Belgis, si
were-said being sent-for to aid by the Belgæ, if

conentur per vim transire flumen
they may attempt by force to cross the river

navĭbus. Jŭbet Publĭum Crassum cum
with ships. He orders Publius Crassus with

duodĕcim legionarĭis cohortĭbus, et magno numĕro
twelve legionary cohorts, and a great number

equitatûs proficĭsci in Aquitanĭam, ne auxilĭa
of cavalry to set-out into Aquitania, lest auxiliaries

mittantur ex his nationĭbus in Gallĭam, ac
may be sent out-of these nations into Gaul, and

tantæ nationes conjungantur. Mittit Quintum
so-great nations may be united. He sends Quintus

Titurĭum Sabinum legatum cum trĭbus legionĭbus
Titurius Sabinus (his) lieutenant with three legions

in Unellos, Curiosolitas, que Lexovĭos; qui
unto the Unelli, the Curiosolitæ, and the Lexovii; who

curet ĕam mănum distinendam.
may take-care that band (of people) to-be-checked.

Præfecit Decĭum Brutum adolescentem classi,
He appointed Decius Brutus a young-man to the fleet,

que Gallĭcis navĭbus, quas jussĕrat
and to the Gallic ships, which he had ordered

convenire ex Pictonĭbus que Santŏnis, et
to assemble from the Pictones and Santoni, and

relĭquis pacatis regionĭbus; et jŭbet
the rest (other) subdued countries; and he orders

proficisci quàm-primùm posset, in
(him) to set-out as-soon-as he might be-able, unto

Venĕtos. Ipse contendit ĕò pedestrĭbus
the Veneti. Himself hastens thither with the foot

copĭis.
forces.

12. Sĭtus oppidorum ĕrant fĕrè
The situations of (their) towns were nearly

ejusmŏdi, ut posĭta in extremis lingŭlis
of this-sort, that being placed in extreme little-tongues

que promontorĭis, haberent (imp. subj.) nĕque adĭtum
and promontories, they had neither access

pedĭbus, quum æstus incitavisset se ex
by feet, when the tide might have urged itself from

alto, quod accĭdit semper bis spatĭo
the deep, which happens always twice in the space

duodĕcim horarum: nĕque navĭbus, quòd
of twelve hours: neither by ships, because

æstu rursus minuente naves afflicta-
the tide again diminishing (ebbing) the ships might be

rentur in vădis. Ita utrâque re
dashed on the shallows. Thus from each thing

oppugnatĭo oppidorum impediebatur. Ac, si
an assault *of the towns* *was prevented.* *And,* *if*

quando fortè superati magnitudĭne
any-time *by-chance* *being overcome* *by the greatness*

opĕris, mări extruso aggĕre ac
of a work, *the sea* *being shut-out* *by a mound* *and*

molĭbus, atque his adæquatis fermè mœnĭbus
by moles, *and* *these* *being equalled* *nearly* *to the walls*

oppĭdi, cœpĕrant desperare sŭis fortunis;
of the town, *they had begun* *to despair-of* *their fortunes;*

magno numĕro navĭum appulso,
a great *number* *of ships* *being brought-into-harbour,*

cujus rĕi habebant summam facultatem,
of which *thing* *they did have* *the highest* *power,*

deportabant omnĭa sŭa que recipiebant
they did carry-away *all* *their* (*effects*) *and* *did betake*

se in proxĭma oppĭda: ĭbi defendebant
themselves *into* *the nearest* *towns:* *there* *they did defend*

se rursus iisdem opportunitatĭbus lŏci.
themselves *again* *by the same* *opportunities* *of place.*

Faciebant hæc ĕò facilĭùs magnam
They did do *these* (*things*) *therefore* *more-easily* *a great*

partem æstatis, quòd nostræ naves detinebantur
part *of the summer,* *because* *our* *ships* *were detained*

tempestatĭbus; que ĕrat summa difficultas
by tempests; *and* (*there*) *was* *the highest* *difficulty*

navigandi vasto atque aperto mări, magnis
of sailing *in an immense* *and* *open* *sea,* *with great*

æstĭbus, raris ac prŏpè nullis portŭbus,
tides, *with few* *and* *nearly* *no* *harbours.*

13. Namque naves ipsorum factæ-ĕrant que
For *the ships* *of them* *had been-made* *and*

armatæ ad hunc mŏdum: carinæ
armed (furnished) *to* (in) *this* *manner:* *the keels* (*were*)

aliquanto planiores quàm nostrarum navĭum;
by something *more-flat* *than* (*those*) *of our* *ships.*

quò possent excipĕre
in-order-that they might be-able to receive (sustain)

vădа ac decessum æstûs facilĭùs:
the shallows and the departure of the tide more-easily:

proræ admŏdum erectæ, atque ĭtem puppes,
the prows (were) *very upright, and also the poops,*

accommodatæ ad magnitudĭnem fluctŭum que
fitted to the greatness of the waves and

tempestatum. Totæ naves factæ ex
tempests. The whole ships (were) *made out-of*

robŏre, ad quamvis vim et contumelĭam
oak at (with a view to) *any force and injury*

perferendam: transtra ex pedalĭbus
to-be-borne: the benches (were made) *out-of foot*

trabĭbus in latitudĭnem, confixa ferrĕis
beams into width, fixed-together with iron

clavis, crassitudĭne pollĭcis digĭti:
nails, with (of) *the thickness of the thumb finger:*

anchŏræ revinctæ ferrĕis catenis, pro
the anchors (were) *fastened with iron chains, instead-of*

funĭbus. Pelles que alutæ (pl.) tenuĭter confectæ
ropes. Hides and thin-leather slenderly made-up

pro velis; sive propter inopĭam
(were) *instead-of sails; whether on-account-of the want*

lini, atque inscientĭam usûs ejus; sive,
of linen, and ignorance of the use of it; or,

quod est măgis verisimĭle, quòd arbitrabantur
what is more likely, because they did think

tantas tempestates oceăni que tantos impĕtus
so-great tempests of the ocean and so-great violence

ventorum non posse sustineri, ac tanta
of winds not to be-able to be supported, and so-great

onĕra navĭum rĕgi velis sătis
burdens of ships to be governed by sails sufficiently

commŏdè. Congressus nostræ classi cum his
conveniently. The encounter to our fleet with these

navĭbus ĕrat ejusmŏdi ut præstaret (imp. subj.)
ships was of this kind that it did excel

celeritate unâ, et pulsu remorum; relíqua
in speed alone, and the beat (stroke) *of ours; the rest*

essent (imp. subj.) aptiora et
(other things) *were more suitable and*

accommodatiora illis pro naturâ
more-accommodated to them for (regarding) *the nature*

lŏci, pro vi tempestatum: ĕnim
of the place, for the violence of the tempests: for

nostræ nĕque potĕrant nocere his
our (*ships*) *neither were-able to injure to them*

rostro, (tanta ĕrat firmitudo in his) nĕque
with the beak, (*so-great was the strength in them*) *neither*

telum adjiciebatur facĭlè propter altitudĭnem;
a weapon was hurled easily on-account-of (*their*) *height;*

et de eâdem caussâ continebantur
and from the same cause they were kept (*close*

scopŭlis mĭnùs incommŏdè. Accedebat
to the rocks less inconveniently. It did approach (was

ut quum ventus cœpisset (pluperf. subj.)
added), *that when the wind had begun*

sævire et dedidissent (pluperf. subj.) se
to rage and they had given themselves

vento, et ferrent tempestatem facilĭùs,
to the wind, both they might bear a tempest more-easily,

et consistĕrent tutĭùs in vădis, et
and might stop more-safely in the shallows, and

derelictæ ab æstu, timerent nĭhil
being left by the tide, they might fear nothing (not)

saxa et cautes: casus omnĭum quarum
the rocks and reefs: the accidents of all which

rerum ĕrant extimescendi nostris navĭbus.
things were to-be-dreaded to (by) *our ships.*

14. Complurĭbus oppĭdis expugnatis, ŭbi Cæsar
Several towns being stormed, when Cæsar

intellexit tantum laborem sumi frustrà, nĕque
understood so-great labour to be taken in vain, nor

fŭgam hostĭum reprĭmi, oppĭdis captis,
the flight of the enemies to be checked, the towns being taken,

nĕque posse noceri his, statŭit
neither to be able to be injured to them, he resolved

classem exspectandam. Ubi quæ convenit
the fleet to-be-awaited. When which (fleet) assembled

ac primùm visa-est ab hostĭbus, circĭter
and first was-seen by the enemies, about

ducentæ viginti paratissĭmæ naves eorum,
two-hundred twenty most-prepared ships of them,

atque ornatissĭmæ omn generĕre armorum,
and most-furnished with every kind of arms,

profectæ è portu, constiterunt adversæ
having set-out from port, stood opposite

nostris. Nĕque satis-constabat Bruto,
to our (ships). Neither was it sufficiently-evident to Brutus,

qui præĕrat classi, nĕque tribunis
who was-over (commanded) to the fleet, nor to the tribunes

. milĭtum que centurionĭbus, quĭbus singŭlæ
of soldiers and to the centurions, to whom single

naves attributæ-ĕrant, quid agĕrent,
(particular) *ships had been-assigned, what they should act*

aut quam rationem pugnæ insist-
(do), *or what plan of battle they should*

ĕrent : ĕnim cognovĕrant non posse
determine on : for they had known not to be able

noceri rostro : autem turrĭbus excitatis,
to be injured by the beak : but towers being raised,

tămen altitudo puppĭum ex barbăris
yet the height of the poops out-of the barbarian

navĭbus superabat has ; ut nĕque tela
ships did over-top these ; (so) that neither darts

possent adjĭci commŏdè săt̆is ex
might be-able to be thrown conveniently enough from

inferiore lŏco, et missa à Gallis
a lower place, and (those) sent by the Gaul

accidĕrent gravĭùs. Una res præparata à
might fall more-heavily. One thing prepared by

nostris ĕrat magno usŭi; præacutæ falces,
our (men) was for great use; sharp-pointed scythes,

insertæ que affixæ longurĭis, non absimĭli
inserted and fastened to long-poles, not with unlike

formâ muralĭum falcĭum: quum funes, qui
form of mural scythes: when the ropes, which

destinabant antennas ad malos, comprehensi-ĕrant
did brace the yards to the masts, had been-seized

que adducti his, navigĭo incitato
and drawn-to by these, the vessel being urged-forward

remis, prærumpebantur: quĭbus
with the oars, they were broken-asunder: which

abscissis, antennæ necessarĭò concidebant;
being cut-away, the yards necessarily did fall;

ut quum omnis spes consistĕret (imp. subj.)
(so) that when all hope did consist

Gallĭcis navĭbus in velis que armamentis,
to the Gallic ships in (their) sails and riggings,

his ereptis, omnis usus navĭum
these being torn-away, all use of (their) ships

eriperetur (imp. subj.) uno tempŏre.
was torn-away in one time (at the same time).

Relĭquum certamen ĕrat posĭtum in virtute;
The rest-of the contest was placed in valour,

quâ nostri milĭtes facĭlè superabant; atque
in which our soldiers easily did excel; and

măgis ĕò, quòd res gerebatur in
the more therefore, because the affair was carried-on in

conspectu Cæsăris atque omnis exercĭtûs, ut
sight of Cæsar and of all the army, that

nullum factum paullò fortius posset latere;
no deed a little more-brave might be-able to lie-hid,

ĕnim omnes colles et superiora lŏca, unde
for all the hills and higher places, whence

propinquus despectus ĕrat in măre, tenebantur
a near view was unto the sea, were held

ab exercĭtu.
by the army.

15. Antennis disjectis, ut dixĭmus,
The yards being thrown-down, as we have said,

quum binæ aut ternæ naves circumsisterent (imp.
when two or three ships did surround

subj.) singŭlas naves, milĭtes contendebant
each (of our) *ships, the soldiers did strive*

summâ vi transcendĕre in naves
with highest (utmost) *force to climb-over into the ships*

hostĭum. Quod postquam barbări
of the enemies. Which after-that the barbarians

animadverterunt fiĕri, complurĭbus navĭbus
perceived to be done, several ships

expugnatis, quum nullum auxilĭum
being stormed (boarded), *when no aid*

reperiretur ĕi rĕi, contenderunt petere
might be found for that thing, they hastened to seek

salutem fŭgâ: ac jam navĭbus conversis in
safety by flight: and now the ships being turned unto

ĕam partem, quò ventus ferebat, tanta
that part, whither the wind did bear, so-great

malacĭa ac tranquillĭtas subĭtò exstĭtit, ut
a calm and stillness suddenly existed, that

possent (imp. subj.) non movere se ex
they were-able not to move themselves from

lŏco: quæ res quĭdem fŭit maxĭmè opportuna
the place: which thing indeed was most seasonable

ad negotĭum conficiendum: nam nostri
to the business to be finished: for our (men)

consectati singŭlas expugnaverunt, ut
having pursued single (ships) *stormed* (them), *so-that*

perpaucæ ex omni numĕro perveněrint ad
very-few out-of all the number may have arrived to

terram, interventu noctis, quum pugnaretur
land, by interposition of the night, when it was fought

(imp. subj.) ab quartâ horâ usque ad occasum
from the fourth hour until to the setting

solis.
of the sun.

16. Quo prœlĭo bellum Venetorum que
By which battle the war of the Veneti and

totius maritĭmæ oræ confectum-est. Nam quum
of the whole maritime coast was finished. For when

omnis juventus, etĭam omnes gravioris
all (their) youth, also all of more serious

ætatis, in quĭbus alĭquid consilĭi aut dignitatis
age, in whom something of counsel or of dignity

fŭit, convenĕrant ĕò; tum coëgĕrant
was, had assembled thither; then (also) they had collected

in unum lŏcum, quod navĭum fuĕrat ubique:
into one place, what of ships had been everywhere:

quĭbus amissis, relĭqui habebant nĕque quò
which being lost, the rest did have neither whither

recipĕrent se, nĕque quemadmŏdum
they might betake themselves, nor how

defendĕrent oppĭda. Ităque dediderunt
they might defend (their) towns. Therefore they surrendered

se que omnĭa sŭa Cæsări: in
themselves and all their (effects) to Cæsar: against

quos Cæsar statŭit vindicandum gravĭùs
whom Cæsar resolved to-be-avenged more-severely

ĕò, quò jus legatorum con-
therefore, in-order-that the right of ambassadors might be

servaretur diligentĭùs à barbăris in
preserved more-carefully by the barbarians unto

reliquum tempus. Ităque, omni senatu
the rest (future) time. Therefore, all the senate

necato, vendĭdit relĭquos sub co-
being put-to-death, he sold the rest under the

ronâ.
crown (by auction).

17. Dum hæc geruntur in
Whilst these (*things*) *are carried-on in* (among)

Venĕtis, Quintus Titurĭus Sabinus pervenit in
the Veneti, Quintus Titurius Sabinus arrived into

fines Unellorum, cum his copĭis, quas
the borders of the Unelli, with these forces, which

accepĕrat à Cæsăre. Viridŏvix præĕrat
he had received from Cæsar. Viridovix was-over

his, ac tenebat summam imperĭi
to these, and did hold the height (presidency) *of power*

omnĭum earum civitatum, quæ defecĕrant; ex
of all of those states, which had revolted; out-of

quĭbus coëgĕrat exercĭtum que magnas
which he had collected an army and great

copĭas. Atque his paucis diebus, Aulerci,
resources. And in these few days, the Aulerci,

Eburovices, que Lexovii, sŭo senatu interfecto,
Eburovices, and Lexovii, their senate being put-to-death,

quòd nolebant esse auctores belli,
because they were-unwilling to be advisers of war,

clauserunt portas, que conjunxerunt se
shut (*their*) *gates, and joined themselves*

cum Viridovice: que præterĕa magna multitudo
with Viridovix: and besides a great multitude

perditorum homĭnum que latronum convenĕrat
of abandoned men and robbers had assembled

undĭque ex Gallîâ, quos spes
from-every-side out-of Gaul, whom the hope

prædandi que studĭum bellandi revocabat
of plundering and an inclination of warring did call-away

ab agriculturâ et quotidiano labore. Sabinus
from agriculture and daily labour. Sabinus

tenebat sese castris (pl.) lŏco idoneo omnĭbus
did keep himself in camp in a place fit for all

rebus: quum Viridŏvix consedisset (pluperf. subj.)
things: when Viridovix had sat-down (had encamped)

contra ĕum spatĭo dŭûm millĭum, que
opposite him (at) a space of two miles, and

copĭis productis quotidĭe facĕret (imp. subj.)
(his) forces being led-forth daily did make

potestatem pugnandi; ut Sabinus jam
power (opportunity) *of fighting; so-that Sabinus now*

veniret (imp. subj.) in contemptionem non solùm
did come into contempt not only

hostĭbus, sed etĭam carperetur (imp. subj.)
to the enemies, but also was censured

nonnĭhil vocĭbus nostrorum milĭtum: que
somewhat by expressions of our soldiers: and

præbŭit tantam opinionem timoris, ut hostes
he afforded so-great an opinion of fear, that the enemies

auderent jam accedĕre ad vallum castrorum
would dare now to approach to the rampart of the camp.

(pl.). Faciebat id ĕâ caussâ, quòd
He did do that from that cause, because

existimabat non dimicandum legato
he did think (it) *not to-be-contended to* (by) *a lieutenant*

cum tantâ multitudĭne hostĭum, præsertim ĕo
with so-great a multitude of enemies, especially he

absente, qui teneret (imp. subj.) summam
(*being*) *absent, who did hold the height* (chief)

imperĭi, nĭsi æquo lŏco, aut alĭquâ
of command, unless on equal place, or some

opportunitate dătâ.
opportunity being given.

18. Hâc opinione timoris confirmatâ,
This opinion of fear being strengthened,

delegit quendam Gallum idoneum et callĭdum
he selected a certain Gaul a fit and shrewd

homĭnem, ex ĭis, quos habebat secum
man, out-of those, whom he did have with-him

caussâ auxilĭi. Persuadet
by cause (for the purpose) *of aid* (as auxiliaries) *He persuades*

huic magnis præmĭis que pollicitatiōnĭbus, ŭtì
to him by great rewards and promises, that

transĕat ad hostes: edŏcet quod
he may go-over to the enemies: he instructs (*him*) *what*

vĕlit fieri. Qui, ŭbi venit ad ĕos
he may will to be done. Who, when he came to them

pro perfŭgâ, proponit timorem Romanorum:
for a deserter, sets-forth (describes) *the fear of the Romans:*

dŏcet quĭbus angustĭis Cæsar
he informs (*them*) *in what straits* (difficulties) *Cæsar*

ipse premātur (pres. subj.) à Venĕtis: nĕque
himself is pressed by the Veneti: neither

abesse longĭùs, quin Sabinus educat
to be-distant farther, but-that Sabinus may lead-out

exercĭtum clàm ex castris (pl.) proxĭmâ
(his) army secretly out-of the camp in the next

nocte, et proficiscatur ad Cæsărem, caussâ
night, and may set-out to Cæsar, by cause (for the

auxilĭi ferendi. Ubi quod
sake) *of aid to-be-brought. When which* (*report*)

auditum-est, omnes conclamant, occasionem ne-
was-heard, all cry-out, an opportunity of the

gotĭi gerendi bĕnè non amittendam-esse:
business to be carried-on well not to-be-lost:

oportere iri ad castra (pl.). Multæ
to behove (it ought) *to be gone to the camp. Many*

res hortabantur Gallos ad hoc consilĭum:
things did encourage the Gauls to this plan:

cunctatĭo Sabini superiorum dierum;
the delay of Sabinus of (on) *the former days;*

confirmatĭo perfŭgæ; inopĭa cibariorum,
the assertion of the deserter; the want of provisions,

cui provisum-ĕrat ab his parùm diligenter;
to (for) *which it had been provided by these little carefully*

spes Venetĭci belli; et quòd
(inadequately) *the hopes of the Venetian war; and because*

homĭnes fĕrè credunt libenter id quod
men generally believe willingly that which

vŏlunt. Adducti ĭis rebus, dimittunt
they will. Induced by those things, they dismiss

Viridovicem que relĭquos dŭces ex concilĭo
Viridovix and the rest-of the generals from the council

non prĭùs quàm concessum-sit ab his,
not before than it may have-been-granted by them,

útì capĭant arma et contendant ad castra (pl.)
that they may take arms and may hasten to the camp.

Quâ re concessâ, læti, vĕlut victorĭâ
Which thing being granted, (they) joyful, as-if the victory

exploratâ, sarmentis que virgultis
being discovered (certain), *faggots and twigs*

collectis, quĭbus compleant fossas
being collected, with which they may fill-up the ditches

Romanorum, pergunt ad castra (pl.).
of the Romans, proceed to the camp.

19. Lŏcus castrorum (pl.) ĕrat edĭtus, et
The situation of the camp was elevated, and

paullatim acclivis ab imo, circĭter
gradually steep from the lowest (the bottom), *about*

mille passus: huc contenderunt magno
a thousand paces: hither they hastened with great

cursu, ut quàm minĭmum spatĭi
course (speed), *that as least of space* (as little

daretur Romanis ad
time as possible) *might be given to the Romans to*

se colligendos que armandos, que exanimati
themselves to-be-collected and to-be-armed, and breathless

pervenerunt. Sabinus, hortatus sŭos,
they arrived (there). *Sabinus, having encouraged his* (men),

dat signum cupientĭbus : hostĭbus
gives the signal to (them) desiring (it) : the enemies

impeditis propter ĕa oněra, quæ
being encumbered on-account-of those burdens, which

ferebant, jŭbet eruptionem fiĕri subĭtò
they did bear, he orders a sally to be made suddenly

duabus portis. Factum-est opportunitate
from the two gates. It-was-done by the convenience

lŏci, inscientĭa ac defatigatione hostĭum,
of the place, by the ignorance and fatigue of the enemies,

virtute milĭtum ac exercitatione superiorum
by the valour of the soldiers and the exercise of former

pugnarum, ut ferrent (imp. subj.) ne
battles, that (the enemy) bore not

quĭdem unum impĕtum nostrorum ; ac
indeed (even) *one charge of our (men) ; and*

stătim vertĕrent (imp. subj.) terga : quos
immediately turned (their) backs : whom

impeditos nostri milĭtes consecuti intĕgris
encumbered our soldiers having pursued with entire

virĭbus, occiderunt magnum numĕrum
(fresh) *forces* (strength), *killed a great number*

eorum : equĭtes consectati relĭquos reliquerunt
of them : the cavalry having pursued the rest left

paucos, qui evasĕrant ex fŭgâ. Sic Cæsar
few, who had escaped from flight Thus Cæsar

factus-est certĭor uno tempŏre et
was-made more-sure (was informed) *in one time both*

de navali pugnâ, et de victorĭâ Sabini :
of the naval battle, and of the victory of Sabinus :

que omnes civitates dediderunt se stătim
and all the states surrendered themselves immediately

Titurĭo. Nam ut anĭmus Gallorum est
to Titurius. For as the mind (spirit) *of the Gauls is*

alăcer ac promptus ad bella suscipienda, sic
alert and ready to wars to-be-undertaken. so

mens eorum est mollis ac minĭmè resistens
the mind of them is soft and by-no-means resisting

ad calamitates perferendas.
to misfortunes to-be-borne.

20. Fĕrè eodem tempŏre, quum Publĭus Crassus
Nearly in the same time, when Publius Crassus

pervenisset (pluperf. subj.) in Aquitanĭam, quæ pars,
had arrived in Aquitania, which part,

ut dictum-est antè, est æstimanda ex
as has been-said before, is to-be-esteemed from

tertĭâ parte Gallĭæ, et latitudĭne
the third part of Gaul, both in breadth (extent)

regionum et multitudĭne homĭnum; quum
of countries and by the multitude of men; when

intelligĕret (imp. subj.) bellum gerendum
he understood war to be carried-on

sĭbi in illis lŏcis, ŭbi paucis (abl.)
to (by) *himself in those places, where a few*

annis antè Lucĭus Valerĭus Præconinus legātus
years before Lucius Valerius Præconinus the lieutenant

interfectus-esset (pluperf. subj.), exercĭtu pulso;
had been killed, (*his*) *army being routed,*

atque unde Lucĭus Manilĭus Proconsul,
and whence Lucius Manilius the Proconsul,

impedimentis amissis, profugisset (pluperf. subj.),
(*his*) *baggages being lost, had escaped,*

intelligebat non mediocrem dilĭgentĭam adhi-
he did understand not moderate diligence to-be-

bendam sĭbi. Ităque, frumentarĭâ re
applied to (by) *himself. Therefore, corn affair*

provisâ, auxilĭis que equĭtatu comparato,
being provided, auxiliaries and cavalry being prepared,

præterĕa multis fortĭbus vĭris Tolosâ, Carcasone,
moreover many brave men from Tolosa, Carcuso,

et Narbone (quæ sunt civitates provincĭæ
and Narbo (*which are cities of the province*

Gallĭæ, finitĭmæ his regionĭbus) evocatis
of Gaul, neighbouring to these countries) being called-out

nominatim, introduxit exercĭtum in fines
by name, he introduced (his) army into the territories

Sotiatĭum. Cujus adventu cognĭto, Sotiates,
of the Sotiates. Whose arrival being known, the Sotiates,

magnis copĭis coactis, que equitatu, quo
great forces being collected, and cavalry, in which

valebant plurĭmum, adorti nostrum agmen
they did prevail most, having attacked our army

in itinĕre, primùm commiserunt equestre prœlĭum;
on the march, first engaged (in) a cavalry fight;

deinde sŭo equitatu pulso, atque nostris
afterwards their cavalry being routed, and our (men)

insequentĭbus, ostenderunt subĭtò pedestres copĭas,
pursuing, they showed suddenly the foot forces,

quas collocavĕrant in convalle in insidĭis.
which they had placed in a valley in ambuscades.

Hi adorti nostros disjectos, renovârunt
These having attacked our (men) scattered, renewed

prœlĭum.
the battle.

21. Pugnatum-est dĭu atque acrĭter, quum
It was-fought long and sharply, when

Sotiates, freti superiorĭbus victorĭis,
the Sotiates, having relied on former victories,

putarent (imp. subj.) salutem totius Aquitanĭæ
did think the safety of the whole of Aquitania

posĭtam in sŭâ virtute; autem nostri
placed in their-own valour; but our (men)

cupĕrent (imp. subj.) perspĭci, quid possent
did desire to be seen, what they might be-able

efficĕre sine imperatore, et sine
to perform without the commander-in-chief, and without

relĭquis legionĭbus, adolescentŭlo duce.
the rest (other) legions, a very-young-man (being) general.

Tămen hostes tandem confecti vulnerĭbus
However the enemies at-length being spent with wounds

vertêre terga : magno numĕro quorum
turned (their) backs : a great number of whom

interfecto, Crassus cœpit oppugnare oppĭdum
being slain, Crassus began to storm the town

Sotiatium ex itinĕre ; quĭbus resistentĭbus
of the Sotiates from (his) march ; who opposing

fortĭter, egit vinĕas que
bravely, he acted (put in motion) *the mantelets and*

turres. Illi, alĭàs eruptione tentatâ,
towers. They otherwise (one time) *a sally being tried,*

alĭàs cunicŭlis actis ad
otherwise (another time) *mines being carried-on to*

aggĕrem que vinĕas ; cujus rĕi Aquitani
the rampart and mantelets ; of which thing the Aquitani

sunt longè peritissĭmi, propterĕa-quòd ærarĭæ secturæ
are by-far most-skilful, because-that copper veins

sunt ăpud ĕos multis lŏcis ; ŭbi intellexerunt
are among them in many places ; when they understood

nihil posse profici his rebus,
nothing to be-able to be profited by these things,

diligentîâ nostrorum, mittunt legatos ad
from the diligence of our (men), they send ambassadors to

Crassum que pĕtunt, ut recipĭat se
Crassus and request, that he may receive themselves

in deditionem. Quâ re impetratâ,
into a surrender. Which thing being obtained,

jussi tradĕre arma, facĭunt.
being ordered to deliver (their) arms, they do (it.)

22. Atque animis omnĭum nostrorum intentis
And the minds of all our (men) being intent

in ĕâ re, Adiatŏmus qui tenebat summam
in that thing, Adiatomus who did hold the neight (chief)

imperĭi, ex alĭâ parte oppĭdi, cum
of command, from another part of the town, with

sexcentis devotis, quos illi appellant
six-hundred devoted (men), whom they call

Solduriōs: quorum hæc est conditĭo ut
Soldurii: of whom this is the condition (of life), that

fruantur (pres. subj.) omnĭbus commŏdis in vitâ
they enjoy with all advantages in life

unà cum his, amicitĭæ quorum
together with those, to the friendship of whom

dedidĕrint se: si quid
they may have given-up (engaged) themselves: if any (thing)

accĭdat ĭis per vim, aut fĕrant
may happen to them through violence, either they may bear

eundem casum unà, aut consciscant mortem
the same calamity together, or may inflict death

sĭbi: nĕque quisquam repertus-est
to (on) themselves: neither any-one has been-found

adhuc memorĭâ homĭnum, qui recusaret
as-yet in the memory of men, who would refuse

mŏri, ĕo interfecto, amicitĭæ cujus
to die, he being killed, to the friendship of whom

devovisset se. Cum his Adiatŏmus
he might have devoted himself. With these Adiatomus

conatus facĕre eruptionem, clamore
having endeavoured to make a sally, a shout

sublato ab ĕâ parte munitionis, quum
being raised from that part of the fortification, when

milites concurrissent (pluperf. subj.) ad arma,
the soldiers had run-together to arms,

que pugnatum-esset (pluperf. subj.) ĭbi vehementer,
and it had been-fought there violently,

repulsus-est in oppĭdum; tămen impetravit
he was-repulsed into the town; however he obtained

à Crasso, ŭtì uteretur eâdem
from Crassus, that he might use (possess) the same

conditione (abl.) deditionis.
condition of surrender.

23. Armis que obsidĭbus acceptis, Crassus
The arms and hostages being received, Crassus

profectus-est in fines Vocatĭum et
set-out into the territories of the Vocates and

Tarusatĭum. Tum verò barbări
of the Tarusates. Then indeed the barbarians (were)

commoti, quòd cognovĕrant oppĭdum munitum
alarmed, because they had known a town fortified

et naturâ lŏci et mănu
both. by the nature of the place and by hand (by art)

expugnatum paucis diebus, quĭbus
having been-overthrown (by the Romans), *in a few days, in which*

ventum-fuĕrat ĕò; cœperunt
it had been-come thither (after their arrival); *they began*

dimittĕre legatos quoquoversus, conjurare, dăre
to send-about ambassadors in-every-direction, to conspire, to give

obsĭdes inter se, parare copĭas. Legati
hostages between themselves, to prepare forces. Ambassadors

mittuntur etĭam ad ĕas civitates, quæ sunt
are sent also to those states, which are

citerioris Hispanĭæ, finitĭmæ Aquitanĭæ : inde
of the nearer Spain, bordering to Aquitania : thence

auxilĭa que dŭces accersuntur ; adventu
auxiliaries and generals are sent-for ; by arrival

quorum conantur gerĕre bellum cum magnâ
of whom they endeavour to wage war with great

auctoritate et cum magnâ multitudĭne homĭnum.
authority and with a great multitude of men.

Verò ĭi deliguntur dŭces, qui fuĕrant unà
But those are chosen generals, who had been together

cum Quinto Sertorĭo omnes annos, que existimabantur
with Quintus Sertorius all years, and were thought

habere summam scientĭam militaris rĕi. Ii
to have the highest knowledge of military affair. Those

consuetudĭne Romani popŭli institŭunt capĕre
by custom of Roman people resolve to take

lŏca, munire castra (pl.),
(choose) (*their*) *places* (ground), *to fortify the camp,*

intercludĕre nostros commeatĭbus. Quod ŭbi
to shut-in our (*men*) *from provisions. Which when*

Crassus animadvertit, sŭas copĭas non facĭlè
Crassus perceived, (*and*) *his-own forces not easily*

diduci propter exiguitatem, et
to be divided on-account-of (*their*) *smallness* (fewness), *and*

hostem vagari et obsidere vĭas,
the enemy to wander-about and to block-up the ways,

et relinquĕre sătis præsidĭi castris (pl.);
and to leave enough of protection to (*their*) *camp;*

ob ĕam caussam, frumentum que commeatum
on-account-of that cause corn and provision

supportarĭ sĭbi mĭnùs commŏdè, numĕrum
to-be-brought-up to himself less conveniently, the number

hostĭum augeri in-dĭes; existimavit non
of the enemies to be increased daily; he thought not

cunctandum, quin decertaret pugnâ. Hâc
to-be-delayed, but-that he should contend in battle. This

re delatâ ad concilĭum, ŭbi intellexit
thing being referred to a council, when he understood

omnes sentire ĭdem, constitŭit postĕrum
all to think the same, he appointed the following

dĭem pugnæ.
day for the battle.

24. Omnĭbus copĭis productis primâ
All (*his*) *forces being drawn-out in the first*

luce, duplĭci acĭe institutâ, que auxilĭis
light, a double line being formed, and the auxiliaries

conjectis in mediam acĭem, exspectabat quid
being thrown into the middle line, he did wait what

consilĭi hostes capĕrent. Illi, etsi
of plan the enemies might take. They, although

propter multitudĭnem, et vetĕrem glorĭam
on-account-of (*their*) *multitude, and ancient glory*

belli que paucitatem nostrorum existimabant
of war and the fewness of our (men) they did think

se dimicaturos tutò; tămen arbitrabantur
themselves about-to-contend safely; however did think (it,

esse tutĭùs potiri victorĭâ sĭne ullo
to be safer to possess a victory without any

vulnĕre, vĭis obsessis, commeatu
wound, the ways (roads) being blocked-up, provision

intercluso: et si Romani cœpissent (plup.
being intercepted: and if the Romans had begun

subj.) recipĕre sese, cogitabant
to take-away themselves (to retreat), they did think

adoriri impeditos agmĭne et sub
to attack (them) encumbered on the march and under

sarcĭnis (pl.), inferiores anĭmo. Hoc consilĭo
baggage, inferior in mind (spirit). This plan

probato ab ducĭbus, copĭis Romanorum
being approved by (their) generals, the forces of the Romans

productis, tenebant sese castris (pl.),
being drawn-out, they did keep themselves in camp.

Hâc re perspectâ, quum Crassus effecisset
This thing being clearly-seen, when Crassus had rendered

(pluperf. subj.) hostes timidiores sŭâ
the enemies more-fearful by their

cunctatione atque opinione, nostros milĭtes
delay and expectation, our soldiers

alacriores ad-pugnandum, atque voces
more-cheerful to-fight, and the expressions

omnĭum audirentur (imp. subj.), non oportere
of all were heard, not to behove

exspectari diutĭùs, quin
to be waited (that they ought not to wait) *longer, but-that*

iretur ad castra (pl.);
it should be gone (they should go) *to the camp;*

cohortatus sŭos, omnĭbus cupientĭbus,
having exhorted his (men), all desiring (it),

contendit ad castra (pl.) hostium.
he hastens to the camp of the enemies.

25. Ibi quum alĭi complerent (imp. subj.)
There when others (some) did fill

fossas, alĭi depellĕrent (imp. subj.) defensores
the ditches, others did drive-off the defenders

vallo que munitionĭbus, multis telĭs
from the rampart and fortifications, many weapons

conjectis, que auxiliares, quĭbus Crassus
being thrown, and the auxiliaries, to whom Crassus

confidebat non multùm ad pugnam, præberent (imp.
did confide not much to battle, did exhibit

subj.) speciem atque opinionem pugnantĭum
an appearance and supposition of fighting (men)

lapidĭbus que telis subministrandis, et cespitĭbus
in stones and weapons to-be-supplied, and turfs

comportandis ad aggĕrem; quum ĭtem
to-be-brought to (for) a mound; when likewise

pugnaretur (imp. subj.) constanter ac non timĭdè
it was fought resolutely and not fearfully

ab hostĭbus, que tela missa ex
by the enemies, and the weapons sent (thrown) from

superiore lŏco, accidĕrent (imp. subj.) non frustrà;
the higher place, did fall not in-vain;

equĭtes, castris (pl.) hostĭum circumĭtis,
(some) horsemen, the camp of the enemies being gone-round,

renuntiaverunt Crasso castra (pl.) non esse
announced to Crassus the camp not to be

munita eâdem diligentiâ ab Decumanâ
fortified with the same diligence from (at) the Decuman

portâ, que habere facĭlem adĭtum.
gate, and to have an easy access.

26. Crassus cohortatus præfectos equĭtum
Crassus having encouraged the prefects of the horse

ut excitarent sŭos mægnis præmĭis
that they should rouse their (men) by great rewards

que pollicitationĭbus, ostendit quid vĕlit
and promises, shows (them) what he may will

fiĕri. Illi, ut imperatum-ĕrat, quatŭo
to be done. They, as it hua been-commanded, four

cohortĭbus eductis, quæ relictæ præsidĭo
cohorts being led-out, which being left for a guar

castris (pl.), ĕrant intĕgræ ab labore: et
to the camp, were whole (fresh) *from labour: an*

circumductis longiore itinĕre, ne possent
being led-round by a longer route, lest they might be-abl

conspĭci ex castris hostĭum; ocŭlis qu
to be seen from the camps of the enemies; the eyes an

mentĭbus omnĭum intentis ad pugnam,
minds of all being engaged to (on) *the fight,*

pervenerunt celerĭter ad ĕas munitiones, quas
they arrived quickly to those fortifications, which

dixĭmus; atque his proruptis, constiterunt
we have said; and these being thrown-down, they stood

in castris (pl.) hostĭum prĭùs quàm posset
in the camp of the enemies before than it might be-able

videri planè ab his aut cognosci, quid
to be seen plainly by these or to be known, what

rĕi gereretur. Tum verò clamore audito
of thing might be carried-on. Then truly a shout being heard

ab ĕâ parte, nostri, virĭbus
from that part, our (men), *their forces* (strength)

redintegratis, quod plerumque consuevit
being renewed, which generally has been-accustomed

accidĕre in spe victorĭæ, cœperunt impugnare
to happen in the hope of victory, began to assault

acrĭùs. Hostes circumventi undĭque,
more-vigorously. The enemies surrounded on-every-side,

omnĭbus rebus desperatis, contenderunt dejicĕre
all things being despaired-of, hastened to cast-out

se per munitiones, et petĕre salutem
themselves through the fortifications, and to seek safety

fŭgâ. Quos equitatus consectatus apertissĭmis
by flight. Whom the cavalry having pursued in most-open

campis, recepit se in castra (pl.) multâ
plains, betook itself into camp in much

nocte, vix quartâ parte relictâ
night (late at night), *scarcely a fourth part being left*

ex numĕro quinquaginta millĭum, quæ
out-of the number of fifty thousands, which

constabat venisse ex Aquitanĭâ que
it was-evident to have come out-of Aquitania and

Cantăbris.
the Cantabri.

27. Hâc pugnâ auditâ, maxĭma pars
This battle being heard, the greatest part

Aquitanĭæ dedĭdit sese Crasso, que misit
of Aquitania surrendered itself to Crassus, and sent

obsĭdes ultrò: in quo numĕro fuerunt
hostages voluntarily: in which number were

Tarbelli, Bigerriŏnes, Preciani, Vocates, Tarusates,
the Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Preciani, Vocates, Tarusates,

Elusătes, Garĭtes, Ausci, Garumni, Sibutzates, que
Elusates, Garites, Ausci, Garumni, Sibutzates, and

Cocosates. Paucæ ultĭmæ nationes, confisæ
Cocosates. A few remotest nations, having relied

tempŏre anni, quòd hĭems subĕrat,
in (on) *the time of the year, because winter was-near*

neglexerunt facĕre id.
neglected to-do that.

28. Fĕrè eodem tempŏre, etsi æstas
Nearly in the same time, although the summer

ĕrat jam prŏpè exacta, tămen quòd, omni
was already nearly finished, however because, all

Gallĭâ pacatâ, Morĭni que Menapĭi superĕrant,
Gaul being subdued, the Morini and Menapii did remain,

qui essent (imp. subj.) in armis nĕque misissent (plu-
who were in arms nor had sent

perf. subj.) unquam ad ĕum legatos de pace,
ever to him ambassadors about peace;

Cæsar arbitratus id bellum posse
Cæsar having thought that war to be-able

confĭci celeriter, adduxit exercĭtum ĕò: qui
to be finished quickly, led-on the army thither: who

instituerunt agĕre bellum ratione longè
resolved to act (conduct) war in a manner far

alĭâ ac relĭqui Galli: nam,
other (different) and (than) the rest (other) Gauls: for,

quòd intelligebant maxĭmas nationes, quæ
because they did understand the greatest nations, which

contendissent (pluperf. subj.) prœlĭo pulsas-esse
had contended in battle to have been routed

que superatas, que habebant continentes silvas
and overcome, and they did have extended woods

ac paludes, contulerunt ĕò se que
and marshes, they bore-away thither themselves and

omnĭa sŭa. Ad initĭum quarum
all their (effects). To the beginning of which

silvarum, quum Cæsar pervenisset (pluperf. subj.),
woods, when Cæsar had arrived,

que instituisset (pluperf. subj.) munire castra (pl.),
and had resolved to fortify the camp,

nĕque intĕrim hostis visus-esset (pluperf. subj.);
nor meanwhile the enemy had been seen;

nostris dispersis in opĕre, evolaverunt
our (men) being scattered in the work, they flew-out

subĭtò ex omnĭbus partĭbus silvæ, et
suddenly from all parts of the wood, and

fecerunt impĕtum in nostros. Nostri celeriter
made an attack upon our (men). Our (men) quickly

ceperunt arma, que repulerunt ĕos in silvas;
took arms, and repulsed them into the woods;

et complurĭbus interfectis, secuti
and many being killed, having followed (them)

longĭùs impeditiorĭbus lŏcis, deperdiderunt
further (too far) in more-entangled places, they lost

paucos ex sŭis.
a few out-of their-own.

29. Cæsar institŭit cæděre silvas deinceps
Cæsar resolved to cut the woods afterwards

relĭquis diebus; et ne quis impĕtus
on the rest (remaining) *days; and lest any attack*

posset fiĕri ab latĕre militĭbus
might be-able to be made from the flank to (on) *the soldiers*

inermĭbus que imprudentĭbus, collocabat omnem
unarmed and unaware, he did place all

ĕam materĭam, quæ cæsa-ĕrat, conversam
that material (timber), *which had been-cut, turned*

ad hostem, que exstruebat pro vallo
to the enemy, and did construct (it) *for a rampart*

ad utrumque lătus. Magno spatĭo confecto
to (on) *each flank. A great space being finished*

paucis diebus incredĭbĭli celeritate, quum
in a few days with incredible speed, when

pĕcus atque extrema impedimenta tenerentur
the cattle and the farthest baggages were possessed

(imp. subj.) jam ab nostris, ipsi petĕrent
now by our (men), *themselves did seek*

(imp. subj.) densiores silvas; tempestates ejusmŏdi
the thicker woods; tempests of this-kind

consecutæ-sunt, ŭtì ŏpus intermitteretur (imp.
followed, that the work was intermitted

subj.) necessarĭò; et continuatione imbrĭum,
necessarily; and from continuance of the rains,

milĭtes possent (imp. subj.) non contineri diutĭùs
the soldiers were able not to be kept longer

sub pellĭbus. Ităque, omnĭbus agris
under hides (tents). *Therefore, all the lands*

eorum vastatis, vices que ædificĭis
of them being ravaged, the villages and buildings

incensis, Cæsar reduxit exercĭtum et collocavit
being burnt, Cæsar led-back the army and placed (it)

in hibernis in Aulercis que Lexovĭis,
in winter-quarters in (among) *the Aulerci and the Lexovii*

Item relĭquis civitatious, quæ fecerant
also *the rest* (remaining) *states,* *which* *had made*
bellum proxĭmè.
war *last.*

QUARTUS LIBER.

FOURTH BOOK.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Bellum contra Usipĕtes et Tenchthĕros
The war *against* *the Usipetes* *and* *Tenchtheri*
continetur hôc libro, atque obĭter
is contained *in this* *book,* *and* *by-the-way*
mores Suevorum que Germanorum
the manners *of the Suevi* *and* *of the Germans*
describuntur generatim: deinde trajectus
are described *generally:* *afterwards* *the crossing*
Rheni, ut transiret in Germanĭam;
of the Rhine, *that* *he might pass-over* *into* *Germany;*
et trajectus in Britannĭam: utrumque quem
and *the crossing* *into* *Britain:* *each* *which*
nemo Romanus ausus-fuĕrat ante illum.
no-one *Roman* *had dared* *before* *him.*

1. Eâ hiĕme quæ secuta-est, qui fŭit annus,
In that *winter* *which* *followed,* *which* *was* *the year,*
Cnĕjo Pompeĭo, Marco Crasso consulĭbus,
Cneius *Pompey,* *Marcus* *Crassus* (*being*) *consuls.*

Germani Usipĕtes, et ĭtem Tenchthĕri transiêrunt
the German Usipetes, and also the Tenchtheri crossed

flumen Rhenum cum magnâ multitudĭne homĭnum,
the river Rhine with a great multitude of men,

non longè à mări, quò Rhenus inflŭit.
not far from the sea, where the Rhine flows-in (to it).

Caussa transeundi fŭit, quòd exagitati ab
The cause of crossing was, because being harassed by

Suevis complures annos, premebantur bello,
the Suevi many years, they were oppressed by war,

et prohibebantur agriculturâ. Gens
and were prevented from agriculture. The nation

Suevorum est longè maxĭma et bellicosissĭma
of the Suevi is by-far the greatest and most-warlike

omnĭum Germanorum. Ii dicuntur habere
of all the Germans. Those are said to have

centum pagos; ex quĭbus educunt
a hundred villages; out-of which they lead-out

quotannis singŭla (pl.) millĭa armatorum
yearly single thousands of armed (men) (i. e. a
thousand from each) *out-of their borders, by cause* (for
the sake) *of warring: the rest remain of* (at) *home,*

cŏlunt pro se atque illis. Hi rursus
they till for themselves and them. These again

sunt in armis invĭcem anno pòst; illi
are in arms in-turn in the year after; they

remănent dŏmi. Sic nĕque agricultura, nĕque
remain of (at) *home. Thus neither agriculture, nor*

ratĭo atque usus belli intermittĭtur.
the method and experience of war is interrupted.

Sed est nĭhil privati ac separati agri
But (*there*) *is nothing of private and separate land*

ăpud ĕos: nĕque licet remanere
at (among) *them: neither is it lawful to remain*

longĭùs anno in uno lŏco, caussă
longer (than) a year in one place, by cause (for the sake)

incolendi: nĕque vivunt multum frumento,
of inhabiting: neither do they live much by (on) *corn,*

sed maxĭmam partem lacte atque pecŏre;
but the greatest part by (on) *milk and cattle;*

que sunt multum in venationĭbus: quæ res
and they are much in huntings: which thing

et ălit vires et effĭcit
both nourishes the forces (strength) *and renders* (*them*)

immani magnitudĭne corpŏrum et genĕre
with huge size of bodies both from the kind

cĭbi, et quotidianâ exercitatione, et libertate
of food and daily exercise, and freedom

vitæ, (quòd assuefacti nullo officĭo aut
of life, (*because being accustomed in no duty or*

disciplinâ à puĕris, faciant (pres. subj.)
discipline from boys (boyhood), *they do*

nĭhil omnino contra voluntatem): atque adduxerunt
nothing at-all against (*their*) *will): and they have brought*

se in ĕam consuetudĭnem, ut habĕant (pres. subj.)
themselves into that habit, that they have

nĕque quidquam vestitûs frigidissĭmis lŏcis, præter pelles; propter exiguitatem
neither any (*thing*) *of clothing in the coldest places, except skins; on-account-of the smallness*

quarum, magna pars corpŏris est aperta; et laventur (pres. subj.) in fluminĭbus.
of which, great part of the body is uncovered; and they are washed in the rivers.

2. Adĭtus est mercatorĭbus ad ĕos, măgis ĕò, ut habĕant
Access is for merchants to them, more therefore (on this account), *that they may have* (*those*)

quĭbus vendant, quæ cepĕrint bello,
to whom they may sell, what they may have taken in war,

quàm quò desiderent ullam rem importari
than that they may desire any thing to be imported

ad se. Quinetĭam Germani utuntur non
to themselves. Moreover the Germans use not

importatis jumentis, quĭbus Gallĭa delectatur
imported beasts-of-burden, with which Gaul is delighted

maxĭmè que quæ părat impenso pretĭo;
most and which it procures with expensive price;

sed efficĭunt hæc, quæ sunt nata prava
but they render these, which are born mis-shapen

atque deformĭa ăpud ĕos, quotidianâ exercitatione,
and deformed among them, by daily exercise,

ut sint summi laboris. Equestrĭbus
that they may be (capable) *of the highest labour. In cavalry*

prœlĭis desilĭunt sæpe ex ĕquis, ac
fights they leap-down often from the horses, and

prœliantur pedĭbus; que assuefacĭunt ĕquos
fight with (on) *feet; and they accustom the horses*

remanere eodem vestigĭo, ad quos
to remain in the same footstep (spot), *to which*

recipĭunt se celerĭter, quum usus poscit:
they betake themselves quickly, when need requires:

nĕque quidquam habetur turpĭus aut
neither any (thing) *is held more-shameful or*

inertĭus moribus eorum, quàm uti
more-lazy by the customs of them, than to use

ephippĭis (abl.). Ităque, quamvis pauci
saddles. Therefore, although (however) *few*

audent adire ad quemvis numĕrum equĭtum
they dare to approach to any number of horsemen

ephippiatorum. Sĭnunt non vinum importari
using-saddles. They permit not wine to be imported

omnino ad se, quòd arbitrantur homĭnes
at-all to themselves, because they think men

remollescĕre ĕâ re ad laborem ferendum,
to become-relaxed by that thing to labour to-be-borne

atque effœminari.
and to be rendered-effeminate.

3. Publĭcè pŭtant esse maxĭmam
Publicly (as a nation) *they think* (*it*) *to be the greatest*

laudem, agros vacare quàm latissĭmè
praise, the lands to be-vacant as most-extensively (as

à sŭis finĭbus. Sig-
extensively as possible) *from their borders.* (*They think it*) *to*

nificari hâc re, magnum numĕrum civitatum
be signified by this thing, a great number of states

non potuisse sustinere sŭam vim. Ităque
not to have been-able to withstand their force. Therefore

circĭter sexcenta millĭa passùum agri dicuntur
about six hundred thousands of paces of land (country) *are said*

vacare à Suevis ex unâ parte. Ubĭi
to be-vacant from the Suevi from one part. The Ubii

succedunt ad altĕram partem, quorŭm civĭtas
come-next at the other part, whose state

fŭit ampla atque florens, ut captus
has been extensive and flourishing, as the capacity

Germanorum est; et qui sunt paullò huma-
of the Germans is; and who are a little more-

niores etĭam cætĕris, qui sunt ejusdem
civilized also than the rest, who are of the same

genĕris; propterĕa, quòd attingunt Rhenum, que
race; because that they touch-on the Rhine, and

mercatores ventĭtant multùm ad ĕos, et ipsi
merchants often-come much to them, and they

sunt assuefacti Gallĭcis morĭbus propter
are accustomed to Gallic manners on-account-of

propinquitatem. Quum Suevi, experti hos
(*their*) *nearness. When the Suevi, having tried these*

sæpè multis bellis, potuissent (pluperf. subj.) nor
often in many wars, had been-able not

expellĕre finĭbus, propter
to expel (*them*) *from* (*their*) *borders, on-account-of*

amplitudĭnem que gravitatem civitatis,
the extent and weight (consequence) *of the state,*

tămen fecerunt vectigales sĭbi,
however *they made* (*them*) *tributary* *to themselves,*

ac redegerunt multò humiliores que
and *reduced* (brought them) *by-much* *lower* *and*

infirmiores.
weaker.

4. Usipĕtes et Tenchthĕri, quos dixĭmus
The Usipetes *and* *Tenchtheri,* *whom* *we have said*

suprà, fuerunt in eâdem caussâ; quĭ sustinuerunt
above, *were* *in the same cause* (condition); *who* *supported*

vim Suevorum complures annos: tămen
the violence *of the Suevi* *many* *years:* *however*

ad extremum expulsi agris, et
at *last* *being driven-out* *from* (*their*) *lands,* *and*

vagati multis lŏcis Germanĭæ
having wandered *in many* *places* *of Germany* (*during*)

triennĭum, pervenerunt ad Rhenum: quas
three-years'-space, *they arrived* *at* *the Rhine:* *which*

regiones Menapĭi incolebant, et habebant
countries *the Menapii* *did inhabit,* *and* *did have*

agros, ædificĭa, que vicos ad utramque ripam
lands, *buildings,* *and* *villages* *at* *each* *bank*

flumĭnis: sed perterrĭti adventu tantæ
of the river: *but* *affrighted* *by the arrival* *of so-great*

multitudĭnis, demigraverunt ex his ædificĭis,
a multitude, *they emigrated* *from* *these* *buildings,*

quæ habuĕrant trans flumen: et præsidĭis
which *they had had* *beyond* *the river:* *and* *garrisons*

dispositis cis Rhenum, prohibebant
being arranged *on-this-side* *the Rhine,* *they did hinder*

Germanos transire. Illi experti omnĭa,
the Germans *to cross-over.* *They* *having tried* *all* (*things*)

quum possent (imp. subj.) nĕque contendĕre
when *they were able* *neither* *to contend*

vi, propter inopĭam navĭum, nĕque
by force, *on-account-of* *the want* *of ships,* *neither*

transire clàm, propter custodĭas
to cross-over secretly, on-account-of the watches

Menapiorum, simulaverunt se reverti in
of the Menapii, pretended themselves to return into

sŭas sedes que regiones; et pro-
their seats (settlements) *and countries; and having*

gressi vĭam tridŭi, reverterunt
advanced a way (distance) *of three-days, they returned*

rursus; atque omni hoc itinĕre confecto unâ
again; and all this journey being finished in one

nocte equitatu, oppresserunt Menapĭos inscĭos
night by cavalry, they overwhelmed the Menapii ignorant

que inopinantes; qui facti certiores de dis-
and unaware; who being made more-sure of the de-

cessu Germanorum per exploratores, remigravĕrant
parture of the Germans by spies, had re-emigrated

sĭne mĕtu in sŭos vicos trans Rhenum.
without fear into their villages beyond the Rhine.

His interfectis que navĭbus eorum occupatis,
These being slain and the ships of them being seized,

priùs-quam ĕa pars Menapiorum, quæ ĕrat
before-that that part of the Menapii, which was

citra Rhenŭm, fiĕret (imp. subj.) certĭor,
on-this-side the Rhine, was made more-sure,

transierunt flumen; atque omnĭbus ædificĭis
they crossed the river; and all the buildings

eorum occupatis, aluerunt se copĭis
of them being seized, they supported themselves with the stores

eorum relĭquam partem hiĕmis.
of them (during) *the rest* (remaining) *part of the winter.*

5. Cæsar factus certĭor de his rebus,
Cæsar being made more-sure of these things,

et verĭtus infirmitatem Gallorum, quòd
and having feared the weakness of the Gauls, because

sunt mobĭles in consilĭis capiendis, et
they are changeable in counsels to-be-taken. and

plerumque stŭdent nŏvis rebus, existimavit nĭhil
generally study for new things, thought nothing

committendum his. Autem hoc est Gallĭcæ
to-be-entrusted to these. But this is of Gallic

consuetudĭnis; ut et cogant (pres. subj.) viatores,
custom; that both they compel travellers,

etĭam invitos, consistĕre; et quærant (pres. subj.)
even unwilling, to stop; and inquire

quod quisque eorum audiĕrit aut
what each of them may have heard or

cognovĕrit de quâque re: et
may have known about each thing: and

vulgus circumsistat (pres. subj.) mercatores
the common-people stands-round the merchants

in oppĭdis: cogant (pres. subj.) pronuntiare ex
in the towns: compel (them) to declare from

quĭbus regionĭbus venĭant, que quas res
what countries they may come, and what things

cognovĕrint ĭbi. Permoti his
they may have known there. Moved-much by these

rumorĭbus atque auditionĭbus, inĕunt consilĭa
reports and hear-says, they enter-on counsels

sæpè de summis rebus: quorum
often concerning the most-important things: of which

est necesse pœnitere ĕos è-vestigĭo, quum
it is necessary to repent them immediately, when

servĭant (pres. subj.) incertis rumorĭbus,
(since) *they are-slaves to uncertain reports,*

et plerique respondĕant (pres. subj.) ficta
and most (travellers) answer feigned

ad voluntatem eorum.
(*things*) *to the will of them.*

6. Quâ consuetudĭne cognĭtâ, Cæsar proficiscĭtur
Which custom being known, Cæsar sets-out

ad exercĭtum maturĭùs quàm consuevĕrat,
to the army sooner than he had been-accustomed,

ne occurrĕret graviori bello. Quum venisset
lest he might meet to a heavier war. When he had come

(pluperf. subj.) ĕò cognovit ĕa
thither he knew (learned) *those* (*things*)

facta, quæ suspicatus-ĕrat fŏre :
done, which he had suspected to be-about-to-be :

legationes missas à nonnullis civitatĭbus ad
embassies being sent by some states to

Germanos, que ĕos invitatos ŭtì discedĕrent
the Germans, and those being invited that they should depart

ab Rheno : que omnĭa quæ
from the Rhine : and all (*things*) *which*

postulâssent fŏre parata ab
they might have demanded to be-about-to-be prepared by

se. Quâ spe Germani adducti,
themselves. By which hope the Germans being induced,

vagabantur jam latĭùs, et pervenĕrant in
did wander now more-widely, and had arrived into

fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui
the borders of the Eburones and of the Condrusi, who

sunt clientes Trevirorum. Principĭbus Gallĭæ
are dependants of the Treviri. The chiefs of Gaul

evocatis, Cæsar existimavit ĕa, quæ
being summoned, Cæsar thought those (*things*), *which*

cognovĕrat, dissimulanda sĭbi : que
he had known, to-be-dissembled to (by) *himself : and*

anĭmis eorum permulsis et confirmatis, que
the minds of them being soothed and strengthened, and

equitatu imperato, constitŭit gerĕre
cavalry being ordered (*to be sent*), *he resolved to carry-on*

bellum cum Germanis.
war with the Germans.

7. Frumentarĭâ re comparatâ, que equitĭbus
Corn affair being prepared, and cavalry

delectis, cœpit facére ĭter in ĕa
being chosen, he began to make (*his*) *march into those*

lŏca, in quĭbus lŏcis audiebat Germanos
places in which places he did hear the Germans

esse. A quĭbus quum abesset (imp. subj.)
to be. From whom when he was distant

ĭter paucorum dierum, legati venerunt ab
a journey of a few days, ambassadors came from

ĭis, quorum hæc fŭit oratĭo: "Germanos
them, of whom this was the speech: "The Germans

nĕque inferre bellum Romano popŭlo priores,
neither to bring-on war to the Roman people former

nĕque tămen recusare, quin contendant
(first), *nor however to refuse, but-that they may contend*

armis, si lacessantur: quòd hæc consuetudo
by arms, if they be provoked: because this custom

Germanorum tradĭta-sit (perf. subj.) à majorĭbus,
of the Germans has been delivered by (their) ancestors,

resistĕre, nĕque deprecari, quicumque
to oppose, neither (and not) *to beg-off, whosoever*

inferant bellum: tămen dicĕre
may bring-on war: however to say (that they must

hoc: venisse invitos, ejectos dŏmo:
say) *this: to have come unwilling, cast-out from home:*

si Romani vĕlint sŭam gratĭam, posse esse
if the Romans may will their favour, to be-able to be

utiles amicos ĕis: vel attribŭant agros
useful friends to them: either they may assign lands

sibi, vel patiantur tenere ĕos, quos
to themselves, or may allow (them) to hold those, which

possedĕrint armis: sese concedĕre
they may have possessed by arms: themselves to yield

Suevis unis; quĭbus ne quĭdem
to the Suevi one (alone); *to whom not indeed* (even)

immortales Dii possint esse păres: nemĭnem
the immortal Gods may be-able to be equal: no-one

reliquum esse quĭdem in terris, quem
rest (else) *to be indeed in the lands* (on earth), *when*

non-possint superare."
they may not-be-able to overcome."

8. Cæsar respondit ad hæc, quæ
Cæsar answered to these (words), what (things)

visum-est: sed exĭtus orationis fŭit:
seemed (fit): but the conclusion of (his) speech was:

"Nullam amicitĭam posse esse sĭbi cum
"No friendship to be-able to be for himself with

his, si remanerent in Gallĭâ: nĕque esse
them, if they should remain in Gaul: neither to be

verum occupare alienos, qui
true (proper for them) *to seize others'* (*lands*), *who*

potuĕrint non tueri sŭos fines:
may have been-able not to defend their-own borders:

nĕque ullos agros vacare in Gallĭâ, qui
neither any lands to be-vacant in Gaul, which

possint dări sine injurĭâ, præsertim
may be-able to be given without injury, especially

tantæ multitudĭni: sed licere, si vĕlint,
to so-great a multitude: but to be-lawful, if they may will,

considere in finĭbus Ubiorum; legati
to settle in the territories of the Ubii; ambassadors

quorum sint (pres. subj.) ăpud se, et
of whom are at (with) *himself, and*

querantur (pres. subj.) de injurĭis Suevorum, et
complain of the injuries of the Suevi, and

pĕtant (pres. subj.) auxilĭum à se: se
ask aid from himself: himself

impetraturum hoc ab Ubĭis."
about-to-obtain this from the Ubii."

9. Legati dixerunt se relaturos
The ambassadors said themselves about-to-carry-back

hæc ad sŭos, et re
these (*words*) *to their-own* (*people*), *and the thing*

deliberatâ, reversuros ad Cæsărem
being considered, (*to be*) *about-to-return to Cæsar*

post tertĭum dĭem: interĕa petiĕrunt
after the third day: meantime they requested

ne-moveret castra (pl.) propĭùs se.
he would not-move (*his*) *camp* *nearer* *themselves.*

Cæsar dixit ne id quĭdem posse
Cæsar *said* *not* *that* *indeed* (even) *to be-able*

impetrari ab se. Enim cognovĕrat
to be obtained *from* *himself.* *For* *he had known*

magnam partem equitatûs missam ab
a great *part* *of* (*their*) *cavalry* *having been sent* *by*

ĭis ad Ambivaritos trans Mŏsam, alĭquot
them *to* *the Ambivariti* *across* *the Meuse,* *some*

diebus antè, caussâ prædandi quæ
days *before,* *by cause* (for the sake) *of plundering* *and*

frumentandi : arbitrabatur hos equĭtes
of providing-corn : *he did think* *these* *horsemen*

expectari, atque mŏram interponi caussâ
to be waited-for, *and* *the delay* *to be interposed* *by cause*

ejus rĕi.
(for the sake) *of that* *thing.*

10. Mŏsa proflŭit ex monte Vogĕso,
The Mosa (Meuse) *flows* *from* *mount* *Vogesus*

qui est in finĭbus Lingŏnum ;
(Vosges), *which* *is* *in* *the territories* *of the Lingones ;*

et quâdam parte Rheni receptâ, quæ
and *a certain* *part* *of the Rhine* *being received,* *which*

appellatur Vahălis, efficit insŭlam
(*part*) *is called* *Vahalis* (Waal), *it forms* *the island*

Batavorum : nĕque-longĭùs ab ĕo
of the Batavi : *and-not-farther* *from* *that* (*than*)

octoginta millĭbus passŭum transit in Oceănum.
eighty *thousands* *of paces* *it passes* *into* *the Ocean.*

Autem Rhenus orĭtur ex Lepontĭis, qui
But *the Rhine* *arises* *out-of* *the Lepontii,* *who*

incŏlunt Alpes, et fertur citatus longo spatĭo
habit *the Alps,* *and* *is borne* *rapid* *in a long* *distance*

per fines Nantuatĭum, Helvetiorum,
through *the territories* *of the Nantuates,* *of the Helvetii,*

Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Triboccorum, que
of the Sequani, of the Mediomatrici, of the Tribocci, and

Trevirorum; et ŭbi appropinquat Oceăno,
of the Treviri; and when it approaches to the Ocean,

diffĭŭit in plures partes; multis
it flows-dividedly into more (several) parts; many

que ingentĭbus insŭlis effectis; magna pars
and great islands being formed; a great part

quarum incolĭtur à fĕris que barbăris
of which is inhabited by wild and barbarous

nationĭbus; (ex quĭbus sunt qui
nations; (out-of which (there) are (some) who

existimantur vivĕre piscĭbus atque ovis
are thought to live (on) fishes and the eggs

avĭum); que inflŭit in Oceănum multis
of birds); and it flows-in into the Ocean by many

capitĭbus.
heads.

11. Quum Cæsar abesset (imp. subj.) ab
When Cæsar was-distant from

hoste non amplĭùs duodĕcim millĭbus
the enemy not more (than) twelve thousands

passŭum, legati revertuntur ad ĕum,
of paces, the ambassadors returned to him,

ut constitutum-ĕrat: qui congressi in
as it had been-appointed: who having met (him) on

itinĕre, orabant magnopĕrè, ne-progrederetur
the march, did pray greatly, that-he would not-advance

longĭùs. Quum impetrâssent (pluperf. subj.) non
farther. When they had obtained not

id, petebant, "útì præmittĕret ad ĕos
that, they did ask, "that he would send-before to those

equĭtes, qui antecessissent (pluperf. subj.) agmen,
horsemen, who had preceded the troop

que prohiberet ĕos pugnâ: que
(army), *and would prohibit them from battle: and*

uti facĕret potestatem sĭbi mittendi
that he would make power to themselves of sending

legatos in Ubĭos: si princĭpes que senatus
ambassador unto the Ubii: if the chiefs and senate

quorum fecissent fidem sĭbi
of whom might have made faith (given security) *to themselves*

jurejurando, ostendebant se usuros ĕâ
by oath, they did show themselves about-to-use (accept) *that*

conditione, quæ ferretur à Cæsăre;
condition, which might be brought (was offered) *by Cæsar;*

dăret sĭbi spatĭum tridŭi ad
he might give to themselves the space of three-days to

has res conficiendas." Cæsar arbitrabatur
these things to-be-accomplished." Cæsar did think

omnĭa hæc pertinere eòdem-illò, ut,
all these (*things*) *to tend to-that-same* (*point*), *that*

mŏrâ tridŭi interpositâ, equĭtes
the delay of three-days having been interposed, the cavalry

eorum, qui abessent (imp. subj.) reverterentur:
of them, who were-absent might return:

tămen dixit sese non processurum longĭùs
however he said himself not about-to-advance farther

quatŭor millĭbus passŭum ĕo dĭe caussâ
(than) four thousands of paces in that day by cause

aquationis: convenirent huc
(for the sake) of watering: they should assemble hither

quàm frequentissĭmi postĕro
as most-numerous (as numerous as possible) *on the following*

dĭe, ut cognoscĕret de postulatis
day, that he might know (learn) *concerning the requests*

eorum. Intĕrim mittit ad præfectos,
of them. Meanwhile he sends (*persons*) *to the commanders,*

qui antecessĕrant cum omni equitatu, qui
who had gone-before with all the cavalry, who

nuntiarent, ne-lacessĕrent hostes
might announce, they should not-provoke the enemies

prœlĭo; et, si ipsi lacesserentur,
to battle; and, if themselves should be provoked,

sustinerent quŏad ipse accessisset
they should support (it) until himself might have approached

propĭùs cum exercĭtu.
nearer with the army.

12. At hostes, ŭbi primùm conspexerunt
But the enemies, when first they beheld

nostros equĭtes, numĕrus quorum ĕrat quinque
our cavalry, the number of whom was of five

millĭum, quum ipsi haberent (imp. subj.) non
thousands, when themselves did have not

amplĭus octingentos equĭtes, quòd ĭi,
more (than) eight-hundred cavalry, because those,

qui iĕrant trans Mŏsam caussâ
who had gone beyond the Meuse for the sake

frumentandi, rediĕrant nondum; nostris
of foraging, had returned not-yet; our (men)

timentĭbus nĭhil, quòd legati eorum
fearing nothing, because the ambassadors of them

discessĕrant paullò antè à Cæsăre, atque
had departed a little before from Cæsar, and

is dĭes petitus-ĕrat ab ĭis induciis (pl.),
that day had been sought by them for a truce,

impĕtu facto, perturbaverunt celerĭter nostros.
an attack being made, confused quickly our (men).

Nostris rursus resistentĭbus, desiliĕrunt ad
Our (men) again resisting, they leaped-down to

pĕdes, sŭâ consuetudĭne, que ĕquis
(on) feet, by their custom, and the horses

suffossis, que complurĭbus nostris dejectis,
being stabbed, and many our (men) being thrown-down,

conjecerunt relĭquos in fŭgam; atque egerunt
they threw the rest into flight, and drove (them)

ĭta perterrĭtos, ut desistĕrent (imp. subj.) non
so affrighted, that they did cease not

fŭgâ, prĭùs quàm venissent (pluperf. subj.)
from flight, before than they had come

in conspectum nostri agmĭnis. Quatŭor et
into sight of our troop (army). *Four and*

septuaginta ex nostris equitĭbus interficiuntur in
seventy out-of our cavalry are killed in

ĕo prœlĭo; in his Piso, fortissĭmus vir,
that battle; in these (was) *Piso, a most-brave man,*

Aquitanus, natus amplissĭmo genĕre,
an Aquitanian, born from most-extensive (noble) *birth,*

cujus ăvus obtinuĕrat regnum
whose grand-father had obtained kingdom (sovereign

in sŭâ civitate, appellatus amicus à
power) *in his-own state, being called a friend by*

nostro senatu. Quum hic ferret (imp. subj.)
our senate. When he did bring

auxilĭum fratri intercluso ab hostĭbus,
aid to (his) *brother shut-in by the enemies,*

eripŭit illum ex periculo; ipse, ĕquo
he rescued him from danger · himself, (his) horse

vulnerato, dejectus restĭtit fortissĭme
being wounded being thrown-down resisted most-bravely

quŏad potŭit. Quum circumventus
as-long-as he was-able. When being surrounded

cecidisset (plup. subj.); multis vulnerĭbus acceptis,
he had fallen; many wounds being received,

atque frater, qui jam excessĕrat
and (his) *brother, who already had departed*

prœlĭo, animadvertisset (pluperf. subj.) id
from the battle, had perceived that

prŏcul, ĕquo incitato obtŭlit sese
at-a-distance, (his) *horse being urged-on, he offered himself*

hostĭbus, atque interfectus-est
to the enemies, and was-slain.

13 Hoc prœlĭo facto, Cæsar jam
This battle being made (fought), *Cæsar now*

arbitrabatur nĕque legatos audiendos
did think *neither* *the ambassador.* (ought) *to-be-heard*

sĭbi, nĕque conditiones accipiendas ab
to (by) *himself,* *neither* *conditions* *to-be-received* *from*

iis, qui, pace petitâ, intulissent (pluperf.
those, *who,* *peace* *being sought,* *had brought-on*

subj.) bellum ultrò, per dŏlum atque
war *voluntarily,* *through* *deceit* *and*

insidĭas. Verò judicabat esse summæ
snares. *But* *he did judge* (*it*) *to be* *of the highest*

dementĭæ expectare, dum copĭæ hostĭum
madness *to wait,* *until* *the forces* *of the enemies*

augerentur que equitatus reverteretur,
might be increased *and* (*their*) *cavalry* *might return.*

et infirmitate Gallorum cognĭtâ,
and *the weakness* (levity) *of the Gauls* *being known,*

sentiebat quantum auctoritatis hostes
he did perceive *how-much* *of authority* *the enemies*

consecuti-essent (pluperf. subj.) ăpud ĕos unŏ
had obtained *among* *them* *by one*

prœlĭo; quĭbus existimabat nĭhil spatĭi
battle; *to whom* *he did think* *nothing* *of space* (time)

dandum ad consilĭa capienda. His rebus
to-be-given *to* (for) *counsels* *to-be-taken.* *These* *things*

constitutis, et consilĭo communicato
being determined, *and* (*his*) *plan* *being communicated*

cum legatis et quæstore, opportunissĭma
with *the lieutenants* *and* *the quæstor,* *a most-convenient*

res accĭdit, ne-prætermittĕret quem dĭem
thing *happened,* *that-he-might-not-pass-by* *any* *day*

pugnæ, quòd manè postridĭe ejus
of a battle, *because* *in-the-morning* *the day-after* *of that*

dĭei, Germani usi et eâdem
day, *the Germans* *having used* *both* *the same*

perfidĭâ et simulatione, frequentes, omnĭbus
treachery *and* *pretence,* *numerous,* *all*

principĭbus que majorĭbus-natū
(*their*) *chiefs* *and* (*those*) *greater-by-birth* (elders)

adhibĭtis, venerunt ad ĕum in castra (pl.);
being brought, *came* *to* *him* *into* *the camp;*

sĭmul, ut dicebatur, caussâ
at-the-same-time, *as* *it was said,* *by cause* (for the sake)

sŭi purgandi, quòd commisissent
of themselves *to-be-cleared,* *because* *they had engaged*

(pluperf. subj.) prœlĭum pridĭe, contrà atque
battle *the day-before,* *contrary* *and*

dictum-esset (pluperf. subj.), et ipsi
(than) *it had been-said,* *and* *themselves*

petîssent (pluperf. subj.): sĭmul ut
had requested: *at-the-same-time* *that*

impetrarent quid, si possent (imp. subj.),
they might obtain *some* (*thing*), *if* *they could,*

fallendo de inducĭis. Quos oblatos
by deceiving *concerning* *the truces.* *Whom* *being presented*

sĭbi Cæsar gavisus, jussit retineri:
to himself *Cæsar* *having rejoiced,* *commanded* *to be detained:*

ipse eduxit omnes copĭas castris (pl.);
himself *led-out* *all* (*his*) *forces* *from the camp;*

jussit equitatum subsĕqui agmen,
he ordered *the cavalry* *to follow-near* *the troop* (army).

quòd existimabat perterrĭtum-esse recenti
because *he did think* (*it*) *to have been-dismayed* *by the late*

prœlĭo.
battle.

14. Triplĭci acĭe institutâ, et itinĕre
A triple *line* *being arranged,* *and* *a march*

octo millĭum confecto celerĭter, pervenit ad
of eight *miles* *being finished* *quickly,* *he arrived at*

castra hostĭum, prĭùs quàm Germani
the camps *of the enemies,* *before* *than* *the Germans*

possent sentire quid ageretur: qui
might be-able *to perceive* *what* *might be done:* *who*

perterrĭti subĭtò omnĭbus rebus, et
being affrighted suddenly by all things, both

celeritate nostri adventûs, et discessu
by the quickness of our arrival, and by the departure

suorum, nĕque spatĭo dăto consilĭi
of their-own (people), neither space being given of counsel

habendi, nĕque capiendi arma, perturbantur,
to-be-had, nor of taking arms, are disturbed,

ne præstaret educĕre copĭas
whether it might be-better to lead-out (their) forces

adversùs hostem, an defendĕre castra, an petĕre
against the enemy, or to defend the camps, or to seek

salutem fŭgâ. Quum tĭmor quorum significaretur
safety by flight. When the fear of whom was signified

(imp. subj.) fremĭtu et concursu, nostri milĭtes
by the noise and running, our soldiers

incitati perfidĭâ pristĭni diei, irruperunt
urged-on by the treachery of the former day, burst-in

in castra (pl.): in quo lŏco, qui
into the camp: in which place, (those) who

potuerunt capĕre arma celerĭter, restiterunt nostris
were-able to take arms quickly, resisted to our (men)

paulisper, atque commiserunt prœlĭum inter
a little-while, and engaged battle between

carros que impedimenta. At relĭqua
the waggons and baggages. But the rest (remaining)

multitudo puerorum que mulĭĕrum (nam
multitude of boys and of women (for

excessĕrant ᵗdŏmo cum omnĭbus sŭis
they had departed from home with all their

que transiĕrant Rhenum,) cœpit fugĕre
(people) and had crossed the Rhine,) began to flee

passim, ad-consectandos quos Cæsar misit
every-where, to-pursue whom Cæsar sent

equitatum.
the cavalry.

15. Germani, clamore audito post
The Germans, a shout being heard behind

tergum, quum viderent (imp. subj.) sŭos
the back (rear), *when they did see their* (*people*)

interfĭci, armis abjectis que
to be slaughtered, (*their*) *arms being cast-away and*

militarĭbus signis relictis, ejecerunt se
military standards being left, cast-out themselves

ex castris (pl.); et quum pervenissent
out-of the camp; and when they had arrived

(pluperf. subj.) ad confluentem Mŏsæ et
at the conflux of the Meuse and

Rheni, relĭquâ fŭgâ desperatâ, magno
of the Rhine, the rest-of flight being despaired-of, a great

numĕro interfecto, relĭqui præcipitaverunt se
number being killed, the rest precipitated themselves

in flumen, atque oppressi ĭbi timore,
into the river, and being overpowered there by fear,

lassitudĭne, et vi flumĭnis, periĕrunt.
by fatigue, and by the force of the river, they perished.

Omnes nostri incolŭmes ad unum,
All our (*men*) *safe to one* (to a man),

perpaucis vulneratis, receperunt se in
very few being wounded, betook themselves into

castris (pl.) ex timore tanti belli, quum
camp out-of fear of so-great a war, when

numĕrus hostĭum fuisset quadringentorum
the number of the enemies might have been of four-hundred

triginta millĭum capĭtum. Cæsar fecit
thirty thousands of heads. Cæsar made (gave)

potestatem discedendi ĭis, quos retinuĕrat
power of departing to those, whom he had detaine

in castris (pl.). Illi veriti supplicĭa
in the camp. They having feared the punishments

que cruciatus Gallorum, quorum agros vexa-
and tortures of the Gauls, whose lands they had

věrant, dixerunt se velle remanere ăpud
harassed, said themselves to will to remain at (with)

ĕum. Cæsar concessit libertatem his.
him. Cæsar granted (this) liberty to them.

16. Germanĭco bello confecto, Cæsar de
The German war being finished, Cæsar from

multis caussis statŭit Rhenum transeundum-esse
many causes resolved the Rhine to-be-crossed

sĭbi; quarum illa fŭit justissĭma;
to (by) *himself; of which that* (this) *was the most-just*

quòd, quum videret (imp. subj.)
(most cogent); *because, when he did see*

Germanos impelli tam facĭlè, ut veni-
the Germans to be impelled so easily, that they might

rent in Gallĭam, volŭit ĕos timere sŭis
come into Gaul, he willed them to fear for their-own

rebus quŏque, quum intelligĕrent exercĭtum
things also, when they might understand the army

Romani popŭli et posse et audere
of the Roman people both to be-able and to dare

transire Rhenum. Accessit etĭam,
to cross the Rhine. It-acceded (added to this) *also,*

quòd illa pars equitatûs Usipĕtum et
because that part of the cavalry of the Usipetes and

Tenchtherorum, quam commemoravi suprà
of the Tenchtheri, which I have mentioned above

transîsse Mŏsam caussâ
to have crossed the Meuse by cause (for the sake)

prædandi que frumentandi, nĕque inter-
of plundering and of providing-corn, nor to have been-

fuisse prœlĭo, recepĕrat se trans
present to (at) *the battle, had betaken itself across*

Rhenum, post fŭgam suorum in
the Rhine, after the flight of their-own (people) into

fines Sicambrorum, que conjunxĕrat se
the borders of the Sicambri, and had united itself

cum ĭis. Ad quos quum Cæsar misisset (plu-
with them. To whom when Cæsar had sent

perf. subj.) nuncĭos, qui postularent, "ŭti
messengers, who should demand, "that

dederĕnt sĭbi ĕos, qui intulissent
they should surrender to himself those, who had brought-on

(pluperf. subj.) bellum sĭbi que Gallĭæ,"
war to himself and to Gaul,

responderunt: Rhenum finire
they answered: the Rhine to end (that the Rhine terminates)

imperĭum Romani populi: si existimaret
the empire of the Roman people: if he might think (it)

non æquum Germanos transire in Gallĭam,
not just the Germans to cross-over into Gaul,

se invito, cur postularet quidquam
himself (being) *unwilling, why should he require any*

sŭi imperĭi aut potestatis esse trans Rhenum?
of his empire or power to be across the Rhine?

Autem Ubĭi, qui uni ex Transrhenanis
But the Ubii, who one (alone) *out-of the Transrhenani*

misĕrant legatos ad
(nations across the Rhine) *had sent ambassadors to*

Cæsărem, fecĕrant amicitĭam, dedĕrant obsĭdes,
Cæsar, had made friendship, had given hostages,

orabant magnopĕrè, "ut ferret auxilĭum
did pray greatly, "that he would bring aid

sĭbi, quòd premerentur (imp. subj.)
to themselves, because they were oppressed

graviter ab Suevis: vel, si prohiberetur
grievously by the Suevi: or, if he might be hindered

facĕre id occupationĭbus reipublĭcæ, mŏdò
to do that by the engagements of the state, only

transportaret Rhenum exercĭtum: id
he would carry-over the Rhine (his) *army: that*

futurum sătis sĭbi ad auxilĭum
about-to-be enough for themselves to (for) *aid*

que spem relĭqui tempŏris: tantum
and *hope* *of the rest* (remaining) *time:* *so-great*

esse nomen atque opinionem Romani exercĭtûs,
to be *the name* *and* *opinion* *of a Roman* *army,*

Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissĭmo prœlĭo
Ariovistus *being routed,* *and* *this* *newest* (last) *battle*

facto, etĭam ad ultĭmas nationes
being made (fought), *even* *to* *the remotest* *nations*

Germanorum, ŭtì possint esse tutæ
of the Germans, *that* *they may be able* *to be* *safe*

opinione et amicitĭâ Romani popŭli.*
by the opinion (prestige) *and friendship* *of the Roman people.**

Pollicebantur magnam copĭam navĭum ad
They did promise *a great* *plenty* *of ships* *to*

exercĭtum transportandum.
the army *to-be-carried-over.*

17. Cæsar de his caussis, quas commemoravi,
Cæsar *from* *these* *causes,* *which* *I have mĕntioned,*

decrevĕrat transire Rhenum: sed arbitrabatur
had resolved *to cross* *the Rhine:* *but* *he did think* (*it*)

nĕque esse sătis tutum transire navĭbus,
neither *to be* *sufficiently* *safe* *to cross* *with ships,*

nĕque statuebat esse sŭæ
neither *did he decide* (*it*) *to be* (*the part*) *of his-own*

dignitatis, nĕque Romani popŭli: ităque,
dignity, *nor* (*that*) *of the Roman people:* *therefore,*

etsi summa difficultas pontis faciundi
although *the highest* *difficulty* *of a bridge* *to-be-made*

proponebatur, propter latitudĭnem, rapiditatem,
was set-before (*him*), *on-account-of* *the breadth,* *rapidity,*

que altitudĭnem flumĭnis; tămen existimabat id
and *depth* *of the river;* *however* *he did think* *that*

contendendum sĭbi, aut alĭter exercĭtum
to-be-endeavoured *to* (by) *himself,* *or* *otherwise* *the army*

non transducendum. Igĭtur institŭit hanc
not *to-be-led-over.* *Therefore* *he framed* *this*

rationem pontis. Jungebat bina
plan of the bridge. He did join double (two)

sesquipedalĭa tigna, paullùm præacuta ab
foot-and-half-thick beams, a little sharp-pointed from

imo, dimensa ad altitudĭnem
the lowest (*part*), *measured to* (according to) *the depth*

flumĭnis, intervallo duorum pĕdum inter
of the river, with (at) *an interval of two feet between*

se: cùm defixĕrat hæc demissa in
themselves: when he had fastened these sent-down into

flumen machinationĭbus que adegĕrat
the river by machines and had driven (*them*)

fistucis, non directa ad perpendicŭlum
with rammers, not straight to a perpendicular

mŏdo sublĭcæ, sed prona ac fastigiata,
in the manner of a pile, but inclined and pointed;

ut procumbĕrent secundùm naturam
that they might incline-forward according-to the nature

flumĭnis: statuebat ĭtem dŭo contraria
of the river: he did place also two (*beams*) *opposite*

his juncta ad eundem mŏdum intervallo
to these joined to (in) *the same manner in* (at) *an interval*

quadragenûm pĕdum ab inferiore parte conversa
of forty feet from the lower part turned

contra vim atque impĕtum flumĭnis: utrăque
against the force and violence of the river: each-of

hæc distinebantur binis fibŭlis utrimque
these were separated by two braces on-either-side

ab extremâ parte, bipedalĭbus trabĭbus
from the extreme part (the top), *two-foot-wide beams*

immissis, quantum junctura
being let-in (*to them*), *as-much-as the joining* (the space

eorum tignorum distabat: quĭbus
between) *of those beams was-distant: which*

disclusis, atque revinctis in
being shut-out (pushed out), *and being fastened on*

contrarĭam partem, tanta· ĕrat firmitudo opĕris,
the opposite part, so-great was the firmness of the work,

atque ĕa natura rerum, ut
and that (such) *the nature of the things, that*

quò-major vis ăquæ incitavisset
by how-much-greater the force of the water might have urged

se, hòc arctĭùs tenerentur
itself, by this (by so much) *more-closely they were kept*

(imp. subj.) illigata: hæc directa
fastened: these straight-forward

contexebantur materĭâ injectâ,
were interwoven with material (timber) *thrown-on* (*them*),

ac consternebantur longurĭis que cratĭbus:
and were strewed with long-stakes and hurdles:

ac nihĭlo secĭùs sublĭcæ adigebantur obliquè ad
and nevertheless piles were driven obliquely at

inferiorem partem flumĭnis, quæ subjectæ
the lower part of the river, which being subjoined

pro pariĕte, et conjunctæ cum omni opĕre,
for (as) *a wall, and united with all the work,*

excipĕrent vim flumĭnis: et ĭtem alĭæ
might receive the force of the river: and also other (*piles*)

mediocri spatĭo supra pontem, ut si trunci
at a moderate distance above the bridge, that if trunks

arbŏrum sive naves essent missæ à barbăris,
of trees or ships might be sent by the barbarians,

caussâ opĕris dejiciendi,
by cause (for the sake) *of the work to-be-thrown-down,*

vis earum rerum minueretur his
the force of those things might be diminished by these

defensorĭbus, neu nocerent ponti.
protectors, nor (lest) *they might injure to the bridge.*

18. Omni opĕre effecto dĕcem diebus,
All the work being completed in ten days,

quĭbus materĭa cœpta-ĕrat comportari,
in which the material had been-begun to be brought-together,

exercĭtus transducĭtur. Cæsar, firmo præsidĭo
the army *is led-over.* *Cæsar,* *a strong* *guard*

relicto ad utramque partem pontis,
being left *at* *each* *part* (side) *of the bridge,*

contendit in fines Sicambrorum. Intĕrim
hastened *into* *the territories* *of the Sicambri.* *Meantime*

legati à complurĭbus civitatĭbus venĭunt
ambassadors *from* *many* *states* *come*

ad ĕum, quĭbus petentĭbus pacem atque amicitĭam
to *him,* *to whom* *seeking* *peace* *and* *friendship*

respondit liberalĭter, que jŭbet obsĭdes adduci
he answered *liberally,* *and* *orders* *hostages* *to be brought*

ad se. Sicambri, ex ĕo tempŏre,
to *himself.* *The Sicambri,* *from* *that* *time,*

quo pons cœptus-est institŭi, fŭgâ
in which *the bridge* *was begun* *to be framed,* *flight*

comparatâ, ĭis hortantĭbus, quos ha-
being prepared, *those* *exhorting* (*them*), *whom* *they*

bebant ex Tenchthĕris atque Usipetĭbus
did have *out-of* *the Tenchtheri* *and* *Usipetes*

ăpud se, excessĕrant sŭis finĭbus,
at (among) *themselves,* *had departed* *from their* *territories,*

que exportavĕrant omnĭa sŭa, que
and *had carried-away* *all* *their* (*effects*), *and*

abdidĕrant se in solitudĭnem ac silvas.
had concealed *themselves* *into* *a desert* *and* *woods.*

19. Cæsar moratus paucos dĭes in finĭ-
Cæsar *having delayed* *a few* *days* *in* *the terri-*

bus eorum, omnĭbus vicis que ædificĭis
tories *of them,* *all* *the villages* *and* *buildings*

incensis, que frumentis (pl.) succisis, recepit
being burned, *and* *the corn* *being cut-down,* *betook*

se in fines Ubiorum; atque polli-
himself *into* *the territories* *of the Ubii;* *and* *having*

citus sŭum auxilĭum his, si premerentur
promised *his* *aid* *to them,* *if* *they might be oppressed*

à Suevis, cognovit hæc ab
by the Suevi, he knew (learned) *these* (*things*) *from*

ïis; Suevos, postquam comperissent (pluperf.
them: the Suevi, after-that they had found

subj.) per exploratores pontem fiĕri, concilĭo
by spies a bridge to be made, a council

habĭto, sŭo more, dimisisse nuncĭos
being held, in their manner, to have sent messengers

in omnes partes, ŭtì demigrarent de
into all parts, that they might emigrate from

oppĭdis, deponĕrent libĕros, uxores, que
the towns, might deposit (*their*) *children, wives, and*

omnĭa sŭa in silvas, atque omnes,
all their (*effects*) *into the woods, and all,*

qui possent ferre arma, convenirent in
who might be-able to bear arms, should assemble into

unum lŏcum: hunc delectum-esse fĕrè
one place: this (*place*) *to have been chosen nearly*

mediŭm earum regionum, quas Suevi
the middle of those countries, which the Suevi

obtinerent (imp. subj.): exspectare ĭbi adventum
did possess: to await there the coming-up

Romanorum, atque constituisse decertare ĭbi.
of the Romans, and to have resolved to contend there.

Quod ŭbi Cæsar compĕrit, omnĭbus his rebus
Which when Cæsar discovered, all these things

confectis, caussâ quarum rerum
being finished, by cause (for the sake) *of which things*

constituĕrat transducĕre exercĭtum, ut inji-
he had resolved to lead-over (*his*) *army, that he might*

cĕret mĕtum Germanis, ut ulcis-
cast-in fear to the Germans, that he might take-

ceretur Sicambros, ut liberaret
vengeance-on (punish) *the Sicambri, that he might deliver*

Ubĭos obsidione, octoděcim diebus omnino
the Ubii from a siege, eighteen days altogether

consumptis trans Rhenum, arbitratus
being spent across the Rhine, having thought (himself)

profectum (-esse) sătis et ad laudem et
to have advanced enough both to (for) praise and

ad utilitatem, recepit se in Gallĭam que
to utility, he betook himself into Gaul and

rescĭdit pontem.
cut-down the bridge.

20. Exiguâ parte æstatis relĭquâ, Cæsar,
A small part of the summer (being) left, Cæsar,

etsi hiĕmes in his lŏcis sunt maturæ,
although the winters in these places are early,

quòd omnis Gallĭa vergit ad Septentrionem,
because all Gaul bends (inclines) to the North,

tămen contendit proficisci in Britanniam;
yet hastened to set-out into Britain;

quòd intelligebat auxilĭa subministrata (-esse)
because he did understand aids to have been supplied

inde nostris hostĭbus, fĕrè omnĭbus Gallĭcis
thence to our enemies, nearly in all the Gallic

bellis: et, si tempus anni deficĕret ad
wars: and, if the time of the year might fail to

bellum gerendum: tămen arbitrabatur
war to-be-carried-on: yet he did think (it)

fŏre magno usŭi sĭbi, si mŏdò
to-be-about-to-be for great use to himself, if only

adĭsset insŭlam; perspexisset
he might have gone-to the island; might have observed

gĕnus homĭnum; cognovisset lŏca, portus,
the kind of men; might have known the places, harbours,

adĭtus; omnĭa quæ fĕrè ĕrant
approaches; all which (things) nearly were

incognĭta Gallis. Enim nĕque quisquam ădit
unknown to the Gauls. For neither any-one goes

illò temĕrè præter mercatores; nĕque est
thither rashly except merchants; nor is

quidquam notum ĭis ipsis, præter marĭtĭmam
any (thing) known to those selves, except the maritime

oram, atque ĕas regiones, quæ sunt contra
coast, and those countries, which are opposite

Gallĭam. Ităque, mercatorĭbus convocatis
Gaul. Therefore, the merchants being called-together

undĭque ad se, potĕrat reperire nĕque
from-every-side to himself, he was-able to find neither

quanta esset magnitudo insŭlæ, nĕque
how-great might be the size of the island, neither

quæ aut quantæ nationes incolĕrent, nĕque
what or how-great nations might inhabit (it), neither

quem usum belli haberent, aut quĭbus
what method of warfare they might have, or with what

institutis uterentur, nĕque qui portus essent
institutions they might use, nor what harbours might be

idonĕi ad multitudĭnem majorum navĭum.
fit to (for) a number of greater ships.

21. Arbitratus esse idonĕum, prĭùs quàm
Having thought (it) to be proper, before than

facĕret periculum, præmittit Caĭum
he should make the trial, he sends-before (him) Caius

Volusenum cum longâ navi, ad
Volusenus with a long ship (a ship of war), to (for)

hæc cognoscenda. Mandat huic ut,
these (things) to-be-known. He charges to him that,

omnĭbus rebus exploratis, revertatur ad
all things being examined, he may return to

se quamprimùm. Ipse proficiscĭtur cum
himself as-soon-as-possible. Himself sets-out with

omnĭbus copĭis in Morĭnos, quòd trajectus
all (his) forces into the Morini, because the passage

inde in Britanniam ĕrat brevissĭmus. Jŭbet
thence into Britain was the shortest. He orders

naves convenire huc undĭque ex
ships to assemble hither from-every-side from

finitĭmis regionĭbus, et classem, quam
the neighbouring countries, and the fleet, which

fecĕrat ad Venetĭcum bellum superiore
he had made to (for) *the Venetian war in the former*

æstate. Intĕrim consilĭo ejus cognĭto, et
summer. Mean-time the design of him being known, and

perlato ad Britannos per
being carried (reported) *to the Britons through*

mercatores, legati venĭunt ad ĕum à
the merchants, ambassadors come to him from

complurĭbus civitatĭbus ejus insŭlæ, qui polliceantur
very-many states of that island, who may promise

dăre obsĭdes, atque obtemperare imperĭo
to give hostages, and to obey to the empire

Romani popŭli. Quĭbus auditis, polli-
of the Roman people. Who being heard, having

cĭtus liberalĭter, que hortatus ut
promised liberally, and having exhorted (*them*) *that*

permanerent in ĕâ sententĭâ remisit
they should remain-firm in that determination he sent-back

ĕos dŏmum: et unà cum his mittit
them home: and together with these he sends

Comĭum, quem ipse constituĕrat regem ĭbi,
Comius, whom himself had appointed king there,

Atrebatĭbus superatis, et cujus virtutem et
the Atrebates being overcome, and whose valour and

consilĭum probabat, et quem arbitrabatur
counsel he did approve, and whom he did think

fidelem sĭbi, que cujus auctorĭtas habebatur
faithful to himself, and whose authority was accounted

magna in his regionĭbus: impĕrat huic,
great in these countries: he commands to him,

adĕat quas civitates possit, que hortetur
(*that*) *he may go-to what states he may be-able, and may exhort*

ut sequantur fĭdem
(*them*) *that they may follow the faith* (secure the protection)

Romani populi, que nuntiet se
of the Roman people, and he may announce himself

venturum eò celeriter. Volusenus, regionibus
about-to-come thither quickly. Volusenus, the countries

perspectis, quantum facultatis potuit dari
being observed, as-much of power was-able to be given

ei, qui auderet non egredi navi,
to him, who might dare not to go-out from the ship,

ac committere se barbaris, revertitur
and to entrust himself to the barbarians, returns

quinto die ad Cæsarem, que renuntiat quæ
on the fifth day to Cæsar, and announces what

(this) perspexisset (pluperf. subj.) ibi.
he had seen there.

22. Dum Cæsar commoratur in his locis
Whilst Cæsar delays in these places

caussâ navium parandarum, legati
by cause (for the sake) *of ships to-be-prepared, ambassadors*

venerunt ad eum ex magnâ parte Morinorum,
came to him from a great part of the Morini,

qui excusarent se de consilio
who might excuse themselves concerning the counsel

superioris temporis; quòd barbari
of the foregoing time; because (being) *barbarous*

homines que imperiti nostræ consuetudinis,
men and unacquainted of (with) *our custom,*

fecissent (pluperf. subj.) bellum Romano populo;
they had made war to the Roman people;

que pollicerentur se facturos ea,
and might promise themselves about-to-do those (things),

quæ imperâsset. Cæsar arbitratus
which he might have commanded. Cæsar having thought

hoc accidisse opportunè satis sibi;
this to have happened conveniently enough to himself;

quòd volebat neque relinquere hostem post
because he did will neither to leave an enemy after

tergum, nĕque habebat facultatem
(behind) (*his*) *rear*, *neither* *did he have* *the power*

belli gerendi propter tempus anni;
of war *to-be-carried-on* *on-account-of* *the time* *of the year;*

nĕque judicabat has occupationes tantularum
nor *did he judge* *these* *engagements* *of so-very-little*

rerum anteponendas sĭbi Britannĭæ:
things *to-be-preferred* *to* (by) *himself* *to Britain:*

impĕrat his magnum numĕrum
commands *to them* (*to furnish*) *a great* *number*

obsĭdum. Quĭbus adductis, recepit
of hostages. *Which* *being brought-to* (*him*), *he received*

ĕos in fĭdem. Circĭter octoginta onerarĭis [illegible]port,
them into allegiance. *About* *eighty* *burden* (transport)

navĭbus coactis que contractis, quod
ships *being collected* *and* *brought-together,* *which*

existimabat esse sătis ad dŭas legiones
he did think *to be* *sufficient* *to* (for) *two* *legions*

transportandas; distribŭit quæstori,
to-be-carried-over; *he distributed* *to the quæstor,*

legatis que præfectis quidquid præterĕa
to the lieutenants *and* *prefects* *whatever* *besides*

longarum navĭum habebat: huc
of long *ships* (ships of war) *he did have.* *hither*

accedebant octoděcim onerarĭæ
did approach (were added) *eighteen* *burden* (transport)

naves, quas tenebantur vento octo millĭbus
ships, *which* *were detained* *by the wind* *eight* *thousands*

passŭum ex ĕo lŏco, quò mĭnùs-possent
of paces *from* *that* *place,* *that* *they might not-be-able*

pervenire in eundem portum: distribŭit has
to arrive *into* *the same* *harbour:* *he distributed* *these*

equitĭbus; dĕdit relĭquum exercĭtum Quinto
to the cavalry; *he gave* *the rest-of* *the army* *to Quintus*

Titurĭo Sabino, et Lucĭo Aurunculeĭo Cottæ,
Titurius *Sabinus,* *and* *to Lucius* *Aurunculeius* *Cotta,*

legatis, deducendum in Menapĭos atque
(his) lieutenants, to-be-led-down unto the Menapii and

in ĕos pagos Morinorum, ab quĭbus
unto those districts of the Morini, from which

legati venĕrant non ad ĕum: jussit
ambassadors had come not to him: he ordered

Publĭum Sulpicĭum Rufum legatum tenere
Publius Sulpicius Rufus (his) lieutenant to keep

portum cum ĕo præsidĭo, quod arbitrabatur
the harbour with that guard, which he did think

esse sătis.
to be sufficient

23. His rebus constitutis, nactus idoněam
These things being arranged, having got a proper

tempestatem ad-navigandum, solvit
time (weather) to-sail. he loosed (set sail)

fĕrè tertĭâ vigilĭâ, que jussit equĭtes
nearly in the third watch, and commanded the cavalry

progrĕdi in ulteriorem portum, et conscendĕre
to proceed unto the further harbour, and to mount

naves, ac sĕqui se: ab quĭbus
the ships (embark), and to follow himself: by whom

cùm administratum-esset (pluperf. subj.) paullò tar-
when it had been executed a little more-

dĭùs, ipse attĭgit Britanniam cum
slowly, himself touched (reached) Britain with

primis navĭbus circĭter quartâ horâ diei:
the first ships about in the fourth hour of the day:

atque ĭbi conspexit copĭas hostĭum
and there he beheld the forces of the enemies

firmatas, expositas in omnĭbus collĭbus.
confirmed (in position), drawn-out on all the hills.

Cujus lŏci hæc ĕrat natura: măre con-
Of which place this was the nature: the sea was

tinebatur montĭbus adĕo angustis, ut telum
bounded by mountains so close (to it), that a dart

posset adjĭci ex superiorĭbus lŏcis in
might be-able to be cast from the higher places unto

littus. Arbitratus hunc lŏcum nequaquam
the shore. Having thought this place by-no-means

idonĕum ad-egrediendum expectavit in
fit to-go-out (disembark) *he waited in* (at)

anchŏris ad nonam horam, dum relĭquæ
anchors to the ninth hour, until the rest-of

nāves convenirent ĕò. Intĕrim legatis
the ships might assemble there. Mean-time the lieutenants

que tribunis milĭtum convocatis,
and tribunes of soldiers being called-together,

ostendit et quæ cognovisset (pluperf.
he showed (*them*) *both what* (*things*) *he had known*

subj.) ex Voluseno, et quæ vellet
from Volusenus, and what he might will

fiĕri: que monŭit omnes res
to be done: and he advised (*them that*) *all things*

administrarentur ab ĭis ad nutum et ad
should be managed by them at a nod and to

tempus (ut ratĭo militaris rĕi, maxĭmè
time (*as the method of military affair,* (*and*) *chiefly*

ut maritĭmæ res postularent (imp. subj.), ut
as maritime affairs did require as (*cir-*

quæ haberent (imp. subj.) celĕrem atque
cumstances) *which did have a quick and*

instabĭlem motum.) His dimissis, et
unstable movement.) *These being dismissed, and*

nactus et secundum ventum et æstum
having got both a favourable wind and tide

uno tempŏre, signo dăto, et anchŏris
in (at) *one time, a signal being given, and the anchors*

sublatis, progressus circĭter octo
being taken-up (weighed), *having advanced about eight*

millĭa passŭum ab ĕo lŏco, constitŭit
thousands of paces from that place, he placed

naves aperto ac plano littŏre.
the ships on an open and level shore.

24. At barbări, consilĭo Romanorum
But the barbarians, the design of the Romans

cognĭto, equitatu præmisso, et
being known, the cavalry being sent-before, and

essedarĭis; quo genĕre consueverunt
the charioteers; with which kind they have been accustomed

plerumque uti in prœlĭis, subsecuti
generally to use in battles, having followed-near

relĭquis copĭis, prohibebant nostros
with the rest-of (their) forces, they did hinder our (men)

egrĕdi navĭbus. Erat summa
to come-out from the ships. (There) was the highest

difficultas ob has caussas, quòd
difficulty on-account-of these reasons, because

naves, propter magnitudĭnem pŏtĕrant non
the ships, on-account-of (their) size were-able not

constitŭi nĭsi in alto: autem ĕrat et
to be placed unless in the deep: but it was both

desiliendum sĭmul de navĭbus, et
to-be-leaped-down at-the-same-time from the ships, and

consistendum fluctĭbus, et pugnandum cum
to-be-stood in the waves, and to-be-fought with

hostĭbus militĭbus, ignotis lŏcis,
the enemies by the soldiers, in unknown places,

impeditis manĭbus, pressis magno et
with encumbered hands, oppressed with a great and

grăvi oněre armorum; quum illi aut conjicĕrent
heavy load of arms; when they either did hurl

(imp. subj.) tela audacter ex arĭdo aut
darts boldly from dry (ground) or

progressi paullŭlum in ăquam, expediti
having advanced a very-little into the water, unencumbered

omnĭbus membris, notissĭmis lŏcis, et
in all (their) limbs, in very-well-known places, and

incitarent (imp. subj.) ĕquos insuefactos. Quĭbus
did urge-on *horses* *accustomed-to (it).* *By which*

rebus nostri perterrĭti, atque imperiti
things *our (men)* *being dismayed,* *and* *unskilled*

omnino hujus generis pugnæ, omnes utebantur
altogether *of this* *kind* *of battle,* *all* *did use*

non eâdem alacritate ac studĭo,
(exhibit) *not* *with the same* *cheerfulness* *and* *zeal,*

quo consuevĕrant uti in pedestrĭbus
with which *they had been accustomed* *to use* *in* *infantry*

prœlĭis.
battles.

25. Quod ŭbi Cæsar animadvertit, jussit
Which *when* *Cæsar* *perceived,* *he ordered*

longas naves, species quarum
the long *ships* (ships of war), *the appearance* *of which*

et ĕrat inusitatĭor barbăris, et motus
both *was* *more-unusual* *to the barbarians,* *and* *the motion*

expeditĭor ad usum, removeri paullŭlum
more-quick *to* (for) *use,* *to be removed* *a very-little*

ab onerarĭis navĭbus, et incitari
from *the burden* (transport) *ships,* *and* *to be pushed-on*

remis, et constitŭi ad apertum lătus
with oars, *and* *to be stationed* *at* *the open* *flank*

hostĭum, atque hostes propelli ac
of the enemies, *and* *the enemies* *to be repulsed* *and*

submoveri inde fundis, tormentis, sagittis;
to be removed *thence* *by slings,* *shooting-engines,* *arrows;*

quæ res fŭit magno usŭi nostris. Nam
which *thing* *was* *for great* *use* *to our (men).* *For*

barbări permoti et figurâ navĭum,
the barbarians *much-alarmed* *both* *by the shape* *of the ships,*

et motu remorum, et inusitato
and *by the motion* *of the oars,* *and* *by the unusual*

genĕre tormentorum, constiterunt, ac mŏdŏ
kind *of shooting-engines,* *halted,* *and* *now*

retulerunt pĕdem paullùm. Ac, nostris
carried-back *foot* (retreated) *a little.* *And,* *our*

militĭbus cunctantĭbus, maxĭmè propter altitudĭnem
soldiers *delaying,* *chiefly* *on account-of* *the depth*

mări, qui ferebat aquĭlam decĭmæ
of the sea, (*he*) *who* *did bear* *the eagle* *of the tenth*

legionis, contestatus Dĕos, ut ĕa
legion, *having attested* (besought) *the Gods,* *that* *that*

res eveniret felicĭter legioni: inquit,
thing *might happen* *fortunately* *to the legion:* *says,*

Desilite, milĭtes, nĭsi vultis proděre aquĭlam
Leap-down, *soldiers,* *unless* *you will* *to betray* *the eagle*

hostĭbus; ĕgo certè præstitĕro
to the enemies; *I* *certainly* *shall have performed*

mĕum officĭum Reipublĭcæ atque Imperatori.
my *duty* *to the state* *and* (*my*) *Commander.*

Quum dixisset (pluperf. subj.) hoc magnâ
When *he had said* *this* *with a great* (loud)

voce, projecit se ex navi, atque
voice, *he cast-forth* *himself* *from* *the ship,* *and*

cœpit ferre aquĭlam in hostes. Tum
began *to carry* *the eagle* *against* *the enemies.* *Then*

nostri cohortati inter se, universi
our (*men*) *having encouraged* *among* *themselves,* *the whole*

desilierunt ex navi, ne tantum deděcus
leaped-down *from* *the ship,* *lest* *so-great* *a disgrace*

admitteretur. Quum alĭi ĭtem ex proxĭmis
should be allowed. *When* *others* *also* *out-of* *the nearest*

navĭbus conspexisset (pluperf. subj.) hos, sub-
ships *had beheld* *these,* *having*

secuti appropinquârunt hostĭbus.
followed-close *they approached* *to the enemies.*

26. Pugnatum-est acrĭter ab utrisque (plur.)
It was fought *vigorously* *by* *each.*

Tămen nostri perturbabantur magnopĕre, quòd
However *our* (*men*) *were disordered* *greatly,* *because*

potĕrant nĕque servare ordĭnes, nĕque
they were-able *neither* *to keep* (*their*) *ranks*, *neither*

insistĕre firmĭter, nĕque subsĕqui
to stand *firmly* (to get firm footing), *nor* *to follow-closely*

signa, atque alĭus ex alĭâ
the standards, *and* *another* *from* *another* (one from

navi aggregabat se
one, another from another) *ship* *did associate* *himself*

quibuscumque signis occurrĕret. Verò hostes,
to whatever *standards* *he might meet*. *But* *the enemies*,

omnĭbus vădis notis, ŭbi conspexĕrant
all *the shallows* *being known*, *when* *they had beheld*

ex littŏre alĭquos egredientes singulares
from *the shore* *some* *coming-out* *single*

ex navi, ĕquis incitatis, adoriebantur
from *a ship*, (*their*) *horses* *being urged-on*, *did attack*

impeditos. Plures circumsistebant
(*them*) *encumbered*. *More* (several) *did surround*

paucos: alĭi conjiciebant tela in
a few: *others* *did hurl* (*their*) *darts* *upon*

universos ab aperto latĕre. Quod quum Cæsar
the whole *from* *the open* *flank*. *Which* *when* *Cæsar*

animadvertisset (plup. subj.), jussit scăphas longarum
had observed, *he ordered* *the skiffs* *of the long*

navĭum, ĭtem speculatorĭa-navigĭa
ships (ships of war), *likewise* *the spy-boats*

compleri militĭbus; et summittebat subsidĭa
to be filled *with soldiers*; *and* *he did send-up* *aids*

ĭis, quos conspexĕrat laborantes. Nostri
to those, *whom* *he had beheld* *labouring*. *Our* (*men*)

sĭmul-atque constiterunt in arĭdo, omnĭbus
as-soon-as *they stood* *on* *dry* (*ground*), *all*

sŭis consecutis, fecerunt impĕtum
their (*comrades*) *having followed*, *made* *a charge*

in hostes, atque dederunt ĕos in
upon *the enemies* *and* *gave* (put) *them* *into*

fŭgam : nĕque potuerunt prosĕcui longĭùs
flight : nor were they able to pursue farther (very

quòd equĭtes potuĕrant non tenere
far) *because the horsemen had been able not to hold-on*

cursum, atque capĕre insŭlam. Hoc
(*their*) *course, and to take* (reach) *the island. This*

unum defŭit Cæsări ad pristĭnam
one (*thing*) *was-wanting to Cæsar to* (*his*) *ancient*

fortunam.
(former) *fortune.*

27. Hostes, superati prœlĭo, miserunt
The enemies, being overcome in the battle, sent

stătim legatos ad Cæsărem de pace,
immediately ambassadors to Cæsar about peace,

sĭmul-atque receperunt se ex fŭgâ ;
as-soon-as they recovered themselves from flight ;

pollicĭti-sunt sese daturos obsĭdes, que
they promised themselves about-to-give hostages, and

facturos quæ imperâsset. Comĭus
about-to-do what (*things*) *he might have commanded. Comius*

Atrĕbas venit unà cum his legatis,
the Atrebatian came together with these ambassadors,

quem demonstravĕram suprà præmissum (-esse)
whom I had shown above to have been sent-before

in Britannĭam : illi comprehendĕrant hunc
into Britain : they had seized him

egressum è navi, quum deferret (imp.
having gone-out from the ship, when he did carry

subj.) mandata Imperatoris ad ĕos, atque
the commands of the Commander to them, and

conjecĕrant in vincŭla. Tum prœlĭo
had thrown (*him*) *into chains. Then the battle*

facto, remiserunt et in pace
being made (fought), *they sent-back and in peace*

petendâ contulerunt
to-be-sought (in requesting peace) *they carried-over* (imputed)

culpam ejus rĕi in multitudĭnem, et
the fault of that thing unto the multitude, and

petiverunt, ut ignoscĕretur propter
requested, that it might be pardoned on-account-of

imprudentĭam. Cæsar questus quòd quum
ignorance. Cæsar having complained that when

petîssent (pluperf. subj.) pacem à se,
they had sought peace from himself

legatis missis ultrò in continentem,
ambassadors being sent voluntarily unto the continent,

intulissent (pluperf. subj.) bellum sĭne caussâ,
they had brought-on war without cause,

dixit ignoscĕre imprudentĭæ, que imperavit
said to pardon (their) indiscretion, and commanded (to

obsĭdes: partem quorum illi dederunt
furnish) hostages: part of whom they gave

stătim: dixerunt sese daturos paucis
immediately: they said themselves about-to-give in a few

diebus partem accersitam ex longinquiorĭbus lŏcis.
days a part sent-for from more distant places.

Interĕa jusserunt sŭos remigrare in
Meantime they ordered their (people) to return into

agros; que princĭpes convenêre undĭque
the lands; and the chiefs assembled from-every-side

et commendârunt se que sŭas civitates
and recommended themselves and their states

Cæsări.
to Cæsar

28. Pace firmatâ his rebus, oc-
Peace being confirmed by these things, the

todĕcim naves de quĭbus demonstratum-est
eighteen ships concerning which it has been shown

suprà, quæ sustulĕrant equĭtes, solverunt
above, which had taken-up the cavalry, loosed (set

ex superiore portu leni vento,
sail) from the upper harbour with a gentle wind,

post quartum dĭem quàm ventum-est
after the fourth day than (since) *it was come* (they

in Britannĭam : quum quæ appro-
came) *into Britain : when which* (*ships*) *did ap-*

pinquarent (imp. subj.) Britannĭæ, et viderentur (imp.
proach to Britain, and were seen

subj.) ex castris (pl.), tanta tempestas subĭtò
from the camp, so-great a tempest suddenly

coorta-est, ut nulla earum posset (imp. subj.)
arose, that no-one of them was able

tenere cursum, sed alĭæ referrentur (imp. subj.)
to hold the course, but others were carried-back

eòdem unde profectæ-ĕrant ; alĭæ
to the same (*place*) *whence they had set-out , others*

dejicerentur (imp. subj.) ad inferiorem partem
were thrown· to the lower part

insŭlæ, quæ est propĭùs occasum solis
of the island, which is nearer the setting of the sun

cum magno periculo sŭi : quæ
(the West) *with great danger of themselves : which*

tămen, anchŏris jactis, cùm complerentur (imp.
however, anchors being cast, when they were filled

subj.) fluctĭbus, provectæ necessarĭò in
with waves, borne-forward necessarily unto

altum adversâ nocte, petiverunt continentem.
the deep in unfavourable night, sought the continent.

29. Accĭdit eâdem nocte, ut luna
It happened in the same night, that the moon

esset (imp. subj.) plena, quæ dĭes consuevit
was full, which day has been-accustomed

efficĕre maritĭmos æstus maxĭmos in oceăno ;
to render the maritime tides greatest in the ocean ;

que id ĕrat incognĭtum nostris. Ita
and that was unknown to our (*people*). *Thus*

æstus complebat uno tempŏre et
the tide did fill in one (the same) *time both*

longas naves, quĭbus Cæsar
the long *ships* (ships of war), *in which* *Cæsar*

curavĕrat exercĭtum transportandum que quas
had taken-care *the army* *to-be-carried-over* *and* *which*

subduxĕrat in arĭdum; et tempestas
he had drawn-up *on* *dry* (*ground*); *and* *the tempest*

afflictabat onerarĭas, quæ deligatæ-ĕrant
did dash *the burden* (*ships*), *which* *had been fastened*

ad anchŏras: nĕque ulla facultas aut
to *anchors* *neither* *any* *power* *either*

administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur nostris.
of managing *or* *of aiding* *was given* *to our* (*men*).

Complurĭbus navĭbus fractis, quum
Very-many *ships* *being broken* (wrecked), *when*

relĭquæ essent (imp. subj.) inutĭles ad-navigandum,
the rest *were* *useless* *to sail,*

funĭbus, anchŏris, que relĭquis
ropes (cables), *anchors,* *and* *the rest* (other)

armamentis amissis, magna perturbatĭo totius
riggings *being lost,* *a great* *alarm* *of the whole*

exercĭtûs facta-est, id quod ĕrat necesse
army *was-made,* *that* *which* *was* *necessary*

accidĕre. Enim nĕque ĕrant
(unavoidable) *to happen.* *For* *neither* *were* (*there*)

alĭæ naves, quĭbus possent (imp. subj.)
other *ships,* *by which* *they were-able*

reportari; et omnĭa deĕrant,
to be carried-back; *and* *all* (*things*) *were-wanting*

quæ essent usŭi ad naves reficiendas;
which *might be* *for use* *to* *the ships* *to-be-repaired;*

et quòd constabat omnĭbus oportere
and *because* *it was-evident* *to all* *to behove* (that they

hiemare in Gallĭâ, frumentum provisum-ĕrat
ought) *to winter* *in* *Gaul,* *corn* *had been provided*

non in his lŏcis in hiĕmem.
not *in* *these* *places* *unto* (for) *the winter.*

30. Quĭbus rebus cognĭtis, princĭpes Brĭtannĭæ,
Which things being known, the chiefs of Britain,

qui post prœlĭum convenĕrant ad ĕa
who after the battle had assembled to those (things)

facienda, quæ Cæsar jussĕrat, collocuti
to-be-done, which Cæsar had commanded, having conferred

inter se; quum intelligĕrent (imp. subj.)
between themselves; when they did understand

equĭtes, et naves et frumentum deesse
cavalry, and ships and corn to be-wanting

Romanis, et cognoscĕrent (imp. subj.) paucitatem
to the Romans, and did know the fewness

nostrorum milĭtum ex exiguitate castrorum;
of our soldiers from the smallness of the camps;

quæ etĭam ĕrant angustiora hôc,
which also were more-narrow from this (circumstance),

quòd Cæsar transportavĕrat legiones sĭne
because Cæsar had brought-over the legions without

impedimentis; duxerunt esse optĭmum factu,
baggages; they deemed (it) to be best to be done

rebellione factâ, prohibere nostros frumento
a rebellion being made, to prevent our (men) from corn

que commeatu, et producĕre rem in
and provision, and to prolong the thing unto

hiĕmem; quòd his superatis, aut interclusis
winter; because these being overcome, or intercepted

reditu, confidebant nemĭnem postĕa
from a return, they did trust no-one afterwards

transiturum in Britannĭam caussâ
about-to-cross-over into Britain by cause (for the sake)

belli inferendi. Ităque, conjuratione
of war to-be-brought-on. Therefore, a conspiracy

factâ rursus, cœperunt discedĕre paullatim
being made again, they began to depart by-degrees

ex castris (pl.), ac deducĕre clam sŭos
from the camp, and to lead-down secretly their

ex agris.
(*people*) *from the lands.*

31. At Cæsar, etsi cognovĕrat consilĭa
But Cæsar, although he had known the plans

eorum nondum, tămen suspicabatur id
of them not-yet, however did suspect that

fŏre, quod accĭdit, et ex eventu
to-be-about-to-be, which happened, both from the event

suarum navĭum, et ex ĕo,
(disaster) *of his ships, and from that* (*circum-*

quòd intermisĕrant dăre obsĭdes.
stance), *because they had omitted to give hostages.*

Ităque comparabat subsidĭa ad omnes
Therefore he did prepare helps to (for) *all*

casus: nam conferebat et frumentum quotidĭe
chances: for he did bring both corn daily

ex agris in castra; et utebatur
from the lands into the camps; and did use

materĭâ atque ære earum,
with the material (timber) *and copper of those* (*ships*),

quæ naves afflictæ-ĕrant gravissĭmè, ad
which ships had been shattered most-severely, to (for)

relĭquas reficiendas; et jubebat
the rest to-be-repaired; and he did order (*those things*)

comportari ex continenti, quæ ĕrant usŭi
to be brought from the continent, which were for use

ad ĕas res. Ităque, quum id administraretur
to those things. Therefore, when that was managed

(imp. subj.) summo studĭo à militĭbus,
with the highest zeal by the soldiers,

duodĕcim navĭbus amissis, effecit, ut
twelve ships being lost, he accomplished, that

posset navigări commŏdè relĭquis.
it might be-able to be sailed conveniently in the rest.

32. Dum ĕa geruntur, unâ legione,
Whilst those (*things*) *are carried-on, one legion,*

quæ appellabatur septĭma, missâ frumen-
which was called the seventh, being sent to provide-

tatum ex consuetudĭne, nĕque ullâ suspicione
corn according-to custom, neither any suspicion

belli interposĭtâ ad id
of war being interposed (having intervened) *to that*

tempus, quum pars homĭnum remaneret (imp.
time, when a part of the men did remain

subj.) in agris, pars etĭam ventitaret (imp.
in the lands, part also did come-to-and-fro

subj.) in castra (pl.); ĭi, qui ĕrant in statione
into the camp; those, who were on guard

pro portis castrorum (pl.), renunciaverunt
before the gates of the camp, announced

Cæsări, majorem pulvĕrem, quàm consuetudo
to Cæsar, a greater dust, than custom

ferret, videri in ĕâ parte, in quam
might bear, to be seen in that part, into which

partem legĭo fecisset (pluperf. subj.) ĭter.
part the legion had made (their) march.

Cæsar suspicatus, id quod ĕrat, alĭquid
Cæsar having suspected, that which it was, some

nŏvi consilĭi inĭtum à
(thing) of new plan having been entered-on by

barbăris, jussit cohortes, quæ ĕrant in
the barbarians, ordered the cohorts, which were on

stationĭbus, proficisci secum in ĕam partem,
guards, to set-out with himself into that part,

dŭas succedĕre in stationem, relĭquas
two (cohorts) to succeed unto guard, the rest

armari, et subsĕqui se confestim.
to be armed, and to follow-closely himself immediately.

Quum processisset (pluperf. subj.) paullò longĭùs
When he had advanced a little farther

à castris, animadvertit sŭos prĕmi
from the camps, he perceived his-own (men) to be pressed

ab hostĭbus, atque sustinere ægrè, et
by the enemies, and to withstand hardly, and

legione confertâ, tela conjĭci
the legion being crowded-together, darts to be thrown

ex omnĭbus partĭbus. Nam, quòd omni frumento
from all parts. For, because all the corn

demesso ex relĭquis partĭbus,
being cut-down from the rest (remaining) *parts,*

una pars ĕrat relíqua, hostes, suspicati
one part was left, the enemies, having suspected

nostros esse venturos huc, delituĕrant noctu
our (*men*) *to be about-to-come hither, had lain-hid by night*

in silvis. Tum subĭtò adorti
in the woods. Then suddenly having attacked (*them*)

dispersos, occupatos in metendo, armis
dispersed, engaged in reaping, (*their*) *arms*

depositis, paucis interfectis, perturbavĕrant
being laid-aside, a few being slain, they had disordered

relíquos incertis ordinĭbus;
the rest in uncertain (confused) *ranks;* *at-the-*

sĭmul circumdedĕrant equitatu atque
same-time they had surrounded (*them*) *with cavalry and*

essĕdis.
with chariots.

33. Hoc est gĕnus pugnæ ex essĕdis:
This is the kind of battle from the chariots

primò, perequĭtant per omnes partes, et
firstly, they ride through all parts, and

conjicĭunt tela; atque perturbant ordĭnes
hurl (*their*) *weapons; and they disorder the ranks*

plerumque terrore ipso equorum, et
generally by the terror itself of the horses, and

strepĭtu rotarum: et quum insinuavêre
rattling of the wheels: and when they have introduced

se inter turmas equĭtum, desilĭunt
themselves among the troops of the cavalry, they leap-down

ex essĕdis et præliantur pedĭbus. Interim
from the chariots and fight on feet. Meantime

aurigæ excedunt paullùm è prœlĭo,
the charioteers retire a little from the battle,

atque collŏcant se ĭta, ut si illi
and place themselves so, that if they

premantur à multitudĭne hostĭum, habĕant
be pressed by the multitude of the enemies, they may have

expeditum receptum ad sŭos. Ita
a prepared (ready) *retreat to their-own. Thus*

præstant mobilitatem equĭtum,
they perform (exhibit) *the changeableness* (activity) *of cavalry,*

stabilitatem pedĭtum in prœliis; ac efficĭunt
the firmness of infantry in battles; and they accomplish

tantum quotidiano usu et exercitatione, ut
so-much by daily practice and exercise, that

consuevĕrint (perf. subj.) in declivi ac
they have been accustomed in a sloping and

præcipĭti lŏco, sustinere ĕquos incitatos, et
steep place, to check (their) *horses spurred-on, and*

moderari ac flectĕre brĕvì, et
to govern and to turn (them) *shortly* (quickly), *and*

percurrĕre per temonem, et insistĕre in
to run-along through (on) *the pole, and to stand on*

jugo, et recipĕre se inde citissĭmè
the yoke, and to betake themselves thence most-quickly

in currus.
unto the chariots.

34. Quĭbus rebus, nostris perturbatis
To which things, our (men) *being disordered*

novitate pugnæ, Cæsar tŭlit
from the unusualness of the battle, Cæsar brought

auxilĭum opportunissĭmo tempŏre: namque hostes
aid in most-seasonable time: for the enemies

constiterunt adventu ejus, nostri receperunt
halted at the arrival of him. our (men) *recovered*

se ex timore. Quo facto,
themselves from fear. Which being done,

arbitratus tempus esse alienum ad hostem
having thought the time to be improper to (for) the enemy

lacessendum et prœlĭum committendum, continŭit
to-be-provoked and battle to-be-engaged, he kept

se sŭo lŏco; et brĕvi tempŏre
himself in his-own place; and a short time

intermisso, reduxit legiones in castra.
being intermitted, he led-back the legions into the camps.

Dum hæc geruntur, omnĭbus nostris
Whilst these (things) are carried-on, all our (men)

occupatis, qui ĕrant in agris, relĭqui
being engaged, who were in the lands, the rest

discesserunt. Tempestates secutæ-sunt complures
departed. Tempests followed many

continŭos dĭes, quæ et continerent (imp. subj.)
successive days, which both did restrain

nostros in castris (pl.), et prohiberent (imp. subj.)
our (men) in camp, and did hinder

hostem à pugnâ. Intĕrim barbări
the enemy from battle. Meantime the barbarians

dimiserunt nuncios in omnes partes, que
dismissed messengers into all parts, and

prædicaverunt sŭis paucitatem nostrorum
declared to their-own (people) the fewness of our

milĭtum; et demonstraverunt quanta facultas
soldiers; and showed how-great a power (op-

daretur (imp. subj.) prædæ faciendæ,
portunity) *was given of plunder to-be-made,*

atque sŭi liberandi in-perpetŭum, si
and of themselves to-be-freed for-ever, if

expulissent Romanos castris (pl.).
they might have driven the Romans from the camp.

Magnâ multitudĭne peditatûs que equitatûs
A great multitude of infantry and of cavalry

coactâ celerĭter his rebus, venerunt ad
being gathered quickly by these things, they came to
castra (pl.).
the camp.

35. Etsi Cæsar vidĕbat ĭdem
Although Cæsar did see the same (thing)
fŏre, quod acciděrat superiorĭbus
to-be-about-to-be, which had happened in former
diebus; ut, si hostes essent pulsi,
days; that, if the enemies might be routed,
effugĕrent pericŭlum celeritate; tămen
they would escape danger by speed; however
nactus circĭter triginta equĭtes, quos Comĭus
having got about thirty horsemen, whom Comius
Atrĕbas, de quo dictum-est antè,
the Atrebatian, of whom it has been-said before,
transportavĕrat secum, constitŭit legiones
had brought-over with himself, he arranged the legions
in acĭe pro castris (pl.). Prœlĭo commisso,
in line before the camp. The battle being engaged,
hostes potuerunt non ferre impĕtum
the enemies were-able not to bear the charge
nostrorum milĭtum diutĭùs ac verterunt terga:
of our soldiers longer and turned (their) backs:
quos secuti tanto spatĭo, quantum
whom having followed in so-much distance, as-much-as
potuerunt efficĕre cursu et virĭbus,
they were-able to perform by running and by forces
occiderunt complures ex ĭis: deinde
(endurance), *they killed many out-of them: then*
omnĭbus ædificĭis incensis longè que latè,
all the buildings being-burned far and widely,
receperunt se in castra (pl.).
they betook themselves into the camp.

36. Eodem die legati missi ab hostĭbus
On the same day ambassadors sent by the enemies

Venerunt ad Cæsărem de pace. Cæsar duplicavit
came to Cæsar about peace. Cæsar doubled

his numĕrum obsĭdum, quem imperavĕrat
to these the number of hostages, which he had ordered

antĕa; que jussit ĕos adduci in
before; and commanded them to be conducted unto

continentem; quòd, dĭe æquinoctii
the continent; because, the day of the equinox

propinquâ, existimabat navigationem non
(being) near, he did think the voyage not

subjiciendam hiĕmi infirmis navĭbus: ipse
to-be-exposed to winter with weak ships: himself

nactus idoněam tempestatem solvit
having gained a proper season (weather) *loosed*

naves paullò post mediam noctem;
the ships (set sail) *a little after middle night;*

omnes quæ pervenerunt incolŭmes ad continentem.
all which arrived safe to the continent.

Ex his, dŭæ onerarĭæ potuerunt
Out-of these, two burden (transport ships) *were-able*

non capĕre eosdem portus, quos
not to take (reach) *the same harbours, which*

relĭquæ; sed delatæ-sunt paullò infrà.
the rest (did); but were carried-down a little beneath

(lower down).

37. Ex quĭbus navĭbus, quum circĭter
Out-of which ships, when about

trecenti milites expositi-essent (pluperf. subj.),
three-hundred soldiers had been landed,

atque contendĕrent (imp. subj.) in castra,
and did proceed unto the camps,

Morĭni, quos Cæsar reliquĕrat pacatos
the Morini, whom Cæsar had left subdued

proficiscens in Britannĭam, adducti spe prædæ,
setting-out into Britain, induced by hope of plunder,

primò circumsteterunt numĕro suorum
first *surrounded (them)* *with a number* *of their-own*

non ĭta magno, ac jusserunt ponĕre
(people) *not so great, and ordered (them)* *to lay-down*

arma, si nollent sese
(their) arms, *if* *they might be unwilling* *themselves*

interfĭci. Quum illi, orbe facto,
to be slain. *When* *they,* *a circle* *being formed*

defendĕrent (imp. subj.) sese, circĭter sex millĭa
did defend *themselves, about* *six* *thousands*

celerĭter convenerunt ad clamorem homĭnum. Quâ
speedily *assembled* *at* *the shout* *of the men.* *Which*

re nuntiatâ, Cæsar misit omnem equitatum
thing *being announced,* *Cæsar* *sent* *all* *the cavalry*

ex sŭis castris auxilĭo sŭis. Interĭm
out-of *his* *camps* *for aid* *to his (men).* *Meantime*

nostri milĭtes sustinuerunt impĕtum hostĭum,
our *soldiers* *sustained* *the attack* *of the enemies,*

atque pugnaverunt fortissĭmè amplĭùs quatŭor
and *fought* *most-bravely* *more (than)* *four*

horis; et, paucis vulnerĭbus acceptis, occiderunt
hours; and, *a few* *wounds* *being received,* *killed*

complures ex ĭis. Verò posteăquàm noster
many *out-of* *them.* *But* *after-that* *our*

equitatus venit in conspectum, hostes,
cavalry *came* *into* *sight,* *the enemies, (their)*

armis abjectis, verterunt terga, que
arms *being thrown-away,* *turned* *(their) backs,* *and*

magnus numĕrus eorum occisus-est.
a great *number* *of them* *was killed.*

38. Cæsar misit legatum Titum Labienum
Cæsar *sent* *(his) lieutenant* *Titus* *Labienus*

postĕro dĭe, cum ĭis egionĭbus, quas
in the following *day,* *with* *those* *legions,* *which*

reduxĕrat ex Britanniâ, in Morĭnos, qui
he had led-back *from* *Britain,* *unto* *the Morini,* *who*

fecĕrant rebellionem Qui, quum haberent (imp.
had made a rebellion. Who, when they did have

subj.) non quò recipĕrent se
not whither they might betake themselves

propter siccitates paludum,
on-account-of the droughts (drying-up) *of the marshes,*

quo perfugĭo usi-fuĕrant superiore anno,
with which refuge they had used in the former year,

fĕrè omnes pervenerunt in potestatem Labieni.
nearly all came into the power of Labienus.

At Quintus Titurĭus et Lucĭus Cotta, legati,
But Quintus Titurius and Lucius Cotta, the lieutenants

qui duxĕrant legiones in fines Me-
who had led the legions into the territories of the

napiorum, omnĭbus agris eorum vastatis,
Menapii, all the lands of them being ravaged,

frumentis (plur.) succisis, que ædificĭis
the corn being cut-down, and the buildings

incensis, quòd omnes Menapĭi abdidĕrant
being set-on-fire, because all the Menapii had hid

se in densissĭmas silvas, receperunt se
themselves into the thickest woods, betook themselves

ad Cæsărem. Cæsar constitŭit hiberna
to Cæsar. Cæsar established the winter-quarters

omnĭum legionum in Belgis. Eò dŭæ
of all the legions among the Belgæ. Thither two

civitates omnino ex Britannĭâ miserunt obsĭdes:
states in-all out-of Britain sent hostages:

relĭquæ neglexerunt. His rebus gestis,
the rest neglected (*it*) *These things being carried-on,*

supplicatĭo viginti dierum decreta-est à
a general thanksgiving of twenty days was decreed by

senatu, ex litĕris (pl.) Cæsăris.
the senate, from the letter of Cæsar. [upon receipt of Cæsar's dispatches].

QUINTUS LIBER.

FIFTH BOOK.

ARGUMENTUM.

ARGUMENT.

Hic liber continet aliquos motus Pirustarum
This book contains some disturbances of the Pirustæ

coërcitos à Cæsare: item dissidia Trevirorum
checked by Cæsar: also the quarrels of the Treviri

contendentium inter se de Principatu:
contending among themselves about the supremacy

transitum in Britanniam: bellum Ambiorigis:
authority: the crossing-over into Britain: the war of Ambiorix:

mortem Indutiomări.
the death of Indutiomarus.

1. Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio (*being*)
Lucius Domitius, Appius Claudius

Consulibus, Cæsar discedens ab hibernis
Consuls, Cæsar departing from winter-quarters

in Italiam, ut instituerat facere quotannis,
into Italy, as he had resolved to do yearly,

imperat legatis, quos præfecerat
orders to the lieutenants, whom he had set-over

legionibus, ut curarent quam-plurimas
to the legions, that they should take-care as-many-as

possent naves ædificandas hieme, quæ
they might be-able ships to-be-built in the winter, and

veteres reficiendas. Demonstrat modum
the old (ships) to-be-repaired. He points-out the size

que formam earum; făcit paullò humiliores
and form of them; he makes (them) a little lower

quàm quĭbus (abl.) consuevĭmus uti
than (those) which we have been accustomed to use

in nostro mări, ad celeritatem onerandi, que
in our sea, to (for) quickness of loading, and

subductionis; atque id măgis ĕò,
of drawing-up (ashore); and that the more therefore

quòd cognovĕrat mĭnùs magnos
(for this reason), *because he had known less great*

fluctus fiĕri ĭbi propter crebras
waves to be made there on-account-of the frequent

commutationes æstuum; paullò latiorĕs
changes of the tides; (he makes them) a little wider

quàm quĭbus (abl.) utĭmur in relĭquis
than (those) which we use in the rest (other)

marĭbus, ad oněra et ad multitudĭnem
seas, to (for) *burdens and to a multitude*

jumentorum transportandam. Impĕrat omnes
of beasts-of-burden to-be-carried-over. He orders all

has fiĕri actuarĭas: ad quam rem
these to be made fit-to-be-rowed (light): *to which thing*

humilĭtas adjŭvat multùm. Jŭbet ea,
lowness aids much. He orders those (things),

quæ sunt usŭi ad naves armandas, apportari
which are for use to ships to-be-rigged, to be brought

ex Hispanĭâ. Ipse, conventĭbus citerioris
out-of Spain. Himself, the assemblies of the nearer

Gallĭæ peractis, proficiscĭtur in Illyrĭcum;
Gaul being finished, sets-out into Illyricum;

quòd audiebat finitĭmam partem Pro-
because he did hear the neighbouring part of the

vincĭæ vastari incursionĭbus à Pirustis.
Province to be ravaged in incursions by the Pirustæ.

Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.) ĕò, impĕrat
When he had come thither. he orders

civitatĭbus milĭtes: que jŭbet
to the states (to furnish) soldiers: and commands (them)

convenire in certum lŏcum. Quâ re
to assemble into a certain place. Which thing

nuntiatâ, Pirustæ mittunt legatos ad
being announced, the Pirustæ send ambassadors to

ĕum, qui docĕant "nĭhil earum rerum
him, who may teach (him) "nothing of those things

factum (-esse) publĭco concilio:" que demonstrant
to have been done by public council:" and they show

"sese esse paratos satisfacĕre omnĭbus
"themselves to be prepared to satisfy by all

rationĭbus de injurĭis." Oratione eorum
means about the injuries." The speech of them

acceptâ, Cæsar impĕrat
being received (heard), *Cæsar orders (them to furnish)*

obsĭdes, que jŭbet ĕos adduci ad certam
hostages, and commands them to be brought to a certain

dĭem: nĭsi fecĕrant ĭta, demonstrat
day: unless they shall have done so, he shows

sese persecuturum civitatem bello. Iis
himself about-to-pursue the state by war. Those

adductis ad dĭem, ut imperavĕrat, dat
being brought on-the day, as he had ordered, he gives

arbĭtros inter civitates, qui æstĭment
(appoints) *arbitrators among the states, who may value*

litem que constitŭant pœnam.
the suit (damage) *and may appoint the penalty.*

2. His rebus confectis, que conventĭbus
These things being finished, and the assemblies

peractis, revertĭtur in citeriorem Gallĭam,
being concluded, he returns into hither Gaul,

atque inde proficiscĭtur ad exercĭtum. Quum
and thence sets-out to the army. When

venisset (plup. subj.) ĕò, omnĭbus hibernis
he had come thither, all the winter-quarters

circuĭtis, invenit circĭter sexcentas navĕs
being gone-round, he found about six-hundred ships

ejus generis, cujus demonstravĭmus supra, et
of that kind, of which we have shown above, and

viginti octo longas constructas, singu-
twenty eight long (ships of war) *built, by the*

lari studĭo militum, in summâ inopĭâ
singular zeal of the soldiers, in the highest want

omnĭum rerum, nĕque multum abesse
of all things, nor much to be absent (to be

ab ĕo, quin possent
wanting) *from that, but-that they might-be-able*

deduci paucis diebus. Militĭbus
to be led-down (launched) *in a few days. The soldiers*

collaudatis, atque ĭis, qui præfuĕrant
being praised, and those, who had presided

negotĭo, ostendit quid vĕlit fiĕri;
to the business, he shows what he may will to be done;

atque jŭbet omnes convenire ad portum Itĭum:
and orders all to assemble at port Itius

ex quo portu cognovĕrat
(Boulogne): *from which harbour he had known*

trajectum in Britanniam esse commodissĭmum,
the passage into Britain to be most-convenient,

circĭter triginta millĭum passŭum à
about thirty of thousands of paces from

continenti. Relinquit quod visum-est esse sătis
the continent. He leaves what seemed to be enough

militum huic rĕi: ipse proficiscĭtur cum
of soldiers for this thing: himself sets-out with

quatŭor expeditis legionĭbus, et octingentis
four lightly-equipped legions, and eight-hundred

equitĭbus, in fines Trevirorum; quòd
cavalry, into the territories of the Treviri; because

hi nĕque veniebant ad concilĭa, nĕque
these neither did come to the councils, nor

parebant imperĭo, que dicebantur sollicitare
did obey *to (his) command,* *and* *were said* *to stir-up*

Germanos transrhenanos.
the Germans *beyond-the-Rhine.*

3. Hæc civĭtas vălet longè plurĭmùm
This *state* *prevails* *by far* *the most*

totius Gallĭæ equitatu, que hăbet magnas
of the whole *of Gaul* *in cavalry,* *and* *has* *great*

copĭas peditum; que tangit Rhenum, ut
forces *of infantry;* *and* *touches-on* *the Rhine,* *as*

demonstravĭmus suprà. In ĕâ civitate dŭo,
we have shown *above.* *In* *that* *state* *two (persons),*

Indutiomărus et Cingetŏrix, contendebant inter
Indutiomarus *and* *Cingetorix,* *did contend* *among*

se de principatu: alter ex
themselves *about* *supreme-authority:* *the other* (one) *out-of*

quĭbus, sĭmul-atque cognitum-est de adventu
whom, *as-soon-as* *it was known* *concerning* *the coming*

Cæsăris que legionum, venit ad ĕum; confirmavit
of Cæsar *and* *of the legions,* *came* *to* *him;* *he affirmed*

se que omnes sŭos futuros in officĭo,
himself *and* *all* *his (people)* *about-to-be* *in* *duty*

(allegiance), nĕque defecturos ab amicitĭâ
nor *about-to-revolt* *from* *the friendship*

Romani popŭli; que ostendit, quæ
of the Roman *people;* *and* *he shows,* *what (things)*

gererentur (imp. subj.) in Trevĭris. At
were carried-on *in* *the Treviri.* *But*

Indutiomărus institŭit cogĕre equitatum que
Indutiomarus *began* *to collect* *cavalry* *and*

peditatum; que ĭis, qui per ætatem potĕrant
infantry; *and* *those,* *who* *through* *age* *were-able*

non esse in armis, abdĭtis in silvam
not *to be* *in* *arms,* *being hid* *into* *the wood*

Arduennam, (quæ ingenti magnitudĭne
Arduenna (Ardennes), (*which* *with* (of) *great* *extent*

pertĭnet à flumĭne Rheno ad ĭnitĭum
reaches from the river Rhine to the beginning

Rhemorum per medĭos fines Trevirorum)
of the Rhemi through the middle territories of the Treviri)

parare bellum. Sed posteăquàm nonnulli principes
to prepare war. But after-that some chiefs

ex ĕâ civitate, et adducti familiaritate
out-of that state, both induced by the acquaintance

Cingetorĭgis, et perterrĭti adventu nostri
of Cingetorix, and affrighted by the coming of our

exercĭtûs, venerunt ad Cæsărem, et cœperunt petĕre
army, came to Cæsar, and began to seek

privatim ab de sŭis rebus, quonĭam
privately from him about their-own affairs, since

possent (imp. subj.) non consulĕre civitati:
they were able not to consult for the state:

Indutiomărus verĭtus ne desereretur
Indutiomarus having feared lest he might be abandoned

ab omnĭbus, mittit legatos ad Cæsărem;
by all, sends ambassadors to Cæsar; (to say)

se discĕdere idcircò à sŭis,
himself to depart for-this-reason from his-own (people),

atque noluisse venire ad ĕum, quò
and to have been-unwilling to come to him, in order-that

contineret civitatem facilĭùs in officĭo;
he might restrain the state more-easily in duty

ne discessu omnis nobilitatis,
(allegiance); *lest by the departure of all the nobility,*

plebs laberetur propter
the common-people might slip (revolt) *through (their)*

imprudentĭam: ităque civitatem esse in sŭâ
indiscretion: therefore the state to be in his

potestate; que se venturum ad ĕum
power; and himself (to be) about-to-come to him

in castra (pl.), si Cæsar permittĕret; et
into the camp, if Cæsar would permit (him); and

permissurum sŭas fortunas que
(*to be*) *about-to-yield-up* *his-own* *fortunes* *and* (*those*)

civitatis fidĕi ejus.
of the state *to the faith* *of him.*

4. Etsi Cæsar intelligebat de quâ caussâ
Although *Cæsar* *did understand* *from* *what* *cause*

ĕa dicerentur (imp. subj.), que quæ res
those (*words*) *were said,* *and* *what* *thing*

deterreret (imp. subj.) ĕum ab instituto
did deter *him* *from* (*his*) *purposed*

consilĭo; tămen, ne cogeretur consumĕre
design; *however,* *lest* *he might be compelled* *to waste*

æstatem in Trevĭris, omnĭbus rebus comparatis
the summer *in* *the Treviri,* *all* *things* *being prepared*

ad Britannĭcum bellum, jussit Indutiomărum
to (for) *the Britannic* *war,* *he ordered* *Indutiomarus*

venire ad se cum ducentis obsidĭbus. His
to come *to* *himself* *with* *two-hundred* *hostages.* *These*

adductis, et filĭo in ĭis, que
being brought, *and* (*his*) *son* *in* (among) *them,* *and*

omnĭbus propinquis ejus, quos evocavĕrat
all *the relations* *of him,* *whom* *he had called-out*

nominatim, consolatus-est que hortatus (-est)
by-name, *he consoled* *and* *encouraged*

Indutiomărum, ŭtĭ permaneret in officĭo.
Indutiomarus, *that* *he might continue* *in* *duty* (allegiance).

Tămen, nihĭlo-secĭùs principĭbus Trevirorum
However, *nevertheless* *the chiefs* *of the Treviri*

convocatis ad se, conciliavit ĕos
being called-together *to* *himself,* *he reconciled* *them*

sigillatim Cingetorĭgi: quod intelligebat
individually *to Cingetorix:* *which* (*thing*) *he did understand*

cùm fĭĕri à se merĭto
when (as well) *to be done* *by* *himself* *by the desert*

ejus, tum arbitrabatur interesse
of him, *then* (as) *he did think* (*it*) *to concern* (*him*)

magni, auctoritatem ejus valere
of great (greatly), *the authority* *of him* *to prevai.*

quam-plurĭmùm inter sŭos, cujus
is-much-as-possible *among* *his-own* (*people*), *whose*

voluntatem perspexisset (pluperf. subj.) tam egregĭam
(*good*)-*will* *he had perceived* *so* *excellent*

in se. Indutiomăris tŭlit id factum
unto himself. *Indutiomarus* *bore* *that* *being done* (this act)

gravĭter, sŭam gratĭam mĭnŭi inter
heavily (bitterly), *his-own* *favour* *to be diminished* *among*

sŭos: et qui fuisset (pluperf. subj.)
his-own (*people*): *and* (*he*) *who* *had been*

inimico anĭmo antè in nos exarsit
with (of) *unfriendly* *mind* *before* *unto* *us* *burnt-forth*

multò gravĭùs hoc dolore.
by-much *more-severely* *by this* *grief.*

5. Iis rebus constitutis, Cæsar pervenit ad
Those *things* *being settled,* *Cæsar* *arrived* *at*

portum Itĭum cum legionĭbus. Cognoscit
the harbour *Itius* *with* *the legions.* *He knows* (learns)

ĭbi, quadraginta naves, quæ factæ-ĕrant in
there, *forty* *ships,* *which* *had been made* *among*

Meldis, rejectas tempestate, non potuisse
the Meldi, *thrown-back* *by a tempest,* *not* *to have been-able*

tenere cursum, atque relatas eŏdem,
to hold (*their*) *course,* *and* *being carried-back* *to the same*

unde profectæ-ĕrant: invĕnit relĭquas
(*place*), *whence* *they had set-out:* *he finds* *the rest*

paratas ad-navigandum, atque instructas omnĭbus
prepared *to-sail,* *and* *furnished* *with all*

rebus. Equitatus totius Gallĭæ convenit
things. *The cavalry* *of the whole* *of Gaul* *assembled*

eòdem, numĕro quatŭor millĭum, que
in the same (*place*), *in number* *of four* *thousands,* *and*

princĭpes ex omnĭbus civitatĭbus; perpaucos ex,
the chiefs *out-of* *all* *the states;* *a very-few* *out-of*

quĭbus, quorum fĭdem in se perspexĕrat,
whom, whose fidelity unto himself he had clearly-seen,

decrevĕrat relinquĕre in Gallĭâ; ducĕre
he had resolved to leave in Gaul; (and) to conduct

relĭquos secum lŏco obsĭdum; quòd
the rest with him in the place of hostages; because

verebatur motum Gallĭæ, quum ipse
he did fear a disturbance of Gaul when himself

abesset.
might be absent.

6. Dumnŏrix Ædŭus ĕrat una cum
Dumnorix the Æduan was together with

cætĕris de quo dictum-est à nobis antĕa.
the rest of whom it has been spoken by us before.

Constituĕrat ducĕre hunc secum inprimis,
He had resolved to conduct him with him in-particular,

quòd -cognovĕrat ĕum cupĭdum novarum rerum,
because he had known him desirous of new things

cupĭdum imperii, magni anĭmi, magnæ
(revolution), *desirous of power, of great spirit, of great*

auctoritatis inter Gallos. Accedebat huc,
authority among the Gauls. It did approach hither

quòd Dumnŏrix dixĕrat jam in
(added to this), *that Dumnorix had said already in*

concilĭo Æduorum, "regnum civitatis
a council of the Ædui, "the government of the state

deferri sĭbi à Cæsăre." Quod
to be conferred to (on) *himself by Cæsar." Which*

dictum Ædŭi ferebant gravĭter, nĕque
saying the Ædui did bear heavily (ill), *nor*

audebant mittĕre legatos ad Cæsărem
did they dare to send ambassadors to Cæsar

caussâ recusandi nĕque deprecandi.
by cause (for the purpose) *of refusing nor of deprecating*

Cæsar cognovĕrat id factum (-esse)
(the thing). Cæsar had known that to have been done

ex sŭis hospitĭbus. Ille primò contendit petĕre
from his guests. He at-first strove to solicit

omnĭbus precĭbus, uſ relinqueretur in Gallĭâ;
by all entreaties, that he might be left in Gaul;

partim quòd insuetus navigandi timeret (imp.
partly because unused of voyaging he did fear

subj.) măre; partim quòd dicĕret (imp. subj.)
the sea; partly because he did say

sese impediri religionĭbus. Posteăquam
himself to be hindered by religious-scruples. After-that

vidit id negari obstinatè sĭbi, omni
he saw that to be denied obstinately to himself, all

spe impetrandi ademptâ, cœpit sollicitare
hope of obtaining (it) being taken-away, he began to stir-up

princĭpes Gallĭæ, sevocare singŭlos que
the chiefs of Gaul, to call-apart each (of them) and

hortari, ut remanerent in continenti;
to exhort, that they should remain on the continent;

terrĭtare mĕtu, "fiĕri non sine
to affright (them) with fear, "to be done not without

caussâ, ut Gallĭa spoliaretur omni
reason, that Gaul might be stripped from (of) all

nobilitate. Id esse consilĭum Cæsăris, ut
the nobility. That to be the plan of Cæsar, that

necaret omnes hos transductos in
he might destroy all these conveyed-over into

Britannĭam, quos vereretur (imp. subj.) interficĕre
Britain, whom he did fear to slay

in conspectu Gallĭæ." Interponĕre
in sight of Gaul." (He began) to interpose (engage)

fĭdem relĭquis; poscĕre jusjurandum, ut
faith to the rest; to require an oath, that

administrarent communi consilĭo, quod intel-
they should manage by common counsel, what they might

lexissent esse ex usu Gallĭæ.
have understood to be from (for) the use (advantage) of Gaul.

7. Hæc deferebantur ad Cæsărem à
These (matters) were reported to Cæsar by

complurĭbus. Quâ re cognĭtâ, Cæsar, quòd
very-many. Which thing being known, Cæsar, because

tribuebat tantum dignitatis Æduæ civitati,
he did grant so-much of honour to the Æduan state,

statuebat Dumnorĭgem coërcendum atque
did determine Dumnorix to-be-restrained and

deterrendum quibuscunque rebus posset;
to-be-deterred by whatever things he might be-able;

quòd videbat amentĭam ejus progrĕdi
because he did see the insanity of him to proceed

longĭùs, prospiciendum, ne posset
further, (it was) to-be-provided, lest he might be-able

nocere sĭbi ac Reipublĭcæ. Ităque
to injure to himself and to the state. Therefore

commoratus in ĕo lŏco circĭter viginti quinque
having delayed in that place about twenty five

dĭes, quòd ventus Corus impediebat
days, because the wind Corus (North-west) did hinder

navigationem, qui consuevit flare in
the voyage, which (wind) has been-used to blow in

his lŏcis magnam partem omnis tempŏris,
these places (during) a great part of every season,

dăbat opĕram, ut contineret
he did give (use) endeavour, that he might restrain

Dumnorĭgem in officĭo; tămen cognoscĕret
Dumnorix in duty; however he should know

nihĭlò-secĭus omnĭa consilĭa ejus. Tandem
nevertheless all the designs of him. At-length

nactus idoneam tempestatem, jŭbet milites
having got suitable weather, he orders the soldiers

que equĭtes conscendĕre in naves. At animis
and cavalry to embark into the ships. But the minds

omnĭum impeditis, Dumnorix cum equitĭbus
of all being engaged. Dumnorix with the cavalry

Æduorum, Cæsăre insciente, cœpit
of the Æduï, Cæsar (being) ignorant (of it) began

discedĕre dŏmum à castris. Quâ re
to depart home from the camps. Which thing

nuntiatâ, Cæsar, profectione intermissâ
being announced, Cæsar, the departure being interrupted,

atque omnĭbus rebus postpositis, mittit magnam
and all thing being postponed, sends a great

partem equitatûs ad-insequendum ĕum, quĕ
part of the cavalry to-pursue him, and

impĕrat retrăhi: si facĭat
orders (him) to be dragged-back: if he may make

vim, nĕque parĕat, jŭbet interfĭcī:
violence, nor may obey, he commands (him) to be killed:

arbĭtratus hunc facturum nĭhil pro
having considered him about-to-do nothing for (as)

sano, qui neglexisset (pluperf. subj.)
a sound (man), who had contemned

imperĭum præsentis. Enim ille revocatus
the command of (him) present. For he being recalled

cœpit resistĕre, ac defendĕre se mănu,
began to resist, and to defend himself by hand (force),

que implorare fĭdem suorum;
and to entreat the faith (protection) of his-own (people);

clamĭtans sæpè, "se esse lĭbĕrum, que
crying-out often, "himself to be a free (-man), and

lĭbĕræ civitatis." Isti circumsistunt que interfĭcĭunt
of a free state." They surround and slay

nomĭnem, ut imperatum-ĕrat: at omnes Ædŭi
the man, as it had been ordered: but all the Æduan

equĭtes revertuntur ad Cæsărem.
horsemen return to Cæsar

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno relicto
These things being carried-on, Labienus being left

in continente cum trĭbus legionĭbus et duobus
on the continent with three legions and two

millĭbus equitum, ut tueretur portus,
thousands of cavalry, that he might defend the harbours,

et provideret frumentarĭæ rĕi, que cognoscĕret
and might provide for the corn affair, and might know

quæ gererentur in Gallĭâ, et capĕret
what (things) might be carried-on in Gaul, and might take

consilĭum pro tempŏre et pro
counsel for (according to) time and for

re: ipse cum quinque legionĭbus et
the affair: himself with five legions and

pări numĕro equĭtum, quem reliquĕrat in
an equal number of cavalry, which he had left on

continente, solvit naves ad occasum
the continent, loosed the ships (set sail) to (at) the setting

solis; et provectus leni
of the sun; and being carried-forward by a gentle

Afrĭco, vento intermisso
South-west-wind, the wind being intermitted (having ceased)

circĭter medĭâ nocte, tenŭit non cursum:
about in middle night, he kept not the course:

et delatus longĭùs æstu, luce
and being carried-away farther by the tide, the light (day)

ortâ, conspexit Britannĭam relictam sub
having risen, he beheld Britain left under (on)

sinistrâ. Tum rursus secutus commutationem
the left. Then again having followed the change

æstûs, contendit remis, ut capĕret
of the tide, he strove with oars, that he might take (reach)

ĕam partem insŭlæ, quâ cognovĕrat
that part of the island, in which he had known

superiore æstate optimum egressum esse. In
in the former summer the best landing to be. In

quâ re virtus milĭtum fŭit admŏdum
which thing the excellence of the soldiers was very-much

laudanda, qui, labore remigandi non
to-be-praised, who, the labour of rowing not

intermisso, adæquaverunt cursum longarum
being interrupted, *equalled* *the course* *of the long*

navĭum, vectorĭis que gravĭbus navigĭis.
ships (ships of war), *with transport* *and* *heavy* *vessels.*

Accessum-est ad Britanniam omnĭbus navĭbus
It was approached *to* *Britain* *by all* *the ships*

fĕrè meridiano tempŏre. Nĕque hostis visus-est
nearly *in the noon* *time.* *Neither* *an enemy* *was seen*

in ĕo lŏco. Sed, ut Cæsar postĕa compĕrit
in *that* *place.* *But,* *as* *Cæsar* *afterwards* *discovered*

ex captivis, quum magnæ mănus convenissent
from *the prisoners,* *when* *great* *bands* *had assembled*

(pluperf. subj.) ĕò, perterrĭtæ multitudĭne
there, *being affrighted* *by the multitude*

navĭum, quæ amplĭus octingentæ
of the ships, *which* *more* (*than*) *eight-hundred*

visæ-ĕrant unà cum annotĭnis que
had been seen *together* *with* *last-year's* (*ships*) *and*

privatis, quas quisque fecĕrat caussâ
private (*ones*), *which* *each* *had made* *by cause* (for the

sŭi commŏdi, discessĕrant timore
sake) *of his-own* *convenience,* *they had departed* *by fear*

à littŏre, ac abdidĕrant se in
from *the shore,* *and* *had concealed* *themselves* *into*

superiora lŏca.
the higher *places.*

9. Cæsar, exercĭtu expositŏ, ac
Cæsar, *the army* *being put-out* (landed), *and*

lŏco idoneo castris (pl.) capto, ŭbi
a place *fit* *for a camp* *being taken,* *when*

cognovit ex captivis, in quo lŏco copĭæ
he learned *from* *the prisoners,* *in* *what* *place* *the forces*

hostĭum consedissent (pluperf. subj.), dĕcem
of the enemies *had encamped,* *ten*

cohortĭbus relictis ad măre, et trecentis
cohorts *being left* *at* *the sea,* *and* *three-hundred*

equitĭbus, qui essent præsidĭo navĭbus,
horsemen, who might be for a guard to the ships,

contendit ad hostes de tertĭâ vigilĭâ;
hastened to the enemies from (at) the third watch:

verĭtus ĕò mĭnùs navĭbus, quòd
having feared therefore the less for the ships, because

relinquebat deligatas ad anchŏras in molli
he did leave (them) fastened at anchors on a soft

atque aperto littŏre: et præfecit Quintum Atrĭum
and open shore: and he set-over Quintus Atrium

præsidĭo navĭbus. Ipse progressus
for protection to the ships. Himself having advanced

noctu circĭter duodĕcim millĭa passŭum
by night about twelve thousands of paces

conspicatus-est copĭas hostĭum. Illi
espied the forces of the enemies. They

progressi ad flumen equitatu atque
having advanced to the river with the cavalry and

essĕdis, cœperunt prohibere nostros ex
chariots, began to prevent our (men) from

superiore lŏco et committĕre prœlĭum. Repulsi
the higher place and to engage battle. Being repulsed

ab equitatu, nacti lŏcum egregĭè munitum
by the cavalry, having got a place excellently fortified

et naturâ et opĕre, quem, ut
both by nature and by work (art), which (place), as

videbatur, præparavĕrant jam antè, caussâ
it did seem, they had prepared already before, by cause

domestĭci belli, abdiderunt se
(for the sake) *of domestic war, they hid themselves*

in silvas: nam crebris arborĭbus
into the woods: for frequent (many) trees

succisis, omnes introĭtus præclusi-ĕrant.
being cut-down, all the entrances had been shut-out.

Ipsi rari propugnabant ex
Themselves few (in parties) did fight out-of

silvis, que prohibebant nostros ingrĕdi intra
the woods, and did hinder our (men) to enter within

munitiones. At milĭtes septĭmæ legionis,
the fortifications. But the soldiers of the seventh legion,

testudĭne factâ, et aggĕre
a covering (with their shields) being made, and a mound

adjecto ad munitiones, ceperunt lŏcum,
being added to the fortifications, took the place,

que expulerunt ĕos ex silvis, paucis vulnerĭbus
and drove-out them from the woods, few wounds

acceptis. Sed Cæsar vetŭit persĕqui ĕos
being received. But Cæsar forbade to pursue them

fugientes longĭùs, et quòd ignorabat naturam
fleeing farther, both because he did not know the nature

lŏci, et quòd magnâ parte diei
of the place, and because a great part of the day

consumptâ, volebat tempus relinqui munitioni
being spent, he did will time to be left for the fortification

castrorum (pl.).
of the camp.

10. Postridĭe ejus diei, misit manè
The day-after of that day, he sent in-the-morning

milĭtes que equĭtes tripartitò in
the soldiers and cavalry in three-divisions unto

expeditionem, ut persequerentur ĕos, qui
the expedition, that they might pursue those, who

fugĕrant. Iis progressis aliquantum itinĕris,
had fled. Those having advanced some-little of the march,

quum jam extremi essent (imp. subj.) in conspectu,
when already the last were in sight,

equĭtes venerunt à Quinto Atrĭo ad Cæsărem,
horsemen came from Quintus Atrius to Cæsar,

qui nuntiarent "maxĭmâ tempestate coortâ
who might announce "a very-great tempest having arisen

superiori nocte, omnes naves propè
on the former night, all the ships nearly

afflictas-esse atque ejectas in litŏre; quòd
to have been dashed and cast-out on the shore; because

nĕque anchŏræ que funes subsistĕrent (imp. subj.),
neither the anchors and ropes did withstand

nĕque nautæ que gubernatores possent (imp.
neither the sailors and pilots were-able

subj.) păti vim tempestatis. Ităque
to endure the violence of the tempest. Therefore

magnum incommŏdum acceptum-esse ex ĕo
great inconvenience to have been received from that

concursu navĭum."
collision of the ships."

11. His rebus cognĭtis, Cæsar jŭbet
These things being known, Cæsar orders

legiones que equitatum revocari, atque
the legions and the cavalry to be recalled, and

desistĕre itinĕre. Ipse revertĭtur ad
to halt from the march. Himself returns to

naves: perspĭcit coràm fĕrè eădem,
the ships: he observes in-presence nearly the same (things),

quæ cognovĕrat ex nuntĭis que
which he had known from the messengers and

litĕris (pl.); sic ut, circĭter quadraginta navĭbus
the letter; so that, about forty ships

amissis, tămen relĭquæ viderentur (imp. subj.)
being lost, however the rest did seem

posse refĭci magno negotĭo. Ităque
to be-able to be repaired with great trouble. Therefore

deligit fabros ex legionĭbus, et jŭbet alĭos
he selects workmen out-of the legions, and orders others

accersiri ex continenti: scribit Labieno,
to be sent-for from the continent: he writes to Labienus,

ut institŭat quàm-plurímas naves
that he may construct the greatest-number ships

posset ĭis legionĭbus, quæ sunt ăpud
he might be-able with those legions, which are with

eum. Ipse, etsi res ĕrat multæ opĕræ
him. Himself, although the thing was of much trouble

ac laboris, tămen statŭit esse com-
and labour, however determined (it) to be most-

modissĭmum, omnes naves subduci, et
convenient, all the ships to be drawn-up, and

conjungi unâ munitione cum castris (pl.).
to be united in one fortification with the camp.

Consumit circĭter dĕcem dies in his rebus, ne
He spends about ten days in these things, not

quĭdem nocturnis temporĭbus intermissis
indeed (even) *the night times being intermitted*

ad laborem milĭtum. Navĭbus subductis
to the labour of the soldiers. The ships being drawn-up

que castris (pl.) egregĭè munitis, relinquit easdem
and the camp excellently fortified, he leaves the same

copĭas quas antè, præsidĭo navĭbus:
forces which (he left) before, for a guard to the ships:

ipse proficiscĭtur eòdem, unde
himself sets-out to the same (place), whence

rediĕrat. Quum venissĕt (plup. subj.) ĕò,
he had returned. When he had come thither,

majores copĭæ Britannorum jam convenĕrant
greater forces of the Britons now had assembled

undĭque in ĕum lŏcum. Summa
from every-side into that place. The supreme-authority

imperĭi que belli gerendi permissa-est,
of command and of the war to-be-carried-on was entrusted,

communi consilĭo, Cassivellauno, fines
by common counsel, to Cassivellaunus, the territories

cujus flumen, quod appellatur Tamĕsis,
of whom a river, which is called Tamesis (Thames),

divĭdit à maritĭmis civitatĭbus, circĭter octoginta
divides from the maritime states, about eighty

millĭa passŭum à mări. Continentĭa bella
thousands of paces from the sea. Incessant war

intercessĕrant huic cum relĭquis civitatĭbus,
had intervened to him with the rest-of the states,

superiori tempŏre; sed Britanni, permoti
in the former time; but the Britons, alarmed

nostro adventu, præfecĕrant hunc toti bello
by our arrival, had appointed him to the whole war

que imperĭo.
and command.

12. Interĭor pars Britannĭæ incolĭtur ab
The interior part of Britain is inhabited by

ĭis, quos dicunt proditum memorĭâ
those, whom they say (it to have been) delivered by memory

natos in insŭlâ ipsâ: maritĭma pars
having been born in the island itself: the maritime part

ab ĭis, qui transiĕrant ex
(is inhabited) by those, who had crossed-over out-of

Belgis caussâ prædæ ac belli
the Belgæ by cause (for the sake) of plunder and of war

inferendi; qui omnes fĕre appellantur
to-be-brought-on; who all nearly are called

ĭis nominĭbus civitatum, ex quĭbus civitatĭbus
by those names of states, out-of which states

orti pervenerunt ĕò, et bello
having sprung they arrived there, and war

illato remanserunt ĭbi, atque cœperunt
being brought-on remained there, and began

colĕre agros. Multitudo homĭnum est
to till the lands. The multitude of men (inhabitants) is

infinita, que ædificĭa creberrĭma fĕre
immense, and the buildings most-numerous nearly

consimilĭa Gallĭcis: numĕrus pecŏris
similar to the Gallic: the number of the cattle

magnus. Utuntur aut ære (abl.), aut ferrĕis
is) great. They use either brass, or iron

annŭlis examinatis ad certum pondus, pro nummo.
rings regulated to a certain weight, for coin.

Album plumbum nascĭtur ĭbi in mediterranĕis
White lead (tin) *is produced there in the midland*

regionĭbus; ferrum in maritĭmis; sed
countries; iron in the maritime (*parts*); *but*

copĭa ejus est exiguă: utuntur importato
the quantity of it is small: they use imported

ære. Est materĭa cujusque generis, ut in
brass. (*There*) *is timber of every kind, as in*

Gallĭâ, præter fagum atque abiĕtem. Pŭtant
Gaul, except the beech and the fir-tree. They think (*it*)

non fas gustare lepŏrem et gallinam et
not right to taste the hare and the hen and

anserem: tămen ălunt hæc caussâ
the goose: however they nourish these by cause (for the

animi que voluptatis. Lŏca
sake) *of mind* (diversion) *and of pleasure. The places*

sunt temperatiora quàm in Gallĭâ, frigorĭbus
are more-temperate than in Gaul, the colds

remissionĭbus.
(*being*) *more-mild.*

13. Insŭla naturâ triquĕtra, unum lătus
The island (*is*) *by nature triangular, one side*

cujus est contra Gallĭam. Alter angŭlus
of which is opposite Gaul. The other (one) *angle*

hujus latĕris, qui est ad Cantĭum,
of this side, which is at (towards) *Cantium* (Kent),

quò naves ex Gallĭâ fĕrè appelluntur,
whither ships from Gaul generally are brought-to-land,

ad orientem solem; inferĭor spectat
at the rising sun (the East); *the lower* (*angle*) *looks*

ad meridĭem. Hoc lătus tĕnet
(is directed) *to the south. This side holds* (extends)

circĭter quingenta millĭa passŭum. Altĕrum
about five-hundred thousands of paces. The other (*side*)

vergit ad Hispanĭam, atque occidentem solem;
inclines to Spain, and the setting sun:

ex quâ parte est Hibernia, mĭnor dimidĭo
from (on) *which side is Hibernia, less by half*

quàm Britannĭa, ut existimatur; sed transmissus
than Britain, as it is thought; but the passage-across

est pări spatĭo atque ex Gallĭâ in
is with equal distance and (as) *from Gaul into*

Britannĭam. In medĭo hoc cursu est insŭla,
Britain. In the middle-of this course is an island,

quæ appellatur Mŏna. Complures minores
which is called Mona (Man). *Several less*

insŭlæ præterĕa existimantur objectæ, de
islands besides are thought (to be) *interposed, of*

quĭbus insŭlis nonnulli scripserunt, noctem esse
which islands some have written, the night to be

triginta continŭos dĭes sub brumâ.
thirty successive days under the winter (in the winte

Nos reperiebamus nĭhil de ĕo
season). *We did find nothing concerning tha*

percunctationĭbus, nĭsi videbamus certis mensuris
by inquiries, unless we did see by certain measures

ex ăquâ, noctes esse breviores quàm in
of water, the nights to be shorter than on

continente. Longitudo hujus latĕris est septin-
he continent. The length of this side is of seven-

gentorum millĭum passŭum, ut opinĭo
hundred of thousands of paces, as the opinion

illorum fert. Tertĭum est contra
of them reports. The third (side) *is opposite*

Septentrionem; cui parti nulla terra est
the North; to which part no land is

objecta, sed angŭlus ejus latĕris spectat
opposed, but the angle of that side looks (is directed)

maxĭmè ad Germanĭam Existimatur octingenta
chiefly to Germany. It is thought eight-hundred

millĭa passŭum in longitudĭnem esse huic.
thousands of paces into length to be to this (side)

Ita omnis insŭla est vicĭes centena
Thus all the island is twenty-times a hundred

millĭa passŭum in circuĭtu.
thousands of paces in compass.

14. Ex omnĭbus his, qui incŏlunt
Out-of all these, (those) who inhabit

Cantĭum, sunt longè humanissĭmi; omnis
Cantium (Kent), *are by-far most-civilized; all*

quæ regĭo est maritĭma, nĕque differunt multùm
which tract is maritime, nor do they differ much

à Gallĭcâ consuetudĭne Plerique interiores
from the Gallic custom. Most-of the interior

sĕrunt non frumenta (pl.), sed vivunt
(*inhabitants*) *sow not corn, but live*

lacte et carne, que sunt vestiti pellĭbus.
with (on) *milk and flesh, and are clad with skins.*

Verò omnes Britanni inficĭunt se vitro,
But all the Britons stain themselves with woad,

quod effĭcit cæruleum colorem, atque hôc
which forms a bluish colour, and from this

sunt horribiliore adspectu in pugnâ:
they are with (of) *more-frightful look in battle:*

que sunt promisso capillo, atque omni parte
and they are with long hair, and every part

corpŏris rasâ, præter căput et superĭus
of the body shaved, except the head and upper

labrum. Deni que duodeni hăbent uxores
lip. Ten and twelve (*men*) *have wives*

communes inter se, et maxĭmè fratres
common among themselves, and chiefly brothers

cum fratrĭbus, et parentes cum liberis. Sed si
with brothers, and parents with children. But if

qui sunt nati ex his, habentur
any are born out-of these, they are accounted

liberi eorum, à quĭbus quæque virgĭnes
the children of those, by whom each (*when*) *virgins*

ductæ-sunt primùm.
were led (married) *first.*

15. Equĭtes que essedarĭi hostium
The cavalry and charioteers of the enemies

conflixerunt acrĭter prœlĭo cum nostro equitatu
engaged vigorously in battle with our cavalry

in itinĕre; tămen, ut nostri fuĕrint
on the march; however, so-that our (men) were

(perf. subj.) superiores omnĭbus partĭbus, atque
superior in all parts, and

compulĕrint (perf. subj.) ĕos in silvas que
drove them into the woods and

colles; sed, complurĭbus interfectis, insecuti
hills; but, many being killed, having pursued

cupidĭùs, amiserunt nonnullos
(*them*) *more eagerly* (too eagerly), *they lost some*

ex sŭis. At illi, spatĭo intermisso,
of their-own. But they, an interval being intermitted

subĭtò ejecerunt se ex
(having elapsed), *suddenly threw-out themselves out-of*

silvis, nostris imprudentĭbus atque
the woods, our (men) (being) unaware and

occupatis in munitione castrorum (pl.); que
engaged in the fortification of the camp; and

impĕtu facto in ĕos, qui collocati-ĕrant
an attack being made upon those, who had been placed

in statione pro castris (pl.), pugnaverunt acrĭter:
on station before the camp, they fought vigorously:

que duabus cohortĭbus missis subsidĭo à Cæsăre,
and two cohorts being sent for aid by Cæsar,

atque his primis duarum legionum, quum hæ
and these the first of two legions, when these

constitissent (pluperf. subj.), perexiguo spatĭo
had stood-together, a very-small space

loci intermisso inter se, nostris
of ground being interposed between themselves, our (men)

perterrĭtis nŏvo genĕre pugnæ, proruperunt
being alarmed by the new kind of battle, they burst

audacissĭmè per mediŏs que receperunt
most-daringly through the midst (of our men) and betook

se inde incolŭmes. Eo dĭe Quintus
themselves thence safe. In that day Quintus

Laberĭus Durus, tribunus milĭtum interficĭtur: illi
Laberius Durus, a tribune of soldiers is slain: they

repelluntur, pluribus cohortĭbus submissis.
are repulsed, more cohorts being sent-up.

16. In hoc toto genĕre pugnæ, quum
In this whole kind of battle, since

dimicaretur (imp. subj.) sub ocŭlis omnĭum ac
it was fought under the eyes of all and

pro castris (pl.), intellectum-est, nostros
before the camp, it was understood, our (men)

esse mĭnùs aptos ad hostem hujus genĕris,
to be less fit (adapted) to an enemy of this kind,

propter gravitatem armorum, quòd possent
on-account-of the weight of the arms, because they were able

(imp. subj.) nĕque insĕqui cedentes, nĕque
neither to pursue (them) yielding, nor

auderent (imp. subj.) discedĕre ab signis;
did they dare to depart from the standards;

autem equĭtes dimicare cum magno periclŭlo,
but the cavalry to contend with great danger,

propterĕa quòd illi etĭam cedĕrent (imp. subj.)
because that they also did yield (retreat)

plerumque consultò; et quum removissent (plu-
generally by-design; and when they had removed

perf. subj.) nostros paullŭlùm ab legionĭbus,
our (men) a very-little from the legions,

desilirent ex essĕdis et contendĕrent
they would leap-down from the chariots and would contend

pedĭbus dispări prœlĭo. Autem ratĭo
with feet (on foot) in unequal fight. But the method

equestris prœlĭi, et cedentĭbus et
of the cavalry fight, (they) both yielding and

insequentĭbus, inferebat par atque ĭdem
pursuing, did bring equal and the same

periculum. Accedebat huc, ut
danger. It did approach hither (added to this), *that*

prœliarentur (imp. subj.) nunquam conferti, sed
they did fight never close-together, but

rari que magnis intervallis, que haberent
few and with (at) *great distances, and did have*

(imp. subj.) stationes dispositas; atque alĭi
posts arranged; and others (some)

excipĕrent (imp. subj.) alĭos deinceps, que intĕgri
did relieve others afterwards, and whole

et recentes succederent (imp. subj.) defatigatis.
and fresh (men) *did succeed to the exhausted.*

17. Postĕro dĭe hostes constiterunt
In the following day the enemies stood

procul à castris (pl.) in collĭbus; que rari
far-off from the camp on the hills; and a few

cœperunt ostendĕre se, et lacessĕre nostros
began to show themselves, and to provoke our

equĭtes prœlĭo lentĭùs, quàm pridĭe.
cavalry to battle more-slowly, than the day-before.

Sed meridĭe, quum Cæsar misisset (pluperf. subj.)
But in (at) *noon, when Cæsar had sent*

tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caĭo
three legions and all the cavalry with Caius

Trebonĭo legato caussâ
Trebonius the lieutenant by cause (for the purpose)

pabulandi, advolaverunt repentè ad pabulatores
of foraging, they flew suddenly to the foragers

ex omnĭbus partĭbus, sic ŭtì absistĕrent (imp.
from all parts, so that they did refrain

subj.) non ab signis que legionĭbus.
(keep off) *not from the standards and the legions.*

Nostri, impĕtu facto acrĭter in ĕos,
Our (men), an attack being made vigorously upon them,

repulerunt, nĕque fecerunt finem insequendi,
repulsed (them), nor made they an end of pursuing,

quŏad equĭtes, confisi subsidĭo, quum viderent
whilst the cavalry, relying to (on) aid, since they did see

(imp. subj.) legiones post se, egerunt
the legions behind themselves, drove

hostes præcipĭtes: que magno numĕro eorum
the enemies headlong: and a great number of them

interfecto, nĕque dederunt facultatem sŭi
being killed, neither they gave the power of themselves

colligendi nĕque consistendi, aut desiliendi
to-be-collected, neither of halting, or of leaping-down

ex essĕdis. Auxilĭa, quæ convenĕrant
from the chariots. The auxiliaries, which had assembled

undĭque, discesserunt protĭnus ex
from-every-side, departed immediately from (after)

hâc fŭgâ; nĕque post id tempus hostes
this flight; neither after that time the enemies

unquam contenderunt nobiscum summis
ever contended with us with (their) highest

copĭis
(whole) *forces.*

18. Cæsar, consilĭo eorum cognĭto, duxit
Cæsar, the design of them being known, led

exercĭtum ad flumen Tamĕsin in
the army to the river Tamesis (Thames) into

fines Cassivellauni: quod flumen pŏtest
the territories of Cassivellaunus: which river is able

transiri pedĭbus omnino uno lŏco,
to be crossed on feet (by fording) altogether (only) in one place,

atque hoc ægrè. Quum venisset (pluperf. subj.)
and in this hardly. When he had come

ĕò, animadvertit magnas copĭas hostĭum esse
there, he perceived great forces of the enemies to be

instructas ad altĕram ripam flumĭnis. Autem
arrayed at the other bank of the river. But

ripa crat munita acutis sudĭbus præfixis,
the bank was fortified with sharp stakes affixed,

que sŭdes ejusdem generis defixæ sub
and stakes of the same kind fixed-down under

ăquâ tegebantur flumĭne. Iis rebus
the water were covered by the river. Those things

cognĭtis à captivis que perfŭgis, Cæsar,
being known from the prisoners and deserters, Cæsar,

equitatu præmisso, jussit legiones subsĕqui
the cavalry being sent-before, ordered the legions to follow

confestim. Sed milĭtes iĕrunt ĕâ celeritate
immediately. But the soldiers went with that speed

atque impĕtu, quum exstarent (imp. subj.) ex
and force, when they did stand-out from

ăquâ capĭte solo, ut hostes possent
the water by the head alone, that the enemies were able

(imp. subj.) non sustinere impĕtum legionum
not to withstand the attack of the legions

que equĭtum, que dimittĕrent (imp. subj.)
and of the cavalry, and did quit

ripas ac mandarent (imp. subj.) se fŭgæ.
the banks and did commit themselves to flight.

19. Cassivellaunus, omni spe contentionis de-
Cassivellaunus, all hope of a contest being

posĭtâ, ut demonstravĭmus suprà, amplioribus
laid-aside, as we have shown above, (his) larger

copĭis dimissis, circĭter quatŭor millĭbus
forces being dismissed, about four thousands

essedariorum relictis, servabat nostra itinĕra, que
of charioteers being left, did watch our marches, and

excedebat paullŭlùm ex vĭâ, que occultabat
did depart a little out-of the way, and did conceal

sese impeditis atque silvestrĭbus locis, atque
himself in entangled and woody places, and

compellebat pecŏra (pl.) atque homĭnes ex agris
did drive the cattle and men from the lands

in silvas ĭis regionĭbus, quĭbus
into the woods from those regions, in which

cognovĕrat nos facturos ĭter: et quum
he had known us about-to-make the march: and when

noster equitatus effundĕret se liberĭùs in
our cavalry did scatter itself more-freely into

agros caussâ vastandi què
the lands by cause (for the purpose) *of ravaging and*

prædandi, emittebat essedarĭos ex
of plundering, he did send-out the charioteers from

silvis omnĭbus notis vĭis que semĭtis; et
the woods by all the known ways and paths; and

confligebat cum ĭis cum magno periculo nostrorum
did engage with them with great danger of our

equĭtum; atque hoc mĕtu prohibebat
cavalry; and by this fear did hinder (them)

vagari latĭùs. Relinquebatur, ut Cæsar
to stray more-widely. It was left, that Cæsar

nĕque pateretur discedi longĭùs ab
neither would allow (it) *to be departed farther from*

agmĭne legionum; et noceretur
the troop (main body) *of the legions; and it might be injured*

hostĭbus in agris vastandis, que
to the enemies in the lands to-be-ravaged, and

incendĭis faciendis, tantum quantum legionarĭi
burnings to-be-made, so-much as the legionary

milĭtes potĕrant efficĕre labore atque itinĕre.
soldiers were-able to effect by labour and on the march.

20. Intĕrim Trinobantes, propè firmissĭma
Meantime the Trinobantes, nearly the strongest

civĭtas earum regionum, ex quâ Mandubratĭus
state of these countries, from which Mandubratius

adolescens, secutus fĭdem
a youth. having followed (embraced) *the faith* (protection

Cæsăris, venĕrat ad ĕum in continentem
of Cæsar, had come to him into the continent

Galliam, (cujus pater Imanuentĭus obtinuĕrat
Gaul, (whose father Imanuentius had obtained

regnum in ĕâ civitate, que
kingdom (royal power) in that state, and

interfectus-ĕrat à Cassivellauno; ipse vitavĕrat
had been slain by Cassivellaunus; himself had avoided

mortem fŭgâ,) mittunt legatos ad Cæsărem,
death by flight,) send ambassadors to Cæsar,

que pollicentur dedituros sese
and promise (to be) about-to-surrender themselves

ĕi et facturos imperata.
to him and about-to-do (the things) commanded.

Pĕtunt ut defendat Mandubratĭum ab
They request that he may defend Mandubratius from

injurĭâ Cassivellauni, atque mittat in
the injury of Cassivellaunus, and may send (him) into

civitatem, qui præsit que obtinĕat
(their) state, who may preside and may obtain

imperĭum. Cæsar impĕrat his
the authority. Cæsar orders to these (to furnish)

quadraginta obsĭdes que frumentum exercitŭi;
forty hostages and corn to the army;

que mittit Mandubratĭum ad ĕos. Illi fecerunt
and sends Mandubratius to them. They did (the

imperata celerĭter; miserunt obsides ad
things) commanded quickly; they sent hostages to

numĕrum, que frumentum.
the number (required), and corn.

21. Trinobantĭbus defensis, atque prohibĭtis
The Trinobantes being defended, and being protected

ab omni injurĭâ militum, Cenimagni,
from all injury of the soldiers, the Cenimagni,

Segontiăci, Ancalites, Bibrŏci, Cassi, legationĭbus
Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi. embassies

missis, dediderunt sese Cæsări. Cognoscit
being sent, surrendered themselves to Cæsar. He understands

ab his, oppĭdum Cassivellauni abesse
from these, the town of Cassivellaunus to-be-distant

non longè ex ĕo lŏco, munitum sĭlvis que
not far from that place, fortified by woods and

paludĭbus, quò numĕrus sătis magnus
by marshes, whither a number sufficiently great

homĭnum que pecŏris convenĕrit (perf. subj.).
of men and of cattle has assembled.

Autem Britanni vŏcant oppĭdum, quò
But the Britons call (that) a town, where

consueverunt convenire, caussâ
they have been accustomed to assemble, by cause (for the sake)

incursionis hostĭum vitandæ, quum
of an inroad of the enemies to be avoided, when

munîerunt impeditas silvas vallo
they have fortified the entangled woods with a rampart

atque fossâ. Eò proficiscĭtur cum legionĭbus:
and a trench. Thither he sets-out with the legions:

repĕrit lŏcum egregĭè munitum naturâ atque
he finds the place excellently fortified by nature and

opĕre; tămen contendit oppugnare hunc
by work (art); *however he endeavours to storm this*

ex duabus partĭbus. Hostes morati
from two parts. The enemies having delayed

paullisper, tulerunt non impĕtum nostrorum
a little-while, bore not the attack of our

milĭtum, que ejecerunt sese ex alĭâ parte
soldiers, and threw-out themselves from another part

oppĭdi. Magnus numĕrus pecŏris repertus (-est)
of the town. A great number of cattle was found

ĭbi; que multi comprehensi-sunt atque interfecti
there; and many were seized and killed

in fŭgâ.
in the flight.

22. Dum hæc geruntur in his
While these (things are carried-on in these

lŏcis, Cassivellaunus mittit nuntĭos ad Cantĭum,
places, Cassivellaunus sends messengers to Cantium

quod demonstravĭmus suprà esse ad máre,
(Kent), *which we have shown above to be at the sea,*

quĭbus regionĭbus quatŭor reges præĕrant,
to which countries four kings were-over (presided),

Cingetŏrix, Carnilĭus, Taximagŭlus, Segŏnax; atque
Cingetorix, Carnilius, Taximagulus, Segonax; and

impĕrat his, ut omnĭbus copĭis
he orders to these, that all (their) *forces*

coactis, adoriantur navalĭa castra (pl.)
being collected, they may attack the naval camp

de-improviso, atque oppugnent. Quum hi
unexpectedly, and may storm (it). *When these*

venissent (pluperf. subj.) ad castra (pl.), nostri,
had come to the camp, our (men),

eruptione factâ, multis eorum interfectis, etĭam
a sally being made, many of them being killed, also

nobĭli dŭce Cingetorĭge capto, reduxerunt
(*their*) *noble leader Cingetorix being taken, led-back*

sŭos incolŭmes. Cassivellaunus, hoc prœlĭo
their (men) *safe. Cassivellaunus, this battle*

nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis,
being announced, so-many losses being received,

finĭbus vastatis, etĭam maxĭmè permotus
(*his*) *territories being ravaged, also chiefly alarmed*

defectione civitatum, mittit legatos ad
by the revolt of the states, sends ambassadors to

Cæsărem per Comĭum Atrebătem de
Cæsar by (through) *Comius the Atrebatian about*

deditione. Quum Cæsar statuisset (pluperf. subj.)
a surrender. Since Cæsar had resolved

agĕre hiĕmem in continente propter
to act (spend) *the winter on the continent on-account-of*

repentinos motus Gallĭæ; nĕque multum
the sudden commotions of Gaul; neither much

æstatis superesset (imp. subj.); atque intel-
of the summer did remain; and he did

ligĕret (imp. subj.), id posse extrăhi facĭlè,
understand that to be-able to be protracted easily,

impĕrat obsĭdes; et constitŭit
he commands (him to furnish) hostages; and appointed

quid vectigalis Britannĭa pendĕret
what (portion) of tribute Britain should pay

Romano popŭlo in singŭlos annos.
to the Roman people on each years (every year).

Interdicit atque impĕrat Cassivellauno,
He prohibits and commands to Cassivellaunus, (that)

ne-nocĕat Mandubratĭo, neu Trinobantĭbus.
he may not-injure to Mandubratius, nor to the Trinobantes.

23. Obsidĭbus acceptis, reducit exercĭtum
The hostages being received, he leads-back the army

ad măre: invenit naves refectas. His
to the sea: he finds the ships repaired. These

deductis, constitŭit reportare
being led-down (launched), he resolved to carry-back

exercĭtum duobus commeatĭbus, et quòd
the army by two passages, both because

habebat magnum numĕrum captivorum, et
he did have a great number of prisoners, and

nonnullæ naves deperiĕrant tempestate. Ac
some ships had perished by a tempest. And

accĭdit sic, ut ex tanto numĕro navĭum
it happened so, that out-of so-great a number of ships

tot navigationĭbus, nĕque ulla navis omnino,
in so-many voyages, neither any ship at-all,

quæ portaret (imp. subj.) milĭtes, desideraretur
which did carry the soldiers, was wanting

(imp. subj.) hoc nĕque superiore anno:
(was lost) in this nor in the foregoing year

at ex ns, quæ remitterentur (imp. subj.)
but out-of those, which were sent-back

inanes ad ĕum ex continente, et militĭbus
empty to him from the continent, and the soldiers

prioris commeatûs expositis, et quas
of the former passage being landed, and which

Labienus postĕa curavĕrat faciendas, numĕro
Labienus afterwards had taken-care to-be-made, in number

sexaginta, perpaucæ capĕrent (imp. subj.) lŏcum,
sixty, very-few did take (reached) the place,

fĕrè omnes relĭquæ rejicerentur (imp. subj.).
nearly all the rest were thrown-back.

Quas quum Cæsar exspectâsset (pluperf. subj.)
Which when Cæsar had awaited

aliquandĭu frustrà, ne excluderetur
some-time in-vain, lest he might be shut-out

navigatione tempŏre anni, quòd
from the voyage by the time of the year, because

æquinoctĭum subĕrat, necessarĭò collocavit
the equinox was near, (he) necessarily placed

milites angustĭùs. Ac consecutus
the soldiers more-closely. And having attained (obtained)

summam tranquillitatem quum solvisset
the utmost calmness (of weather) when he had loosed

(pluperf. subj.), secundâ vigilîâ inĭtâ,
(had set sail), *the second watch being entered,*

attĭgit terram primâ luce, que
he touched (reached) land in the first light, and

perduxit omnes naves incolŭmes.
conducted all the ships safe.

24. Navĭbus subductis, que concilĭo
The ships being drawn-up, and the council

Gallorum Samarobrivæ peractò,
of the Gauls of (at) Samarobriva being completed,

coactus-est collocare exercĭtum in hibernis
he was compelled to place the army in winter-quarters

alĭter ac superiorĭbus annis, que distribuĕre
otherwise and (than) *in former years, and to distribute*

legiones in plures civitates, quòd eo anno
the legions into more states, because in that year

frumentum proveněrat angustĭùs
the corn had come-forth (grown) *more narrowly* (less

in Gallĭâ, propter siccitates:
abundantly) *in Gaul, on-account-of the droughts:*

ex quĭbus dĕdit unam Caĭo Fabĭo
out-of which he gave one (*legion*) *to Caius Fabius*

legato ducendam in Morĭnos, altĕram
the lieutenant to-be-led unto the Morini, another

Quinto Ciceroni in Nervĭos, tertĭam
to Quintus Cicero unto the Nervii, the third

Lucĭo Roscĭo in Essŭos: jussit quartam
to Lucius Roscius unto the Essui: he ordered the fourth

hiemare in confinĭo Trevirorum, in Rhemis
to winter on the border of the Treviri, among the Rhemi

cum Tito Labieno: collocavit tres in Belgĭo:
with Titus Labienus: he placed three in Belgium:

præfecit his Marcum Crassum quæstorem,
he set-over to these Marcus Crassus (*as*) *quæstor,*

et Lucĭum Munatĭum Plancum, et Caĭum
and Lucius Munatius Plancus, and Caius

Trebonĭum legatos. Misit unam legionem,
Trebonius (*as*) *lieutenants. He sent one legion,*

quam conscripsĕrat proxĭmè trans Pădum, et
which he had levied very-lately across the Po, and

quinque cohortes, in Eburones, maxĭma pars
five cohorts, unto the Eburones, the greatest part

quorum est inter Mŏsam et Rhenum, qui
of whom is between the Meuse and the Rhine, who

ĕrant sub imperĭo Ambiorĭgis et Cativulci.
were under the authority of Ambiorix and of Cativulcus.

Jussit legatos Quintum Titurĭum Sabinum
He ordered the lieutenants Quintus Titurius Sabinus

et Lucĭum Aurunculeĭum Cottam præesse nis
and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta to preside to these

militĭbus. Legionĭbus distributis ad hunc
soldiers. The legions being distributed to (in) *this*

modum, existimavit sese posse mederi
manner, he thought himself to be-able to remedy

facillĭmè frumentarĭæ inopĭæ: atque tămen
most-easily to the corn scarcity: and however

hiberna omnĭum harum legionum con-
the winter-quarters of all of these legions were

tinebantur centum millĭbus passŭum (præter
contained in a hundred thousands of paces (*except*

ĕam, quam dedĕrat Lucĭo Roscĭo
that (*legion*), *which he had given to Lucius Roscius*

ducendam in pacatissĭmam et quietissĭmam
to-be-led into the most-appeased and most-tranquil

partem). Interĕa ipse constitŭit morari in
part). *Meanwhile himself resolved to tarry in*

Gallĭâ, quŏad cognovisset (pluperf. subj.) legiones
Gaul, until he had known the legions

collocatas, que hiberna munita.
being settled, and the winter-quarters fortified.

25. Erat in Carnutĭbus Tasgetĭus
There was in (among) *the Carnutes Tasgetius*

natus summo lŏco; cujus majores
born in the highest place (rank); *whose ancestors*

obtinuĕrant regnum in sŭâ civitate.
had obtained kingdom (royal power) *in their-own state.*

Cæsar restituĕrat lŏcum majorum huic
Cæsar had restored the situation of (*his*) *ancestors to him*

pro virtute ejus atque benevolentĭâ in
for the valour of him and (*his*) *good-will unto*

se, quòd usus-fuĕrat singulari (abl.) opĕrâ
himself, because he had used remarkable assistance

ejus in omnĭbus bellis. Inimici interfecerunt
of him in all the wars. (*His*) *enemies slew*

hunc pălàm, regnantem jam tertium annum, multis
him openly, reigning now the third year, many

etĭam ex civitate auctorĭbus. Ea
also out-of the state (being) authors (of the deed). That

res defertur ad Cæsărem. Ille verĭtus,
matter is reported to Cæsar. He having feared,

ne civĭtas deficĕret impulsu eorum,
lest the state might revolt by the instigation of them,

quòd res pertinebat ad plures, celerĭter
because the affair did relate to more (many), quickly

jŭbet Lucĭum Plancum proficisci in Carnutes
orders Lucius Plancus to set-out unto the Carnutes

cum legione ex Belgĭo, que hiemare ĭbi;
with a legion out-of Belgium, and to winter there;

que mittĕre hos comprehensos ad se,
and to send these seized to himself,

opĕrâ quorum cognovĕrit Tasgetĭum
by the endeavour of whom he may have known Tasgetius

interfectum. Intĕrim factus-est certĭor
(to have been) killed. Meantime he was made more-sure

ab omnĭbus legatis qūe
(was informed) by all the lieutenants and

quæstorĭbus, quĭbus tradidĕrat legiones,
quæstors, to-whom he had delivered the legions.

perventum-esse in hiberna, que
to have been arrived (by them) into winter-quarters, and

lŏcum munitum hibernis.
the place (to have been) fortified for winter-quarters.

26. Quindĕcim diebus circĭter quĭbus
In fifteen days about in (since) which

ventum-est in hiberna. initĭum repentini
it was come into winter-quarters, the beginning of a sudden

tumultûs ac defectionis ortum-est ab Ambiorĭge
tumult and revolt arose from Ambiorix

et Cativulco: qui quum fuissent (pluperf. subj.)
and Cativulcus: who when they had been

præstò Sabino que Cottæ ad fines sŭi
near to Sabinus and to Cotta at the borders of their

regni, que comportavissent (plup. subj.) frumentum
kingdom, and had carried corn

in hiberna, impulsi nuntĭis
into winter-quarters, being instigated by the messengers

Indutiomări Trevĭri, concitaverunt sŭos
of Indutiomarus the Treviran, roused-up their-own

que lignatorĭbus oppressis
(*people*); *and the wood-cutters being overwhelmed*

subĭtò, venerunt magnâ mănu oppugnatum
suddenly, they came with a great band to assault

castra (pl.). Quum nostri cepissent (pluperf.
the camp. When our (*men*) *had taken*

subj.) arma celerĭter, que adscendissent (pluperf.
arms quickly, and had ascended

subj.) vallum, atque Hispanis equitĭbus
the rampart, and the Spanish cavalry

emissis ex unâ parte, fuissent (pluperf.
being sent-out from one part (side), *had been*

subj.) superiores equestri prœlĭo, re
superior in the cavalry fight, the thing

desperatâ, hostes reduxerunt sŭos
being despaired-of, the enemies led-back their (*men*)

ab oppugnatione Tum conclamaverunt sŭo
from the assault. Then they cried-out in their

more, ŭtì alĭqui ex nostris prodirent
manner, that some out-of our (*people*) *might come-forth*

ad colloquĭum; "sese habere, quæ
to a conference; "*themselves to have* (*things*), *which*

vellent (imp. subj.) dicĕre de communi re,
they did will to say about the common matter,

quĭbus sperarent (imp. subj.) controversĭas posse
by which they did hope the disputes to be-able

minŭi."
to be diminished."

27. Caĭus Arpinĭus, Romanus ĕques, familiaris
Caius Arpinius, a Roman knight, an acquaintance

Quinti Titurĭi mittĭtur ad ĕos caussâ
of Quintus Titurius is sent to them by cause (for

colloquendi; que Quintus Junĭus,
the purpose) *of conferring; and Quintus Junius,*

quidam ex Hispanĭâ, qui jam antè
a certain (*person*) *from Spain, who already before*

consuevĕrat ventitare ad Ambiorĭgem,
(*this*) *had been accustomed to come-often to Ambiorix,*

missu Cæsăris. Apud quos Ambiŏrix
by the mission of Cæsar. At (before) *whom Ambiorix*

locutus-est in hunc mŏdum: "Sese confiteri
spoke unto this (in) *manner: "Himself to confess*

debere plurĭmum ĕi, pro beneficĭis Cæsăris
to owe very-much to him, for the kindnesses of Cæsar

in se, quòd opĕrâ ejus
unto himself, because by the assistance of him

liberatus-esset (pluperf. subj.) stipendĭo, quod
he had been freed from the tribute, which

consuêsset (pluperf. subj.) pendĕre sŭis finĭtĭmis
he had been accustomed to pay to his neighbours

Atuatĭcis; que quòd et filĭus et filĭus
the Atuatici; and because both (*his*) *son and the son*

fratris, quos Atuatĭci tenuissent (pluperf.
of (*his*) *brother, whom the Atuatici had held*

subj.) in servitute et catenis ăpud se,
in slavery and chains at (with) *themselves,*

missos numĕro obsĭdum, remissi-essent
being sent in the number of the hostages, had been sent-back

(pluperf. subj.) ab Cæsăre: nĕque fecisse id,
by Cæsar: nor to have done that,

quod fecĕrit (perf. subj.) de oppugnatione
which he has done about the storming

castrorum (pl.), aut judicĭo aut
of the camp, either from (*his-own*) *judgment or*

sŭâ voluntate, sed coactu civitatis: que
his-own will, but by compulsion of the state. and

sŭa imperĭa esse ejusmodi, ut
his-own authorities (power) *to be of this-sort, that*

multitudo haberet (imp. subj.) non mĭnus
the multitude did have not less

juris in se, quàm ipse in
of jurisdiction towards himself, than himself towards

multitudĭnem. Porrò hanc fuisse caussam
the multitude. Moreover this to have been the cause

belli civitati: quòd potuĕrit (perf. subj.)
of war to the state: because he was able

non resistĕre repentinæ conjuratione Gallorum;
not to withstand to the sudden conspiracy of the Gauls;

se posse probare id facĭlè ex sŭâ
himself to be-able to prove that easily from his-own

humilitate; quòd sit non adĕò
humbleness (weakness); *because he may be not so*

imperitus rerum, ut confidat se
unacquainted of (with) *things, that he may trust himself*

posse superare Romanum popŭlum sŭis
to be-able to overcome the Roman people with his

copĭis; sed esse commune consilĭum
forces; but (*the thing*) *to be the common design*

Gallĭæ. Hunc esse dictum dĭem omnĭbus
of Gaul. This to be the said (appointed) *day for all*

hibernis Cæsăris oppugnandis, ne qua
the winter-quarters of Cæsar to-be-assaulted, lest any

legĭo posset venire subsidĭo altĕri legioni:
legion might be-able to come to aid to another legion:

Gallos non facĭlè potuisse negare
Gauls not easily to have been-able to deny (*their help*)

Gallis; præsertim quum consilĭum videretur (imp.
to Gauls; especially when a design did seem

subj.) inĭtum de communi libertate
entered-into about (*their*) *common liberty*

recuperandâ. Quĭbus quoniam satisfecĕrit (perf.
to-be-recovered. To whom since he has satisfied

subj.) pro pietate, se habere
for (as regarded) *duty* (*to country*), *himself to have*

nunc rationem officĭi; monere Cæsărem pro
now a regard of moral-duty; to advise Cæsar for

beneficĭis, orare Titurĭum pro hospitĭo,
(*his*) *kindnesses, to beseech Titurius for* (*his*) *hospitality,*

ut consŭlat sŭæ saluti ac
that he may consult for his-own safety and (*that*)

milĭtum: magnam mănum Germanorum conductam
of the soldiers: a great band of Germans being hired

transîsse Rhenum; hanc affŏre
to have crossed the Rhine; this to-be-about-to-be-at-hand

bidŭo: esse consilĭum ipsorum,
in two-days: to be the counsel of themselves (that it was for

vĕlint-ne deducĕre
Sabinus and Cotta to consider), *whether they will to conduct*

milĭtes eductos ex hibernis aut ad
the soldiers led-out from winter-quarters either to

Ciceronem aut ad Labienum, prĭùs-quàm
Cicero or to Labienus, before-that (*their*)

finitĭmi sentĭant; alter quorum
neighbours may perceive (*it*); *the other* (one) *of whom*

absit (pres. subj.) circĭter quinquaginta millĭa
is distant about fifty thousands

passŭum, alter paullò amplĭùs: se polliceri
of paces, the other a little more: himself to promise

illud et confirmare jurejurando, se daturum
that and to affirm by oath, himself about-to-give

tutum ĭter per sŭos fines: quod quum
a safe journey through his territories: which when

facĭat, et sese consulĕre civitati, quòd
he may do, both himself to consult for the state, because

levetur hibernis, et referre
it may be relieved from the winter-quarters, and to return

gratĭam Cæsări pro meritis ejus." Hâc oratione
favour to Cæsar for the merits of him." This speech

habĭtâ, Ambiŏrix discedit.
being held (made), *Ambiorix departs.*

28. Caĭus Arpinĭus et Junĭus deferunt ad
Caius Arpinius and Junius report to

legatos quæ audierant. Illi
the lieutenants what (*things*) *they had heard. They*

perturbati repentinâ re, etsi ĕa
much-disturbed by the sudden affair, although those (*things*)

dicebantur ab hoste, tămen existimabant
were said by an enemy, however did think (*them*)

non negligenda: que maxĭmè permovebantur
not to-be-neglected: and especially were much alarmed

hâc re, quòd ĕrat vix credendum
by this affair, because it was hardly to-be-believed

ignobĭlem atque humĭlem civitatem Eburonum
the mean and humble state of the Eburones

ausam (-esse) facĕre bellum sŭâ sponte
to have dared to make war by its-own accord

Romano popŭlo. Ităque deferunt rem
to (*on*) *the Roman people. Therefore they report the matter*

ad concilĭum, que magna controversĭa existit
to a council, and a great controversy arises

inter ĕos. Lucĭus Aurunculeĭus que complures
between them. Lucius Aurunculeius and very-many

tribuni militum et centuriones primorum ordĭnum
tribunes of soldiers and centurions of the first ranks

existimabant "nĭhil agendum temĕrè, nĕque
did think "nothing to-be-acted rashly, nor

discedendum ex hibernis injussu
to-be-departed from winter-quarters without-command

Cæsăris." Docebant "quantasvis magnas
of Cæsar." They did teach (show) "*nowsoever great*

copĭas etĭam Germanorum posse sustineri,
forces even of Germans to-be-able to be withstood,

hibernis munitis." "Rem
the winter-quarters being fortified." "The thing (expe-

rience) esse testimonĭo, quòd sustinuĕrint
to be for a testimony, that they have withstood

(perf. subj.) fortissĭmè primum impĕtum hostĭum,
most-bravely the first attack of the enemies,

multis vulnerĭbus illatis ultrò
many wounds being brought-on (inflicted) *spontaneously.*

Non prĕmi frumentarĭâ re.
Not to be pressed by corn affair (by want of corn).

Interĕa subsidĭa conventura et ex
Meantime aids (*to be*) *about-to-assemble both from*

proxĭmis hibernis et à Cæsăre."
the nearest winter-quarters and from Cæsar."

Postremò, quid esse levĭus aut
Lastly, what to be (what could be) *lighter or*

turpĭus, quàm capĕre consilĭum de summis
more-base, than to take counsel about the most-important

rebus, hoste auctore?"
things, an enemy (*being*) *the adviser?"*

29. Contra ĕa Titurĭus clamitabat,
Against those (*reasonings*) *Titurius did often cry-out,*

"facturos serò, quum
"*about-to-do* (that they would do it) *too-late, when*

majores mănus hostĭum, Germanis adjunctis,
greater bands of the enemies, the Germans being united,

convenissent; aut quum alĭquid
should have assembled; or when some (*thing*)

calamitatis acceptum-esset in proxĭmis
of calamity might have been received in the nearest

hibernis. Occasionem consulendi esse
winter-quarters. The opportunity of consulting to be

brĕvem. Arbitrari Cæsărem
short. To suppose (that he supposed) *Cæsar*

profectum (-esse) in Italĭam: nĕque Carnutes
to have set-out into Italy: neither the Carnutes

alĭter fuisse capturos consilĭum Tasgetĭi
otherwise to have been about-to-take the counsel of Tasgetius

interficiendi; nĕque Eburones esse venturos
to-be-killed; neither the Eburones to be about-to-come

ad castra (pl.) cum tantâ contemptione nostrî,
to the camp with so great contempt of us,

si ille adesset (imp. subj.). Non spectare hostem
if he were-near. Not to regard the enemy

auctorem sed rem. Rhenum
(as) an adviser but the thing (circumstance). *The Rhine*

subesse: mortem Ariovisti et nostras
to be-near: the death of Ariovistus and our

superiores victorĭas, esse magno dolori
former victories, to be for great grief

Germanis: Gallĭam ardere tot
to the Germans: Gaul to burn (with rage) so-many

contumelĭis acceptis, redactam sub
insults being received, (being) reduced under

imperĭum Romani popŭli, superiore glorĭâ
the authority of the Roman people, the former glory

militaris rĕi extinctâ." Postremò,
of (its) military affair being extinguished." Lastly,

"quis persuaderet hoc sĭbi, Ambiorĭgem
"who should persuade this to himself, Ambiorix

descendisse ad consilĭum ejusmŏdi sĭne
to have descended to advice of this-kind without

certâ re? Sŭam sententĭam esse tutam
a sure thing (purpose)? *His opinion to be safe*

in utramque partem: si sit nil
unto either part (case): *if there-be nothing*

durĭus, perventuros (-esse) ad proxĭmam
harder (worse), *to be about-to-arrive to the nearest*

legionem cum nullo periculo; si omnis Gallĭa
legion with no danger; if all Gaul

consentĭat cum Germanis, unam
may agree (should combine) *with the Germans, the one*

salutem esse posĭtam in celeritate. Quĭdem
(only) *safety to be placed in speed. Indeed*

quem exĭtum consilĭum Cottæ atque eorum,
what issue the advice of Cotta and of those,

qui dissentirent, haberet? In quo
who might dissent (from him), might have? In which

si non præsens periculum, at certè
if (there be) not present danger, but surely

fămes esset pertimescenda longinquâ obsidione."
famine would be to-be-dreaded in a long siege."

30. Hâc disputatione habĭtâ in utramque
This dispute being held unto either

partem, quum resisteretur (imp. subj.) acrĭter
part (side), when it was opposed sharply

à Cottâ que primis ordinĭbus; Sabinus inquit,
by Cotta and the first ranks; Sabinus says,

"Vincĭte, si vultis ĭta," et id clariore
"*Prevail, if ye will (it) so.*" *and that with a louder*

voce, ut magna pars milĭtum exaudiret:
voice, that a great part of the soldiers might hear (him):

"nĕque sum is, inquit, ex vobis, qui
"*neither I am that (man), says he, out-of you, who*

terrĕar gravissĭmè periculo mortis.
may be affrighted most-severely by the danger of death.

Hi sapĭent; et, si quid
These (men) will be-wise (by experience); and, if any

gravĭus acciderit, reposcent
(thing) more-severe shall have happened, they will demand

rationem abs te: qui, si licĕat
an account from thee: who, if it be-lawful (be permitted)

per te, conjuncti cum proxĭmis hibernis
by thee, being united with the nearest winter-quarters

dĭe perendĭno, sustinĕant communem
on the day after-to-morrow, may support a common

casum cum relĭquis; nec rejecti et relegati
chance with the rest; nor thrown-back and banished

longè ab cætĕris, intereant aut ferro
far from the rest, may perish either by iron (the

aut fāme." Consurgĭtur ex
sword) *or by famine." It is risen* (they rise) *from*

concilĭo: comprehendunt utrumque et orant;
the council: they lay-hold-of each and beseech;

"ne-deducant rem in summum
"*they may not-bring the thing into the highest*

periculum sŭâ dissensione et pertinaciâ: rem
danger by their dissension and obstinacy: the thing

esse facĭlem, seu manĕant seu proficiscantur,
to be easy, whether they may remain or may set-out,

si mŏdò omnes sentĭant ac prŏbent unum.
if only all may think and may approve one

Contrà, se perspicĕre nullam
(*thing*). *On-the-other-hand, themselves to perceive no*

salutem in dissensione." Res perducĭtur
safety in dissension." The thing is protracted

disputatione ad mediam noctem.
by dispute to middle night.

31. Tandem Cotta permotus dat mănus:
At-length Cotta being moved gives hands (yields):

sententĭa Sabini supĕrat. Pronuntiatur
the opinion of Sabinus prevails. It is declared (*them*

ituros primâ luce. Relĭqua
about-to-go in the first light (day-break). *The rest* (remaining)

pars noctis consumĭtur vigilĭis: quum quisque
part of the night is spent in watchings; when each

miles circumspicĕret (imp. subj.) sŭa,
soldier did look-around-for his own (*things*),

quid posset portare cum se, quid
what he might be-able to carry with himself, what

cogeretur relinquĕre ex instrumento
he might be compelled to leave out-of the furniture

hibernorum. Omnĭa excogitantur,
of the winter-quarters. All (*things*) *are devised,*

quare maneatur ne sĭne
wherefore (in order that) *it may be remained* *not* *without*

periculo, et periculum augeatur languore
danger, *and* *the danger* *may be increased* *by the languor*

et vigiliis militum. Proficiscuntur
and *by the watchings* *of the soldiers.* *They set-out*

primâ luce ex castris (pl.) sic, ut quĭbus
in the first *light* *from* *the camp* *so,* *as* *to whom*

esset (imp. subj.) persuasum consilĭum dătum-esse
it was *persuaded* *advice* *to have been given*

non ab hoste, sed ab amicissĭmo homĭne
not *by* *an enemy,* *but* *by* *a most-friendly* *man*

Ambiorĭge, longissĭmo agmĭne que magnis
Ambiorix, *in a very-long* *line* *and* *with great*

impedimentis.
baggage trains.

32. At posteăquàm hostes senserunt de
But *after-that* *the enemies* *perceived* *about*

profectione eorum ex nocturno fremĭtu que
the departure *of them* *from* *the nightly* *bustle* *and*

vigiliis, insidiis collocatis bipartitò
watchings, *ambuscades* *being placed* *in two-divisions*

in silvis, opportuno atque occulto lŏco,
in *the woods,* *in a convenient* *and* *secret* *place,*

expectabant adventum Romanorum à
they did await *the approach* *of the Romans* *from* (at)

circĭter duobus millĭbus passŭum: et quum
about *two* *thousands* *of paces:* *and* *when*

major pars agmĭnis demisisset (pluperf. subj.)
the greater *part* *of the troop* *had sent-down*

se in magnam convallem, ostenderunt sese
itself *into* *a great* *valley,* *they showed* *themselves*

subĭtò ex utrâque parte ejus vallis; que
suddenly *from* *each* *part* *of that* *valley;* *and*

cœperunt premĕre novissĭmos et prohibere
began *to press* *the newest* (hindmost) *and* *to hinder*

primos adscensu, atque committĕre prœlĭum
the first *from the ascent,* *and* *to engage* *battle*

lŏco iniquissĭmo nostris.
in a place *most-unfavourable* *to our* (*men*)

33. Tum demum Titurĭus trepidare,
Then *at-last* *Titurius* (*began*) *to tremble,*

concursare que disponĕre cohortes, ŭtî qui
to hurry *and* *to arrange* *the cohorts,* *as* (*a man*) *who*

providisset (pluperf. subj.) nĭhil antè: tămen,
had foreseen *nothing* *before:* *however,*

hæc ipsa timĭdè, atque ut
(*he did*) *these* (*things*) *themselves* *timidly,* *and* *as* (*-if*)

omnĭa viderentur (imp. subj.) deficĕre. At
all (*things*) *did seem* *to fail* (*him*). *But*

Cotta, qui cogitâsset (pluperf. subj.) hæc
Cotta, *who* *had thought* *these* (*things*)

posse accidĕre in itinĕre, atque ob
to be-able *to happen* *on* *the march,* *and* *on-account-of*

ĕam caussam fuisset (pluperf. subj.) non auctor
that *reason* *had been* *not* *the adviser*

profectionis, deĕrat communi saluti in
of the departure, *was wanting* *to the common* *safety* *in*

nullâ re; et præstabat officĭa imperatoris
no *thing;* *and* *did perform* *the duties* *of a general*

in militĭbus appellandis que cohortandis;
in *the soldiers* *to-be-addressed* *and* *to-be-encouraged;*

et militis in pugnâ. Que quum propter
and *of a soldier* *in* *the battle.* *And* *when* *on-account-of*

longitudĭnem agmĭnis, possent (imp. subj.) mĭnùs
the length *of the troop,* *they were able* *less*

facĭlè obire omnĭa per
easily *to go-through* (discharge) *all* (*things*) *by*

se, et providere, quid esset faciendum
themselves, *and* *to provide,* *what* *might be* *to-be-done*

quoque lŏco; jusserunt pronuntiari, ut
in every *place;* *they ordered* (*it*) *to be announced,* *that*

relinquĕrent impedimenta atque consistĕrent
they should leave the baggages and should stand-together

in orbem. Quod consilĭum, etsi est non
into a circle. Which plan, although it is not

reprehendendum in casu ejusmŏdi, tămen
to-be-blamed in a case of this-kind, however

accĭdit incommŏdè: nam minŭit spem nostris
happened untowardly: for it diminished hope to our

militĭbus, et effecit hostes alacriores
soldiers, and rendered the enemies more-alert

ad-pugnandum; quòd id videbatur factum (-esse)
to-fighting; because that did seem to have been done

non sĭne summo timore et desperatione.
not without the highest fear and desperation.

Præterĕa accĭdit, quod ĕrat necesse fiĕri,
Besides it happened, what was necessary to be done,

ut milĭtes discederent (imp. subj.) vulgò
that the soldiers did depart in-common

ab signis; «que quisque eorum properaret
from the standards; and every-one of them did hasten

(imp. subj.) petĕre atque arripĕre ab impedimentis,
to seek and to seize from the bagguges,

quæ habĕret carissĭma; et omnĭa
what (things) he might hold most-dear; and all (places)

complerentur (imp. subj.) clamore ac fletu.
were filled with noise and with weeping.

34. At consilĭum defŭit non barbăris.
But counsel was-wanting not to the barbarians.

Nam dŭces eorum jusserunt pronuntiari
For the leaders of them commanded (it) to be announced

totâ acĭe, "ne quis discederet
in the whole line, "that-not any (one) should depart

ab lŏco: quæcunque Romani
from (his) place: whatsoever (things) the Romans

reliquissent, esse prædam illorum, atque
might have left, to be the plunder of them, and

reservari illis: proinde existimarent
to be reserved *for them:* *wherefore* *they should think*

omnĭa posĭta in victorĭâ." Nostri ĕrant
all (things) *placed* *in* *victory."* *Our (men)* *were*

păres pugnando et virtute et numĕro:
equal *in fighting* *both* *in valour* *and* *in number:*

tametsi deserebantur à dŭce et
although *they were deserted* *by* *(their) general* *and* *by*

fortunâ, tămen ponebant omnem spem salutis
fortune, *however* *they did place* *all* *hope* *of safety*

in virtute; et quotĭes quæque cŏhors
in *valour;* *and* *as-often-as* *every* *cohort*

procurrĕret (imp. subj.), magnus numĕrus
did-run-forward (did charge), *a great* *number*

hostĭum cadebat ab ĕâ parte. Quâ
of the enemies *did fall* *from* (on) *that* *part.* *Which*

re animadversâ, Ambiŏrix jussit pronuntiari,
thing *being observed,* *Ambiorix* *ordered (it)* *to be announced,*

ut conjicĭant tela prŏcul neu
that *they may cast* *(their) darts* *from-a-distance,* *nor*

accedant propĭùs; et in quam partem
may-approach *nearer;* *and* *into* *what (-ever)* *part*

Romani fecĕrint impĕtum, cedant;
the Romans *shall have made* *an attack,* *they may give-way;*

nĭhil posse noceri ĭis levitate
nothing *to be-able* *to be injured* *to them* *by the lightness*

armorum et quotidianâ exercitatione:
of (their) arms *and* *by daily* *exercise:*

insequantur recipientes se rursus ad
they may pursue *(them) betaking* *themselves* *again* *to*

signa.
the standards.

35. Quo præcepto observato diligentissĭmè
Which *precept* *being observed* *most-carefully*

ab ĭis, quum quæpĭam cŏhors excessĕrat ex
by *them,* *when* *any* *cohort* *had gone-out* *out-of*

orbe, atque fecĕrat impĕtum, hostes
the circle, and had made an attack, the enemies

refugiebant velocissĭmè; intĕrim ĕrat necesse
did flee-back most-swiftly; meantime it was necessary

nudari ĕâ parte, et tela recĭpi
to be exposed in that part, and darts to be received

ab aperto latĕre. Rursus, quum cœpĕrant
from the open flank. Again, when they had begun

reverti in ĕum lŏcum, unde egressi-ĕrant,
to return into that place, whence they had gone-out,

circumveniebantur et ab ĭis, qui cessĕrant
they were surrounded both by those, who had given-way

et ab ĭis, qui stetĕrant proxĭmi; autem sin
and by those, who had stood nearest; but if

vellent (imp. subj.) tenere lŏcum, nĕque
they did will to hold (their) place, neither

lŏcus relinquebatur virtuti, nĕque
a place (opportunity) *was left for valour, neither*

conferti potĕrant vitare tela conjecta à
crowded were they able to avoid the darts hurled by

tantâ multitudĭne. Tămen conflictati
so-great a multitude. However having struggled

tam-multis incommŏdis, multis vulnerĭbus
with so-many disadvantages, many wounds

acceptis, resistebant; et magnâ parte
being received, they did withstand; and a great part

diei consumptâ, committebant nĭhil, quod
of the day being spent, they did commit nothing, which

esset indignum ipsis (abl.), quum
might be unworthy themselves, when (although)

pugnaretur (imp. subj.) à primâ luce ad octavam
it was fought from the first light to the eighth

horam. Tum utrumque fĕmur transjicĭtur
hour (two o'clock). *Then each thigh is pierced*

tragŭlâ Tito Balventĭo, forti vĭro, et
with a dart to Titus Balventius. a brave man, and

magnæ auctoritatis, qui duxĕrat primum pilum
of great authority, who had led the first javelin

superiore anno. Quintus
(had been first centurion) *in the former year. Quintus*

Lucanĭus ejusdem ordĭnis pugnans fortissĭmè
Lucanius of the same rank fighting most-bravely

interficĭtur, dum subvĕnit filĭo circumvento.
is slain, whilst he aids to (his) son having been surrounded.

Lucĭus Cotta, legatus adhortans omnes
Lucius Cotta, the lieutenant encouraging all

cohortes que ordĭnes, vulneratur fundâ in
the cohorts and ranks, is wounded with a sling on

adversum os.
the opposite face.

36. Quintus Titurĭus permotus his rebus,
Quintus Titurius much-alarmed by these things,

quum conspexisset (pluperf. subj.) Ambiorĭgem
when he had beheld Ambiorix

prŏcul cohortantem sŭos, mittit sŭum
at-a-distance exhorting his (men), sends his

interprĕtem, Cnæĭum Pompeĭum ad ĕum, rogatum,
interpreter, Cnæius Pompey to him, to beseech,

"ut parcat sĭbi que militĭbus.
"*that he may spare to himself and to the soldiers.*

Ille appellatus respondit, "licere
He being called answered, "to be-lawful (that he

collŏqui secum, si vĕlit:
permitted) *to confer with-himself, if he may-will:*

sperare posse impetrari à multitudĭne,
to hope to be-able to be obtained from the multitude,

quod pertinĕat ad salutem militum: verò
what may relate to the safety of the soldiers: but

nĭhil nocĭtum-iri ipsi: que se
nothing to be about-to-be-hurt to himself: and himself

interponĕre sŭam fĭdem in ĕam rem."
to interpose (to pledge) *his faith unto that thing."*

Ille communĭcat cum saucĭo Cottâ; "si
He communicates (this) with the wounded Cotta; "if

videatur, ut excedant pugnâ,
it may seem (fit), that they may retire from the battle,

et colloquantur unà cum Ambiorĭge; se
and may confer together with Ambiorix; himself

sperare posse impetrari ab ĕo de
to hope to be-able to be-obtained from him about

sŭâ salute ac milĭtum." Cotta nĕgat
his-own safety and (that) of the soldiers." Cotta denies

se iturum ad armatum hostem atque
himself about-to-go to an armed enemy and

persevĕrat in ĕo. (37.) Sabinus jŭbet tribuno
perseveres in that. Sabinus orders the tribunes

milĭtum, quos habebat circum se in-præsentĭâ,
of soldiers, whom he did have about himself at-present,

et centuriones primorum ordĭnum, sĕqui
and the centurions of the first ranks, to follow

se; et quum accessisset (pluperf. subj.)
himself; and when he had approached

propĭùs Ambiorĭgem, jussus abjicĕre
nearer Ambiorix, being ordered to throw-away

arma, făcit imperatum, que impĕrat
(his) arms, he does (the thing) commanded, and commands

sŭis, ut facĭant ĭdem. Intĕrim,
to his (men), that they may do the same. Mean-time,

dum ăgunt inter se de
whilst they act (treat) between themselves about

conditionĭbus, que longĭor sermo instituĭtur
conditions, and a longer speech is framed

consultò ab Ambiorĭge, circumventus paullatim
designedly by Ambiorix, being surrounded gradually

interfĭcĭtur. Tum verò conclamant victorĭam atque
he is killed. Then truly they shout victory and

tollunt ululatum sŭo more que impĕtu
raise a howl in their manner, and an attack

facto in nostros, perturbant ordĭnes.
being made upon our (men), they disorder the ranks.

Ibi Lucĭus Cotta pugnans interficĭtur, cum
There Lucius Cotta fighting is killed, with

maxĭmâ parte milĭtum: relĭqui recipĭunt
the greatest part of the soldiers: the rest betake

se in castra (pl.), unde egressi-ĕrant.
themselves into the camp, whence they had gone-out.

Ex quĭbus Lucĭus Petrosidĭus aquilĭfer
Out-of whom Lucius Petrosidius the eagle-bearer

projecit aquĭlam intra vallum, cum
(ensign) *cast the eagle within the rampart, when*

premeretur (imp. subj.) magnâ multitudĭne
he was pressed by a great multitude

hostĭum; ipse pugnans fortissĭmè pro
of the enemies; himself fighting most-bravely before

castris (pl.) occidĭtur. Alĭi ægrè sustĭnent
the camp is slain. The others hardly support

oppugnationem ad noctem; ipsi omnes
the assault to (until) night; themselves all

ad unum, salute desperatâ, interficĭunt
to one (to a man), safety being despaired-of, kill

se noctu. Pauci elapsi ex prœlĭo
themselves by night. A few having escaped from the battle

pervenĭunt incertis itinerĭbus per silvas
arrive by uncertain routes through the woods

ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna;
to Titus Labienus the lieutenant into winter-quarters;

atque facĭunt ĕum certiorem de
and make him more-sure (inform him) of

rebus gestis.
the things carried-on.

38. Ambiŏrix sublatus hâc victorĭâ, stătim
Ambiorix elated by this victory, immediately

proficiscĭtur cum equitatu in Atuatĭcos,
sets-out with (his) cavalry unto the Atuatici,

qui ĕrant finitĭmi regno ejus; nĕque
who were bordering to the kingdom of him; neither

intermittit dĭem nĕque noctem; que jŭbet
does he intermit day nor night; and he orders

peditatum subsĕqui se. Re demonstratâ,
the infantry to follow himself. The affair being shown,

que Atuatĭcis concitatis, pervĕnit postĕro
and the Atuatici being roused-up, he arrives in the following

dĭe in Nervĭos, que hortatur
day unto the Nervii, and exhorts (them)

"ne-dimittant occasionem sŭi
"they may not-let-slip the opportunity of themselves

liberandi in-perpetŭum, atque ulciscendi Romanos
to-be-freed for-ever, and of avenging the Romans

pro ĭis injurĭis, quas accepĕrint (perf. subj.)":"
for those injuries, which they have received:"

demonstrat "dŭos legatos interfectos-esse, que
he shows "two lieutenants to have been killed, and

magnam partem exercĭtûs interîsse: nĭhil
a great part of the army to have perished: nothing

negotĭi esse, legionem subĭtò
of business (trouble) to be, the legion suddenly

oppressam, quæ hiĕmet (pres. subj.) cum
being overwhelmed, which winter with

Cicerone, interfĭci:" profitetur "se adjutorem
Cicero, to be slain:" he declares "himself a helper

ad ĕam rem."
to that thing."

39. Persuadet Nervĭis facĭlè hâc oratione.
He persuades to the Nervii easily by this speech.

Ităque nuncĭis dimissis confestim ad
Therefore messengers being dismissed immediately to

Centrones, Grudĭos, Levăcos, Pleumosĭos, Gordunos,
the Centrones, Grudii, Levaci, Pleumosii, Gordüni,

qui omnes sunt sub imperĭo eorum,
who all are under the authority of them,

cogunt mănus quàm maxĭmas possunt; et
they collect bands as greatest they can; and

advŏlant de-improviso ad hiberna Ciceronis,
fly unexpectedly to the winter-quarters of Cicero,

famâ de morte Titurĭi nondum
the report about the death of Titurius not-yet

perlatâ ad ĕum. Accĭdit quŏque huic,
being brought to him. It happened also to him,

quod fŭit necesse, ut nonnulli milĭtes, qui
which was necessary, that some soldiers, who

discessissent (pluperf. subj.) in silvas caussâ
had departed into the woods by cause (for

lignationis que munitionis
the purpose) *of wood-cutting and of fortification*

interciperentur (imp. subj.) repentino adventu
were cut-off by the sudden arrival

equĭtum. His circumventis, Eburones,
of (*their*) *cavalry. These being surrounded, the Eburones,*

Atuatĭci, Nervĭi, atque socĭi et clientes
Atuatici, Nervii, and the allies and dependants

omnĭum horum, incipĭunt oppugnare legionem
of all these, begin to assault the legion

magnâ mănu. Nostri celerĭter concurrunt
with a great band. Our (*men*) *quickly ran-together*

ad arma; conscendunt vallum. Is dĭes
to arms; they mount the rampart. That day

sustentatur ægrè, quòd hostes ponebant
is supported hardly, because the enemies did place

omnem spem in celeritate, atque adepti
all hope in expedition, and having obtained

hanc victorĭam, confidebant se fŏre
this victory, they did trust themselves to be about-to-be

victores in-perpetŭum.
conquerors for-ever.

40. Litĕræ mittuntur confestim ad
Letters (a letter) *are sent immediately to*

Cæsărem à Cicerone, magnis præmĭis propositis,
Cæsar by Cicero, great rewards being proposed,

si pertulissent. Omnĭbus vĭis
if they might have carried (it). All the ways

obsessis, missi intercipiuntur. Centum
being blocked-up, (those) sent are intercepted. A hundred

et viginti turres excitantur incredibĭli celeritate
and twenty towers are raised with incredible speed

noctu ex ĕâ materĭâ, quam com-
by night out-of that material, which they had

portavĕrant caussâ munitionis.
brought-together by cause (for the purpose) *of fortification.*

Quæ videbantur deesse opĕri
What (things) did seem to be-wanting to the work

perficiuntur. Hostes, multò majorĭbus copĭis
are completed. The enemies, by-much greater forces

coactis, oppugnant castra (pl.) postĕro
being collected, assault the camp on the following

dĭe, complent fossam. Resistĭtur à nostris
day, they fill-up the trench. It is withstood by our

eâdem ratione, quâ prĭdĭe: hoc
(*men*) *in the same manner, in which the day-before: this*

ĭdem fit deinceps relĭquis
same (thing) is done afterwards on the rest (remaining)

diebus. Nulla pars nocturni tempŏris intermittĭtur
days. No part of the nightly time is intermitted

ad laborem: facultas quietis dătur non ægris,
to labour: a power of rest is given not to the sick,

non vulneratis. Quæcunque sunt ŏpus
not to the wounded. Whatsoever (things) are necessary

ad oppugnationem · proxĭmi diei, comparantur
to the assault of the next day, are prepared

noctu. Multæ sŭdes præustæ, magnus
by night. Many stakes burnt-at-the-point, a great

numĕrus muralĭum pilorum instituĭtur; turres
number of mural javelins is prepared; towers

contabulantur; pinnæ que loricæ attexuntur
are raised; battlements and parapets are woven

ex cratĭbus. Cicĕro ipse, quum
out-of hurdles. Cicero himself, when (although)

esset (imp. subj.) tenuissĭmâ valetudĭne, relinquebat
he was in very-delicate health, did leave

ne quĭdem nocturnum tempus sĭbi ad
not indeed (even) *the nightly time to himself to*

quietem; ut cogeretur (imp. subj.) parcĕre
rest; (so) that he was compelled to spare

sĭbi ultrò concursu
to himself spontaneously (in spite of himself) *by the running*

ac vocĭbus militum.
and voices (*of entreaty*) *of the soldiers.*

41. Tunc dŭces que princĭpes Nerviorum,
Then the leaders and chiefs of the Nervii,

qui habebant alĭquem adĭtum sermonis que
who did have some access of speech and

caussam amicitĭæ cum Cicerone, dicunt
cause of friendship with Cicero, say

sese velle collŏqui. Potestate
themselves to will to confer (*with him*). *The power* (liberty)

factâ, commemŏrant eădem, quæ
being made, they narrate the same (*things*), *which*

Ambiŏrix egĕrat cum Titurĭo: "Omnem
Ambiorix had acted (done) *with Titurius:* "*All*

Gallĭam esse in armis: Germanos transîsse
Gaul to be in arms: the Germans to have crossed

Rhenum: hiberna Cæsăris que reliquorum
the Rhine: the winter-quarters of Cæsar and of the rest

oppugnari." Addunt etĭam de morte
to be stormed." *They add also about the death*

Sabini. Ostentant Ambiorĭgem caussâ
of Sabinus. They display Ambiorix by cause (for the

fidĕi faciundæ. Dicunt "ĕos
purpose) *of faith* (credit) *to-be-made. They say* "*these*

errare, si sperent quidquam præsidĭi
to mistake, if they may hope any of protection

ab ĭis, qui diffidant (pres. subj.) sŭis
from those, who distrust to their-own

rebus: tămen sese esse hoc anĭmo
affairs: however themselves to be with this mind

in Ciceronem que Romanum popŭlum, ut
unto Cicero and the Roman people, that

recusent nĭhil, nĭsi hiberna, atque
they may refuse nothing, unless the winter-quarters, and

nolint hanc consuetudĭnem inveterascĕre:
may be-unwilling this custom to become-old

licere illis discedĕre
(established): *to be-lawful for them to depart*

incolumĭbus per se ex
safe by themselves (by their permission) *out-of*

hibernis, et proficisci sĭne mĕtu in
the winter-quarters, and to set-out without fear into

quascunque partes vĕlint." Cicĕro respondit
whatever parts they may will." Cicero answered

mŏdò unum ad hæc: "Non esse
only one (*thing*) *to these: "Not to be*

consuetudĭnem Romani popŭli accipĕre ullam
the custom of the Roman people to receive any

conditionem ab armato hoste: si vĕlint
condition from an armed enemy: if they may will

discedĕre ab armis, utantur se adjutore,
to depart from arms, they may use himself (*as*) *a helper*

que mittant legatos ad Cæsărem:
(an advocate), *and may send ambassadors to Cæsar*

se sperare impetraturos, quæ
himself to hope them (*to be*) *about-to-obtain, what*

petiĕrint, pro justitĭâ ejus."
they may have sought, on-account-of the justice of him."

42. Nervĭi repulsi ab hâc spe,
The Nervii being repulsed from this hope,

cingunt hiberna vallo undĕcim
surround the winter-quarters with a rampart of eleven

pĕdum et fossâ quindĕcim pĕdum. Cognovĕrant
feet and a ditch of fifteen feet. They had known

hæc et à nostris consuetudĭne
(learned) *these* (*things*) *also from our* (*men*) *by the custom*

superiorum annorum; et nacti quosdam
of former years; and having got some

captivos de exercĭtu, docebantur ab his.
prisoners of (*our*) *army, they were taught by these.*

Sed nulla copĭa ferramentorum his,
But (*there was*) *no supply of iron-tools to these,*

quæ esset idonĕa ad hunc usum.
which might be fit to (for) *this use.*

Cogebantur circumcidĕre cespĭtem gladĭis,
They were forced to cut-round the green-turf with swords,

exhaurire terram manĭbus que
to draw-out (dig-out) *the earth with* (*their*) *hands and*

sagŭlis. Ex quâ re quĭdem,
(*carry it*) *in cloaks. From which thing indeed,*

multitudo homĭnum potŭit cognosci. Nam
the multitude of men was-able to be known. For

mĭnŭs tribus horis perfecerunt munitionem
in less (*than*) *three hours they finished a fortification*

quindĕcim millĭum passŭum in circuĭtu. Que
of fifteen thousands of paces in compass. And

cœperunt parare ac facĕre turres relĭquis
they began to prepare and to make towers on the rest

diebus ad altitudĭnem valli;
(remaining) *days to the height of the rampart;*

falces que testudines, quas iidem captivi
scythes and mantelets, which the same prisoners

docuĕrant.
had taught (*them*).

43. Septĭmo die oppugnationis, maxĭmo
In the seventh day of the siege, a very-great

vento coorto, cœperunt jacĕre fundis
wind having arisen, they began to throw with slings

ferventes glandes ex fusĭli argillâ, et fervefacta
hot balls of fusible clay, and heated

jacŭla in căsas, quæ tectæ-ĕrant
darts on the cottages which had been covered

stramentis Gallĭco more. Hæ comprehenderunt
with straws in the Gallic manner. These caught

ignem celerĭter, et magnitudĭne venti,
fire quickly, and from the greatness of the wind,

distulerunt in omnem lŏcum castrorum (pl.).
carried (it) into every place of the camp.

Hostes insecuti maxĭmo clamore,
The enemies having followed with a very-great shout,

quăsi victorĭâ partâ atque exploratâ
as-if the victory being obtained and examined

jam, cœperunt agĕre turres
(assured) *already, began to act* (put in motion) *the towers*

que testudĭnes et ascendĕre vallum scalis.
and mantelets and to mount the rampart with ladders

At tanta fŭit virtus atque præsentĭa anĭmi
But so-great was the valour and the presence of mind

milĭtum, ut, quum torrerentur (imp. subj.)
of the soldiers, that, when they were scorched

flammâ undĭque, que premerentur (imp. subj.)
by the flame on-every-side, and were pressed

maxĭmâ multitudĭne telorum, que
with a very-great multitude of weapons, and

intelligĕrent (imp. subj.) omnĭa sŭa impedimenta
did understand all their bagguges

atque omnes fortunas conflagrare, non mŏdò
and all (their) fortunes to be-on-fire, not only

nemo decedĕret (imp. subj.) de vallo
no-one did depart from the rampart

caussâ demigrandi, sed quisquam ne
by cause (for the sake) *of going-away, but any-one*

quĭdem penè respicĕret (imp. subj.); ac tum
indeed (even) *hardly* *did look-back;* *and* *then*

omnes pugnarent (imp. subj.) acerrĭmè que
all *did fight* *most-vigorously* *and*

fortissĭmè. Hic dĭes fŭit longè gravissĭmus
most-bravely. *This* *day* *was* *by-far* *the most-severe*

nostris; sed tămen habŭit hunc eventum, ut
to our (*men*); *but* *however* *it had* *this* *issue,* *that*

ĕo dĭe maxĭmus numĕrus hostĭum vulneraretur
on that day *the greatest* *number* *of the enemies* *was wounded*

(imp. subj.) atque interficeretur (imp. sub.); ut
and *was killed;* (*so*) *that*

constipavĕrant se sub vallo ipso,
they had crowded *themselves* *under* *the rampart* *itself,*

que ultĭmi dăbant non recessum primis. Quĭdem
and *the last* *did give* *not* *a retreat* *to the first.* *Indeed*

flammâ intermissâ paullŭlùm, et turri
the flame *being interrupted* *a very-little,* *and* *a tower*

adactâ quodam lŏco, et contingente
being forced-up *in a certain* *place,* *and* *touching*

vallum, centuriones tertĭæ cohortis
the rampart, *the centurions* *of the third* *cohort*

recesserunt ex ĕo lŏco, quo stabant,
retired *out-of* *that* *place,* *in which* *they did stand,*

que removerunt omnes sŭos; cœperunt
and *removed* *all* *their* (*men*); *they began*

vocâre hostes nutu que vocĭbus, "si
to call *the enemies* *by nod* *and* *by sayings,* "*if*

vellent introïre:" nemo quorum ausus-est
they might will *to enter:*" *no-one* *of whom* *dared*

progrĕdi. Tum deturbati (-sunt) lapidĭbus conjectis
to advance. *Then* *they were beaten-off* *by stones* *thrown*

ex omni parte, que turris succensa-est.
from *every* *part,* *and* *the tower* *was set-on-fire.*

44. Erant in ĕâ legione fortissĭmi
There were *in* *that* *legion* (*two*) *very-brave*

vĭri, centuriones, Titus Pulfĭo et Lucĭus Varenus,
men, centurions, Titus Pulfio and Lucius Varenus,

qui jam appropinquarent (imp. subj.) primis
who now did approach to the first

ordinĭbus. Hi habebant perpetŭas
ranks (of centurions). These did have constant

controversĭas inter se, ŭter
controversies between themselves, whether of-the-two

anteferretur altĕri; que contendebant
should be preferred to the other; and they did contend

summis simultatĭbus de lŏco
with the highest bickerings about place (precedence)

omnĭbus annis. Ex ĭis Pulfĭo inquit,
in all years. Out-of those Pulfio says,

quum pugnaretur (imp. subj.) acerrĭmè ad
when it was fought most-vigorously at

munitiones, "Quid dubĭtas, Varene?
the fortifications, "Why dost thou hesitate, O Varenus?

aut quem lŏcum tŭæ virtutis probandæ
or what place (opportunity) *of thy valour to-be-proved*

exspectas? Hic dĭes, hic dĭes judicabit
dost thou wait-for? This day, this day shall decide

de nostris controversĭis." Quum dixisset (pluperf.
about our disputes." When he had said

subj.) hæc, procedit extra munitiones,
these (words), he advances without the fortifications,

et quæ pars hostĭum visa-est confertissĭma,
and what part of the enemies seemed most-dense,

irrumpit in ĕam. Nec Varenus quĭdem
he rushes-in into that. Neither Varenus indeed

tum contĭnet sese vallo; sed verĭtus
then restrains himself on the rampart; but having feared

existimationem omnĭum, subsequitur, mediocri
the opinion of all, he follows-closely, a moderate

spatĭo relicto. Pulfĭo mittit pilum in
distance being left. Pulfio sends (his) javelin against

hostes, atque transjĭcit unum ex multitudĭne
the enemies, and transfixes one out-of the multitude

procurrentem: quo percusso et exanimato,
running-forward: who being struck and laid-senseless,

hostes protĕgunt hunc scutis, et
the enemies protect him with (their) shields, and

universi conjiciunt tela in illum,
all hurl (their) darts upon him (Pulfio),

nĕque dant facultatem regrediendi.
neither do they give (him) a power of returning.

Scutum transfigĭtur Pulfioni et verŭtum
The shield is transpierced for Pulfio (Pulfio's shield) *and a dart*

defigĭtur in baltĕo. Hic casus avertit
is fixed in (his) belt. This misfortune turns-away

vaginam et moratur dextram mănum
the scabbard and retards the right hand (of him)

conantis educĕre gladĭum, que hostes
endeavouring to draw-out (his) sword, and the enemies

circumsistunt impeditum. Varenus inimicus
surround (him) entangled. Varenus (his) rival

succurrit illi, et subvĕnit laboranti.
succours to him, and comes-up (to him) labouring (in

Omnis multitudo confestim convertit
distress). *All the multitude immediately turns*

se à Pulfione ad hunc. Arbitrantur
itself from Pulfio to this (Varenus). *They think*

illum transfixum verŭto. Illĭc verò
him (Pulfio) *run-through with the dart. There truly*

Varenus occursat ocĭùs gladĭo que
Varenus runs-up very-quickly with (his) sword and

gĕrit rem comĭnùs; atque uno
carries-on the affair hand-to-hand; and one

interfecto, propellit relĭquos paullùm. Dum
being killed, he repulses the rest a little. Whilst

instat cupidĭùs dejectus concĭdit
he presses-on more eagerly, being thrown-down he fell

in inferiorem lŏcum. Pulfĭo rursus fert
upon a lower place. Pulfio again brings

subsidĭum huic circumvento; atque ambo incolŭmes,
aid to him surrounded; and both safe,

complurĭbus interfectis, recipĭunt sese
several (of the enemy) being killed, betake themselves

cum summâ laude intra munitiones. Sic
with the highest praise within the fortifications. Thus

fortuna versavit utrumque in contentione et
fortune turned each in (their) strife and

certamĭne, ut alter inimicus esset (imp.
contest, (so) that the other (one) rival was

subj.) auxilĭo que saluti altĕri; nĕque
for aid and safety to the other; neither

posset (imp. subj.) dijudicari, ŭter
was it able to be decided, whether-of-the-two

videretur anteferendus ŭtri virtute.
should seem to-be-preferred to which-one in valour.

45. Quantò gravĭor atque asperĭor
By how-much more-severe and more-rough

oppugnatĭo ĕrat indĭes, et maxĭmè
(desperate) *the siege was daily, and chiefly*

quòd, magnâ parte milĭtum confectâ
because, a great part of the soldiers being spent

vulnerĭbus, res pervenĕrat ad paucitatem
with wounds, the thing had come to fewness

defensorum; tantò crebriores litĕræ que
of defenders; by so-much more-frequent letters and

nuncĭi mittebantur ad Cæsărem; pars quorum
messengers were sent to Cæsar; part of whom

deprehensa necabatur cum cruciatu in conspectu
being caught was put-to-death with torture in sight

nostrorum milĭtum. Erat unus Nervĭus intùs,
of our soldiers. There was one Nervian within,

nomĭne Vertĭco, natus honesto lŏco,
by name Vertico, born in honourable place (rank).

qui profugĕrat ad Ciceronem à primâ obsidione,
who had fled to Cicero from the first siege,

que præstitĕrat sŭam fĭdem êi. Hic
and had exhibited his fidelity to him. This (person)

persuadet servo, spe libertatis que magnis
persuades to a slave, by the hope of liberty and by great

præmĭis, ut deferat litĕras (plur.) ad
rewards, that he may carry a letter to

Cæsărem. Ille affert has illigatas in
Cæsar. He carries these (this letter) tied-up on

jacŭlo; et Gallus versatus inter Gallos
a javelin; and the Gaul being engaged among Gauls

sine ullâ suspicĭone, pervenit ad Cæsărem.
without any suspicion, arrives to Cæsar.

Cognoscit ab ĕo de periculo Ciceronis
He knows (learns) from him of the danger of Cicero

que legionis.
and of the legion.

46. Cæsar, litĕris (plur.) acceptis circĭter
Cæsar, the letter being received about

undecĭmâ horâ diei, mittit nuncĭum
in the eleventh hour of the day, sends a messenger

statim ad Marcum Crassum quæstorem in
immediately to Marcus Crassus the quæstor unto

Bellovăcos, cujus hiberna abĕrant ab
the Bellovaci, whose winter-quarters were-distant from

ĕo viginti quinque millĭa passŭum. Jŭbet
him twenty five thousands of paces. He orders

legionem proficisci mediâ nocte, que venire
the legion to set-out in middle night, and to come

celerĭter ad se. Crassus exĭit cum
speedily to himself. Crassus came-out with

nuncĭo. Mittit altĕrum ad Caĭum
the messenger. He sends another (messenger) to Caius

Fabĭum legatum, ut adducat legionem
Fabius the lieutenant, that he may lead (his) legion

in fines Atrebatium, quâ sciebat
into the territories of the Atrebates, where he did know

iter faciendum sibi. Scribit
the march to-be-made to (by) himself. He writes

Labieno, si posset facĕre commŏdo
to Labienus, if he might be-able to do (it) with convenience

Reipublĭcæ, veniat cum legione ad
of the State, he may come with (his) legion to

fines Nerviorum. Pŭtat relĭquam
the territories of the Nervii. He thinks the rest (remaining)

partem exercĭtûs non exspectandam, quòd
part of the army not to-be-waited-for, because

abĕrat paullò longĭùs: cogit circĭter
it was distant a little farther: he collects about

quadringentos equĭtes ex proxĭmis hibernis.
four-hundred cavalry out-of the nearest winter-quarters.

47. Factus-est certĭor de adventu Crassi ab
He was made more-sure of the arrival of Crassus by

antecursorĭbus circĭter tertîâ horâ: progredĭtur
scouts about in the third hour: he advances

viginti millĭa passŭum ĕo dĭe. Præfĭcit
twenty thousands of paces in that day. He sets-over

Crassum Samarobrivæ, que attribŭit legionem
Crassus to Samarobriva, and assigns a legion

ĕi; quòd relinquebat ĭbi impedimenta
to him; because he did leave there the baggages

exercĭtûs, obsĭdes civitatum, publĭcas litĕras,
of the army, the hostages of the states, the public letters,

que omne frumentum, quod devexĕrat
and all the corn, which he had conveyed-down

ĕò caussâ hiĕmis
thither by cause (for the purpose) *of the winter*

tolerandæ. Fabĭus, ut imperatum-ĕrat,
to-be-supported. Fabius, as it had been commanded,

moratus non ĭta multùm,
having delayed not so much (not very much),

occurrit cum legione in itinĕre. Labienus,
meets (him) with a legion on the march. Labienus,

interĭtu Sabini, et cæde cohortĭum
the destruction of Sabinus, and the slaughter of the cohorts

cognĭtâ, quum omnes copĭæ Trevirorum
being known, when all the forces of the Treviri

venissent (pluperf. subj.) ad ĕum, verĭtus ne,
had come to him, having feared lest,

si fecisset profectionem ex hibernis
if he should-have-made the departure out-of winter-quarters

simĭlem fŭgæ, ut posset non sustinere
like to a flight, that he might be-able not to sustain

impĕtum hostĭum, præsertim quos sciret
the attack of the enemies, especially whom he did know

(imp. subj.) efferri recenti victorĭâ, dimittit
to be elated by the late victory, despatches

litĕras (plur.) Cæsări, cum quanto periculo
a letter to Cæsar, (to say) with how-great danger

esset (imp. subj.) educturus legionem ex
he was about-to-lead-out the legion out-of

hibernis: perscribit rem gestam in
winter-quarters: he writes-fully the affair carried-on in

Eburonĭbus: dŏcet omnes
(among) *the Eburones: he teaches* (informs him) *all*

copĭas peditatûs que equitatûs Trevirorum
the forces of infantry and of cavalry of the Treviri

consedisse trĭa millĭa passŭum
to have sat-down (encamped) *three thousands of paces*

longè ab sŭis castris (pl.).
far (distant) *from his camp.*

48. Cæsar, consilĭo ejus probato, etsi
Cæsar, the plan of him being approved-of, although

dejectus opinione trĭum
cast-down (disappointed) *in the expectation of three*

legionum, rediĕrat ad dŭas; tămen ponebat
legions, had returned to the two; however he did place

unum auxilĭum communis salutis in
the one (only) *aid* *of the common* *safety* *in*

celeritate. Vĕnit magnis itinerĭbus in
expedition. *He comes* *by great* *marches* *into*

fines Nerviorum. Ibi cognoscit ex
the territories *of the Nervii.* *There* *he knows* (learns) *from*

captivis, quæ gerantur (pres. subj.)
the prisoners, *what* (*things*) *are carried-on*

ăpud Ciceronem, que in quanto pericŭlo res
at *Cicero,* *and* *in* *how-great* *danger* *the affair*

sit (pres. subj.). Tum persuadet cuidam
is. *Then* *he persuades* *to a certain* (*person*)

ex Gallis equitĭbus magnis præmĭis, ŭtĭ
out-of *the Gallic* *horsemen* *by great* *rewards,* *that*

deferat epistŏlam ad Ciceronem. Mittit hanc
he may carry *a letter* *to* *Cicero.* *He sends* *this*

conscriptam Græcis litĕris; ne, epistŏlâ
written *in Greek* *letters* (characters); *lest,* *the letter*

interceptâ, nostra consilĭa cognoscantur ab
being intercepted, *our* *plans* *may be known* *by*

hostĭbus. Mŏnet, si posset non
the enemies. *He advises* (*him*), *if* *he may be-able* *not*

adire, ut objicĭat tragŭlam cum
to go-to (*Cicero*), *that* *he may cast* *a dart* *with*

epistŏlâ deligatâ ad amentum intra munitiones
the letter *tied* *to* *the thong* *within* *the fortifications*

castrorum (pl.). Scribit in litĕris (plur.), "se
of the camp. *He writes* *in* *the letter,* "*himself*

profectum affŏre celerĭter cum
having set-out *to-be-about-to-be-present* *speedily* *with*

legionĭbus:" hortatur "ut retinĕat
the legions:" *he encourages* (*him*) "*that* *he may retain*

pristĭnam virtutem." Gallus verĭtus
(*his*) *ancient* *valour.*" *The Gaul* *having feared*

periculum, mittit tragŭlam, ut præceptum-ĕrat.
danger, *sends* (throws) *the dart,* *as* *it had been ordered.*

Hæc adhæsit ad turrim casu, nèque
This stuck to a tower by chance, nor

animadversa (-est) bidŭo ab nostris;
was perceived for two-days by our (men);

tertĭo dĭe conspicĭtur à quodam milĭte;
on the third day it is seen by a certain soldier;

dempta defertur ad Ciceronem. Ille
being taken-down it is carried to Cicero. He

recĭtat perlectam in conventu
reads-aloud (it) being read-through in an assembly

milĭtum, que afficit omnes maxĭmâ
of the soldiers, and affects all with the greatest

lætitĭâ. Tum fumi incendiorum videbantur
gladness. Then the smokes of the fires were seen

prŏcul: quæ res expŭlit omnem dubitationem
at-a-distance: which thing banished all doubt

adventûs legionum.
of the approach of the legions.

49. Galli, re cognĭtâ per exploratores,
The Gauls, the thing being known by spies,

relinquunt obsidionem; contendunt ad Cæsărem
leave (raise) the siege; they set-out to Cæsar

omnĭbus copĭis: ĕæ ĕrant circĭter sexaginta
with all (their) forces: those were about sixty

millĭa armatorum. Cicĕro, facultate dătâ,
thousands of armed (men). Cicero, the power being given,

repĕtit Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem
requests the Gaul from the same Vertico, whom

demonstravĭmus suprà, qui deferat litĕras (plur.)
we have pointed-out above, who may carry a letter

ad Cæsărem. Admŏnet hunc, facĭat
to Cæsar. He admonishes him, (that) he may make

ĭter cautè que diligenter. Perscribit in
the journey cautiously and diligently. He writes in

litĕris (plur.), "Hostes discessisse ab
the letter, "The enemies to have departed from

se, que omnem multitudĭnem convertisse ad
himself, and all the multitude to have turned to

ĕum." Quĭbus lĭtĕris (plur.) allatis Cæsări
him." Which letter being brought to Cæsar

circĭter mediâ nocte, făcit sĭos certiores;
about in middle night, he makes his (men) more-sure

que confirmat ĕos anĭmo
(informs them); *and strengthens them in mind*

ad-dimicandum. Postĕro dĭe mŏvet castra (pl.)
to-fighting. In the following day he moves the camp

primâ luce, et progressus circĭter quatŭor
in the first light, and having advanced about four

millĭa passŭum, conspicatur multitudĭnem
thousands of paces, he beholds the multitude

hostĭum trans magnam vallem et rivum.
of the enemies beyond a great valley and rivulet.

Erat res magni pericŭli dimicare cum
It was a thing of great danger to contend with

tantis copĭis in iniquo lŏco. Tămen
so-great forces in an unfavourable place. However

quoniam sciebat Ciceronem liberatum (-fuisse)
since he did know Cicero to have been delivered

obsidione que ĕò existimabat remittendum
from the siege, and therefore did think to-be-relaxed

omnino de celeritate, consedit, et
altogether of speed, he sat-down (encamped), *and*

communit castra (pl.) lŏco quàm æquissĭmo
fortifies the camp in a place as most-favourable

pŏtest: atque etsi hæc
he is able (as favourable as possible): *and although these*

ĕrant exigŭa per se, vix septem
were small by themselves, scarcely of seven

millĭum homĭnum, præsertim cum nullis
thousands of men, especially with no

impedimentis; tămen contrăhit quàm-maxĭmè
baggages: yet he contracts (them) as-much-as

pŏtest, ĕo consilio, ut veníat in
he is-able, with that design, that he may come into

summam contemptionem hostĭbus. Intĕrim
the highest contempt to the enemies. Meantime

speculatorĭbus dimissis in omnes partes,
scouts being sent into all parts,

explorat quo itinĕre posset transire
he examines by what route he might be-able to cross

vallem commodissĭmè.
the valley most-conveniently.

50. Eo dĭe, parvŭlis equestrĭbus prœlĭis
In that day, trifling cavalry battles

factis ad ăquam, utrique contĭnent sese
being made at the water, each keep themselves

sŭo lŏco. Galli, quòd exspectabant
in their place. The Gauls (did so), because they did await

ampliores copĭas, quæ convenĕrant nondum:
more-extensive forces, which had assembled not-yet:

Cæsar, si fortè posset elicĕre
Cæsar (did so), if perhaps he might be-able to entice

hostes in sŭum lŏcum citra vallem
the enemies into his-own place on this-side the valley

simulatione timoris, ut contendĕret
by a pretence of fear, (so) that he might contend

prœlĭo pro castris (pl.): si posset non
in battle before the camp if he might be-able not

efficĕre id, ut, itinerĭbus exploratis,
to effect that, that, the routes being examined,

transiret vallem que rivum cum minore
he might cross the valley and rivulet with less

periculo. Primâ luce, equitatus hostĭum
danger. In the firs light, the cavalry of the enemies

accedit ad castra (pl.), que committit prœlĭum
approaches to the camp, and engages battle

cum nostris equitĭbus. Cæsar consultò jŭbet
with our cavalry. Cæsar designedly orders

equítes cedĕre que recipĕre se in
the cavalry to yield and to betake themselves into

castra (pl.), sĭmul jŭbet castra (pl.)
the camp, at-the-same-time he orders the camp

muniri altiore vallo ex omnĭbus
to be fortified with a higher rampart from all

partĭbus, que portas obstrŭi, atque
parts (sides), *and the gates to be barricaded, and*

concursari quàm-maxĭmè in ĭis rebus
to be hurried as-much-as-possible in those things

administrandis, et ăgi cum simulatione
to-be-managed, and to be acted with a pretence

timoris.
of fear.

51. Omnĭbus quĭbus rebus hostes invitati
By all which things the enemies being invited

transducunt copĭas, que constitŭunt acĭem
lead-over (*their*) *forces, and station* (*their*) *line*

iniquo lŏco. Verò nostris etĭam
in an unfavourable place. But our (*men*) *also*

deductis de vallo, accedunt propĭùs;
being led-down from the rampart, they approach nearer;

et conjicĭunt tela ex omnĭbus partĭbus
and throw (*their*) *darts from all parts*

intra munitionem: que præconĭbus circummissis,
within the fortification: and criers being sent-about,

jŭbent pronuntiari; "Seu quis Gallus
they order (*it*) *to be declared; "Whether any Gaul*

seu Romanus vĕlit transire ad se
or Roman may will to pass-over to themselves

ante tertĭam horam, licere sĭne periclŭlo:
before the third hour, to be-lawful without danger:

post id tempus, potestatem non fŏre:"
after that time, the power not to-be-about-to-be:"

ac contempserunt nostros sic, ut, portis
and they despised our (*men*) *so, that, the gates*

obstructis in speciem singŭlis ordinĭbus
being barricaded into appearance with single rows

cespĭtum, quòd videbantur non posse
of turfs, because they did seem not to be-able

introrumpĕre ĕâ, alii incipĕrent (imp. subj.)
to burst-into by that (way), others did begin

scandĕre vallum mănu, alii
to climb the rampart by hand (by force), others

complere fossas. Tunc Cæsar, eruptione
to fill-up the ditches. Then Cæsar, a sally

factâ omnĭbus portis que equitatu
being made from all the gates and the cavalry

emisso, dat hostes celerĭter in
being sent-out, gives (puts) the enemies quickly into

fŭgam; sic ut nemo omnino resistĕret (imp. subj.)
flight; so that no-one at-all did resist

caussâ pugnandi, que occidit magnum
by cause (for the sake) of fighting, and he slew a great

numĕrum ex his, atque exŭit omnes
number out-of these, and stripped all

armis.
from (their) arms.

52. Verĭtus prosĕqui longĭùs, quòd
Having feared to pursue (them) further, because

silvæ que paludes intercedebant; nĕque videbat
woods and marshes did intervene; neither did he see

locum relinqui parvŭlo detrimento illorum;
the place to be left with trifling loss of them;

omnĭbus sŭis copiis incolumĭbus, pervĕnit
all his forces (being) safe, he arrives

eodem die ad Ciceronem. Admiratur turres,
in the same day to Cicero. He admires the towers,

testudĭnes, que munitiones hostĭum, institutas.
mantelets. and fortifications of the enemies, prepared.

Legione productâ, cognoscit quemque
The legion being drawn-out, he knows (observes) every

decímum milítem non relictum-esse sine
tenth soldier not to have been left without

vulnĕre. Ex omníbus his rebus, judicat,
a wound Out-of all these things, he judges,

cum quanto periculo, et cum quamâ virtute,
with how-great danger, and with how-great valour,

res administratæ-sint (perf. subj.). Collaudat
affairs were managed. He praises

Ciceronem pro merĭto ejus, que
Cicero according-to the desert of him, and

legionem : appellat sigillatim centuriones que
the legion : he addresses individually the centurions and

tribunos milĭtum, quorum virtutem cognovĕrat
tribunes of soldiers, whose valour he had known

fuisse egregĭam testimonĭo Ciceronis.
to have been excellent by the testimony of Cicero.

Cognoscit certĭùs de casu Sabini
He knows (learns) *more-surely of the calamity of Sabinus*

et Cottæ ex captivis. Postĕro die,
and of Cotta from the prisoners. On the following day,

concione habĭtâ, proponit rem
an assembly being held, he sets-before (them) *the affair*

gestam : consolatur et confirmat milites :
carried-on : he consoles and encourages the soldiers :

dŏcet detrimentum, quod
he teaches (shows them) *the loss, which*

acceptum-sit (perf. subj.) culpâ et temeritate
has-been-received by the fault and rashness

legati, ferendum æquiore anĭmo
of the lieutenant, (was) to-be-borne with more-even mind

hoc ; quòd beneficĭo
from this (on this account) ; *because by the kindness*

immortalĭum Deorum, et virtute eorum,
of the immortal Gods, and by the valour of them,

incommŏdo expiato, nĕque diutĭna
the disadvantage being atoned-for, neither a lasting

lætatĭo relinquatur (pres. subj.) hostĭbus, nĕque
rejoicing is left to the enemies, nor

longĭor dŏlor ipsis.
longer grief to themselves.

53. Intĕrim fama de victorĭâ Cæsaris
Meantime the report of the victory of Cæsar

perfertur ad Labienum per Rhemos incredibĭli
is carried to Labienus by the Rhemi with incredible

celeritate; ut, quum abesset (imp.
expedition; (so) that, when (though) *he was distant*

subj.) quinquaginta millĭa passŭum ab
fifty thousands of paces from

hibernis Ciceronis, que Cæsar pervenisset
the winter-quarters of Cicero, and Cæsar had arrived

(plup. subj.) ĕŏ post nonam horam diei,
thither after the ninth hour of the day,

clamor oriretur (imp. subj.) ante mediam noctem
a shout did arise before middle night

ad portas castrorum (pl.); quo clamore
at the gates of the camp; by which shout

significatio victoriæ que gratulatĭo fiĕret
an indication of victory and congratulation was made

(imp. subj.) Labieno ab Rhemis. Hâc famâ
to Labienus by the Rhemi. This report

perlatâ ad Trevĭros, Indutiomărus, qui
being carried to the Treviri, Indutiomarus, who

decrevĕrat oppugnare castra (pl.) Labieni
had resolved to assault the camp of Labienus

postĕro die, profŭgit noctu que reducit
on the following day, flees by night and leads-back

omnes copĭas in Trevĭros. Cæsar remittit
all (his) forces unto the Treviri. Cæsar sends-back

Fabĭum cum legione in sŭa hiberna.
Fabius with the legion into their winter-quarters.

Ipse constitŭit hiemare trinis hibernis
Himself resolved to winter in triple winter-quarters

cum trĭbus legionĭbus circum Samarobrivam: et
with three legions about Samarobriva: and

quòd tanti motus Gallĭæ exstitĕrant
because so-great commotions of Gaul had existed

ipse decrevit manere totam hiĕmem ac
himself determined to remain the whole winter at

exercĭtum. Nam, illo incommŏdo de morte
the army. For, that disadvantage about the death

Sabini perlato, fĕrè omnes
of Sabinus being carried-through (them), nearly all

civitates Gallĭæ consultabant de bello:
the states of Gaul did deliberate about war:

dimittebant nuntĭos que legationes in omnes
they did dismiss messengers and embassies into all

partes; et explorabant, quid consilĭi relĭqui
parts; and did examine, what of counsel the rest

capĕrent, atque unde initĭum belli
might take, and whence a beginning of war

fĭeret; que habebant nocturna concilĭa
might be made; and they did hold nightly assemblies

in desertis lŏcis: nĕque ullum tempus fĕrè
in desert places: neither any time nearly

totius hiĕmis intercessit sine sollĭcitudĭne
of the whole winter intervened without the anxiety

Cæsăris, quin accipĕret (imp. subj.) alĭquem
of Cæsar, but-that he did receive some

nuntĭum de concilĭis et motu
messenger (message) about the assemblies and disturbance

Gallorum. In his factus-est certĭor
of the Gauls. In (among) these he was made more-sure

ab Lucĭo Roscĭo legato, quem
(was informed) by Lucius Roscius the lieutenant, whom

præfecĕrat decĭmæ-tertĭæ legioni, "Magnas
he had placed-over to the thirteenth legion, "Great

copĭas Gallorum earum civitatum, quæ appellantur
forces of the Gauls of those states, which are called

Armoricæ, convenisse caussâ sŭi
Armoric, to have assembled by cause (for the purpose) *of himself*

oppugnandi; nĕque abfuisse
to-be-assaulted (of attacking him); *nor to have been-distant*

longĭùs octo millĭa passŭum ab sŭis
farther (than) *eight thousands of paces from his*

hibernis; sed, nuntio allato de
winter-quarters; but, a message being brought about

victorîâ Cæsăris, discessisse, adĕò ut
the victory of Cæsar. to have departed, so that (their)

discessus videretur (imp. subj.) simĭlis fŭgæ.
departure did seem like to a flight.

54. At Cæsar, principĭbus cujusque civitatis
But Cæsar. the chiefs of each state

vocatis ad se, tenŭit magnam partem
being called to himself, kept a great part

Gallĭæ in officĭo, alĭàs territando,
of Gaul in duty, otherwise (one time) *by alarming,*

quum denuntiaret (imp. subj.), se scire quæ
when he did announce, himself to know what

fĭĕrent (imp. subj.), alĭàs
(*things*) *were done. otherwise* (another time)

cohortando. Tămen Senŏnes, quæ est civĭtas
by encouraging. However the Senones, which is a state

in-primis firma, et magnæ auctoritatis inter
particularly strong, and of great authority among

Gallos, conati (-sunt) interfĭcĕre publĭco consilĭo
the Gauls, attempted to slay by public counsel

Cavarinum, quem Cæsar constituĕrat regem
Cavarinus, whom Cæsar had appointed king

ăpud ĕos, (cujus frater Moritasgus,
at (among) *them,* (*whose brother Moritasgus,*

adventu Cæsăris in Gallĭam, que cujus
at the approach of Cæsar into Gaul, and whose

majores obtinuĕrant regnum;) quum
ancestors had obtained kingdom (royal power);) *when*

me præsensisset (pluperf. subj.) ac profugisset
he had previously-understood and had escaped,

(pluperf. subj.), insecuti usque ad
having pursued (him) until to

fines, expulerunt dŏmo que
the borders, they expelled (him) from home and

regno ; et legatis missis ad Cæsărem
the kingdom ; and ambassadors being sent to Cæsar

caussâ satisfaciendi, quum
by cause (for the purpose) *of making-satisfaction, when*

is jussisset (pluperf. subj.) omnem senatum
he had ordered all (their) senate

venire ad se, fuerunt non audientes dicto ;
to come to himself, they were not hearing to word

valŭit tantum
(obedient to the order) : *it availed so-much* (had such an

ăpud barbăros homĭnes, alĭquos
effect) *at* (among) *barbarian men, some* (any)

prĭncĭpes belli inferendi repertos-esse ;
chiefs of war to-be-brought-on to have been found ;

que attŭlit tantam commutationem voluntatum
and it brought so-great a change of wills

omnĭbus, ut fĕrè nulla civĭtas fuĕrit
to all, that nearly no state may have been

non suspecta nobis, præter Ædŭos et
not suspected to (by) *us, except the Æduı and*

Rhemos, quos Cæsar semper habŭit præcipŭo
Rhemi, whom Cæsar always had in particular

honore, altĕros pro vetĕrè ac
honour, the others (the former) *for ancient and*

perpetŭâ fĭde erga Romanum popŭlum ; altĕros
constant faith toward the Roman people ; the others

pre recentĭbus officĭis Gallĭci
(the latter) *for recent duties of the Gallic*

belli : que scĭo haud, ne id sit
war : and I know not, whether that may be

mirandum adĕò, cùm
to-be-wondered-at so (much), when (as well) from

complurĭbus aliĭs caussis, tum maxĭmè quòd
many other causes, then (as) chiefly because

qui præferebantur omnĭbus gentĭbus
(those) who were preferred to all nations

virtute belli, dolebant gravissĭmè, se
in bravery of war, did grieve most-severely, themselves

deperdidisse tantum opinionis ejus,
to have lost so-much of the opinion (reputation) of it,

ut perferrent imperĭa Romani
that they should endure the commands of the Roman

popŭli.
people.

55. Verò Trevĭri atque Indutiomărus
But the Treviri and Indutiomarus

intermiserunt nullum tempus totius hiĕmis,
omitted no time of the whole winter,

quin mittĕrent legatos trans Rhenum;
but-that they might send ambassadors across the Rhine;

sollicitarent civitates; pollicerentur pecunĭas:
they might solicit the states; they might-promise moneys:

dicĕrent, magnâ parte nostri exercĭtûs
they might say, a great part of our army

interfectâ, minorem partem multò superesse.
having been slain, a less part by-much to remain.

Tămen nĕque potŭit persuaderi ulli
However neither it was-able to be persuaded to any

civitati Germanorum, ut transiret Rhenum;
state of the Germans, that it should cross the Rhine;

quum dicĕrent (imp. subj.) "se expertos
when they did say "themselves having tried

bis, bello Ariovisti, et transĭtu
twice, in the war of Ariovistus, and in the crossing

Tenchtherorum, non esse tentaturos fortunam
of the Tenchtheri, not to be about-to-try fortune

amplius." Indutiomărus lapsus
more." Indutiomarus having slipped (been disappointed)

hâc spe, nihĭlo-mĭnùs cœpit cogĕre copĭas,
in this hope, nevertheless began to collect forces,

exigĕre à finĭtĭmis, parare
to demand (them) from the neighbouring (states), to procure

ĕquos, allicĕre exŭles que damnatos ad
horses, to entice exiles and condemned (persons) to

se magnis præmĭis totâ Gallîâ: ac
himself by great rewards in the whole Gaul: and

comparavĕrat jam tantam auctoritatem sĭbi
he had procured now so-great authority for himself

ĭis rebus in Gallîâ, ut legationes
by those things in Gaul, that embassies

concurrĕrent (imp. subj.) undĭque ad ĕum;
did run-together from-every-side to him;

petĕrent (imp. subj.) gratĭam atque amicitĭam
did seek (his) favour and friendship

publĭcè que privatim.
publicly and privately.

56. Ubi intellexit veniri
When he understood (it) to be come (that they came)

ultrò ad se; Senŏnes que Carnutes
spontaneously to himself; the Senones and Carnutes

instigatos conscientîâ facinŏris ex altĕrâ
(to be) instigated by a consciousness of crime from the other

parte; Nervĭos que Atuatĭcos parare
(the one) *part; the Nervii and Atuatici to prepare*

bellum Romanis altĕrâ nĕque copĭas
war for the Romans from the other (side); neither forces

voluntariorum defŏre sĭbi, si
of volunteers to be about-to-be-wanting to himself, if

cœpisset (plup. subj.) progrĕdi ex sŭis finĭbus;
he had begun to advance out-of his-own borders;

indicit armatum concilĭum. Hoc, more
he proclaims an armed council. This, by the custom

Gallorum, est initĭum belli; quò omnes
of the Gauls, is a commencement of war; whither all

puběres coguntur convenire armati,
full-grown (persons) are compelled to assemble armed,

communi lege: et qui ex ĭis
by a common (general) law: and (he) who out-of them

vĕnit novissĭmus, affectus omnĭbus
comes newest (last), being affected (punished) with all

cruciatĭbus necatur in conspectu multitudĭnis.
tortures is put-to-death in sight of the multitude.

In ĕo concilĭo curat Cingetorĭgem, princĭpem
In that council he takes-care Cingetorix, the chief

alterĭus factionis, sŭum genĕrum, judicandum
of the other party, his-own son-in-law, to-be-judged

hostem (quem demonstravĭmus suprà, secutum
an enemy (whom we have shown above, having followed

fĭdem Cæsăris, non discessisse ab ĕo),
the faith of Cæsar, not to have departed from him),

que publĭcat bŏna ejus. His rebus
and he confiscates the goods of him. These things

confectis, pronuncĭat in concilĭo se
being finished, he declares in the council himself

accersitum (-esse) à Senonĭbus et Carnutĭbus,
to have been sent-for by the Senones and Carnutes,

que complurĭbus alĭis civitatĭbus Gallĭæ:
and very-many other states of Gaul.

facturum (-esse) ĭter huc per
to be about-to-make (his) march hither through

fines Rhemorum, que populaturum agros
the territories of the Rhemi, and about-to-ravage the lands

eorum; ac oppugnaturum castra (pl.) Labieni
of them; and about-to-assault the camp of Labienus

prĭùs-quàm făcĭat id: que præcĭpit, quæ
before-that he may do that: and he prescribes, what

vĕlit fiĕri.
(things) he may will to be done.

57. Labienus timebat nĭhil de sŭo
Labienus did fear nothing about his-own

periculo ac legionis, quum contineret
danger and (that) of the legion, when he might keep

sese castris (pl.) munitissĭmis et naturâ
himself in a camp most-fortified both by the nature

lŏci, et mănu; sed cogitabat
of the place, and by hand (art); *but he did think*

ne-dimittĕret quam occasionem rĕi
he should not-omit any opportunity of a thing

gerendæ bĕnè. Ităque oratione Indutiomări,
to-be-carried-on well. Therefore the speech of Indutiomarus,

quam habuĕrat in concilĭo, cognĭtâ à
which he had held in the council, being known from

Cingetorĭge atque propinquis ejus, mittit
Cingetorix and the relations of him, he sends

nuntĭos ad finitĭmas civitates, que
messengers to the neighbouring states, and

convŏcat equĭtes undĭque. Dicit
calls-together cavalry from-every-side. He says (appoints)

certam dĭem conveniendi ĭis. Intĕrim
a certain day of meeting for them. Meantime

Indutiomărus vagabatur prŏpè quotidĭe cum
Indutiomarus did wander (hover) *almost daily with*

omni equitatu sub castris (pl.) ejus:
all (*his*) *cavalry under* (near) *the camp of him:*

alĭàs ut cognoscĕret sĭtum
otherwise (one time) *that he might know* (learn) *the situation*

castrorum (pl.); alĭàs caussâ
of the camp; otherwise (another time) *by cause* (for

colloquendi aut territandi: omnes
the purpose) *of conferring or of alarming: all*

equĭtes plerumque conjiciebant tela intra
(*his*) *cavalry generally did hurl darts within*

vallum. Labienus continebant sŭos intra
the rampart. Labienus did keep his (*men*) *within*

munitiones, que augebat opinionem timoris
the fortifications, and did increase the supposition of fear

quibuscunque rebus potĕrat.
by whatsoever things he was-able.

58. Quum Indutiomărus accedĕret (imp. subj.)
When Indutiomarus did approach

indĭes ad castra (pl.) majore contemptione,
daily to the camp with greater contempt,

equitĭbus omnĭum finitimarum civitatum, quos
the cavalry of all the neighbouring states, which

curavĕrat accersendos, intromissis unâ
he had taken-care to-be-sent-for, being let-in in one

nocte, continŭit omnes sŭos custodĭis intra
night, he kept all his (men) in guards within

castra (pl.) tantâ diligentĭâ, ut ĕa res
the camp with so-great diligence, that that thing

posset enuntiari nullâ ratione, aut perferri
might be-able to be told by no means, or to be carried

ad Trevĭros. Intĕrim, ex quotidianâ
to the Treviri. Meantime, according-to daily

consuetudĭne, Indutiomărus accedit ad castra (pl.),
custom, Indutiomarus approaches to the camp,

atque consumit magnam partem diei ĭbi.
and wastes a great part of the day there.

Equĭtes conjicĭunt tela, et evŏcant nostros
(*His*) *cavalry hurl darts, and call-out our*

ad pugnam magnâ contumelĭâ verborum.
(*men*) *to battle with great insult of words.*

Nullo responso dăto à castris (pl.), ŭbi
No answer being given from the camp, when

visum-est, discedunt dispersi ac dissipati
it seemed (proper), they depart dispersed and scattered

sub vespĕrum. Labienus subĭtò
under (a little before) *evening. Labienus suddenly*

emittit omnem equitatum duabus portis:
sends-forth all the cavalry from two gates:

præcĭpit atque interdicit, hostĭbus perterrĭtis,
he prescribes and forbids, the enemies being dismayed,

atque conjectis in fŭgam, (quod videbat
and thrown into flight, (which he did see

fŏre, sicut accĭdit) omnes petĕrent
to be about-to-be, so-as it happened) all should seek

Indutiomărum unum, neu quis
(attack) *Indutiomarus one* (alone), *nor any* (one)

vulneraret quemquam, prĭùs quàm videret
should wound any-one, before than he should see

illum interfectum: quòd nolĕbat illum,
him killed: because he was-unwilling him,

nactum spatĭum mŏrâ reliquorum, effugĕre.
having got space by the delay of the rest, to escape.

Proponit magna præmĭa ĭis, qui
He proposes great rewards to those, who

occidĕrint: submittit cohortes subsidĭo
should have killed (*him*): *he sends-up cohorts for aid*

equĭtĭbus. Fortuna comprŏbat consilĭum
to the cavalry. Fortune approves (favours) *the plan*

homĭnis; et quum omnes petĕrent (imp. subj.)
of the man; and when all did seek

unum, Indutiomărus deprehensus in vădo ipso
the one, Indutiomarus being caught in the ford itself

flumĭnis interficĭtur, que căput ejus
of the river is slain, and the head of him

refĕrtur in castra (pl.). Equĭtes redeuntes
is carried-back into the camp. The cavalry returning

consectantur atque occĭdunt, quos possunt.
pursue and slay (*those*), *whom they can,*

Hâc re cognĭtâ, omnes copĭæ
This thing being known, all the forces

Eburonum et Nerviorum, quæ convenĕrant,
of the Eburones and of the Nervii, which had assembled,

discedunt: que paullò post id factum, Cæsar
depart; and a little after that being done, Cæsar

habŭit Gallĭam quietiorem.
had Gaul more-tranquil.

LIBER SEXTUS
Book Sixth

The sixth book begins with a description of Caesar's rapid and successful campaign against the Senones and Carnutes. The Treviri attack Labienus who conquers them in battle after luring them by a stratagem into an unfavorable place. Caesar builds another bridge across the Rhine. He enters Germany and receives the surrender of the Ubii. He learns that the Suevi have taken refuge in the Bacenis forest. Caesar makes a digression in his narrative and compares the Gauls and Germans in a long descriptive passage. He returns to Gaul, having demolished the farther end of the bridge and fortified the Gallic approach to it. He marches in pursuit of Ambiorix into the Ardennes forest. Meantime the Sugambri cross the Rhine, attack Cicero and return. During this period the Eburones are being plundered and exterminated by a general proclamation as punishment for their treachery of the previous year. Ambiorix is pursued continuously but with a few horsemen succeeds in evading capture. After condemning Acco for the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes, Caesar quarters the legions for winter and departs for Italy to hold assemblies.

1. Cæsar de multis causis expectans mājorem
Caesar for many reasons expecting (a) greater

motum Galliæ instituit habere delectum,
commotion of Gaul determines to hold a levy

per legatos, M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum,
through (his) lieutenants, M. Silanus, C. Antistius Reginus,

T. Sextium. Simul pĕtit ab Cneio
(and) T. Sextius. At the same time he requests from Cneius

Pompeio, proconsŭle, quoniam ipse manēret
Pompey, proconsul, since he (himself) was remaining

ad urbem cum imperio, causā
near the city with (military) command, for the sake of

rei publĭcæ, jubēret quos
the public business, (that) he should order (those) whom

rogavisset (pl. perf. subj.) sacramento consul ex
he had enrolled by oath (as) consul from

Cisalpinā Galliā convenire ad signa et
Cisalpine Gaul to assemble to the standards and

proficisci ad se; existĭmans interesse magni
march to him; deeming (it) to be of great importance

ad opinionem Galliæ
regarding the opinion of Gaul (which they might have)

etĭam in relĭquum tempus
also for remaining [future] time (that the)

facultates Italiæ vidēri tantas ut si quid
resources of Italy to [should] seem so great that if any

(neut.) detrimenti acceptum esset in bello,
(of) detriment [harm] should have been received in war,

id non modo posset sarciri brĕvi tempŏre, sed
this not only could be repaired in a short time, but

posset etĭam augēri[1] majoribus copiis. Quod
could also be supplemented by greater forces. Which

cum Pompeius tribuisset et rei publicæ et
when Pompey had granted both for the public interest and

amicitiæ, delectu celeriter confecto
for (his) friendship, a levy quickly having been made

per sŭos, tribus legionibus et
through his (lieutenants), three legions both

constitutis et adductis ante hiemem ex-
having been raised and brought to (him) before the winter had

actum, et numero earum cohortium, quas amisĕrat
passed; and the number of these cohorts, which he had lost

cum Q. Titurio, duplicato, docuit et
under Q. Titurius, having been doubled, he showed both

celeritate et copiis, quid disciplīna
by (his) promptness and by (his) forces, what the discipline

atque opes Romani populi posset.
and resources of the Roman people were able (to do).

2. Indutiomaro interfecto ut docuimus,
Indutiomarus having been slain as we have shown,

imperium defertur a Treviris ad ejus propinquos.
the government is conferred by the Treviri on his relations.

Illi non desistunt sollicitare finitimos
They (do) not cease to incite (to warfare) the neighboring

Germanos et pollicēri pecuniam. Cum possent non
Germans and to promise money. When they could not

impetrare ab proximis,[2] tentant ulteriores.[3]
obtain (this) from (those) nearest they try the more remote.

Nonnullis civitatibus inventis, con-
Some states having been found (compliant), they

firmant[4] jurejurando inter se, que
pledge (allegiance) by an oath among themselves, and

cavent obsidibus de pecuniā; adjungunt sibi
give security by hostages for the money; they unite to themselves

Ambiorigem societate et fœdere. Quibus
Ambiorix by alliance and by treaty. Which [These]

rebus cognitis, cum Cæsar vidēret bellum
things having been learned, when Caesar perceived war

parari[5] undique; Nervios, Aduatucos
to be [was] prepared on all sides, (that) the Nervii, the Aduatuci

ac Menapios, omnibus cisrhenanis Germanis
and the Menapii, all the hither-Rhine Germans

adjunctis, esse in armis; Senones non
having been added, were in arms; (that) the Senones (did) not

venire ad imperatum, et communicare
come to (his) command, and (that) they were exchanging

consilia cum Carnutibus que finitimis civitatibus;
counsel with the Carnutes and neighboring states;

Germanos sollicitari a Treviris crebris
(that) the Germans were invited by the Treviri in frequent

legationibus; putavit cogitandum sibi
embassies; he thought to [it must] be considered by himself

maturius de bello.
[he must consider] earlier regarding the war.

3. Itaque hieme nondum confectā,
Therefore the winter not yet having been completed,

quattuor proximis legionibus coactis,
the four nearest legions having been assembled,

contendit improviso in fines Nerviorum; et
he marched suddenly into the territories of the Nervii; and

prius quam illi aut possent convenire, aut
before (that) they either could assemble, or

profugĕre, magno numero pecoris atque hominum
escape a great number of cattle and of men

capto, atque ĕā prædā concessā
having been captured and this booty having been given up

militibus, que agris vastatis, coegit
to the soldiers, and (their) fields having been laid waste, he forced

venire in deditionem, atque dare
(them) to come into a surrender, and to give

obsides sibi. Eo negotio celeriter
hostages to himself. This business [campaign] having been quickly

confecto, reduxit rursus legiones in hiberna.
performed, he led back again the legions into winter quarters.

Concilio Galliæ indicto primo vere, ut
A council of Gaul having been called in early spring, as

instituĕrat, cum reliqui præter Senones,
he had determined, since the rest except the Senones,

Carnutes que Treviros venissent, arbitratus
the Carnutes and Treviri had come, having judged (that)

hoc esse initium belli ac defectionis,
this to be [was] the beginning of war and of revolt,

ut videretur postponĕre omnia, transfert
although he might seem to postpone everything, he transfers

concilium in Lutetiam Parisiorum. Hi erant
the council to Lutetia of the Parisii (Paris). These were

confines Senonibus, que memoriā patrum
neighbors to the Senones, and in the memory of the fathers

conjunxĕrant[6] civitatem, sed existimabantur
had united their state (with them), but they were thought

abfuisse ab hoc concilio. Hāc re
to have been absent from this council. This thing

pronuntiatā pro suggestu, proficiscitur
having been proclaimed from the tribunal, he marches

eodem die cum legionibus in
on the same day with the legions into (the country of)

Senones, que pervenit eo magnis itineribus.
the Senones, and arrives there by long [forced] marches.

4. Ejus adventu cognito, Acco, qui fuerat
His arrival having been learned, Acco, who had been

princeps ejus concilii jubet multitudinem convenire
the leader of this council orders the people to assemble

in oppida. Nuntiatur conantibus,
into the towns. It is announced to (those) attempting, (to assemble)

prius quam id posset effici, Romanos
before it could be accomplished, (that) the Romans

adesse. Necessario desistunt sententiā, que
to have [had] come. Necessarily they desist from the design, and

mittunt legatos ad Cæsarem causā deprecandi;[7]
send ambassadors to Cæsar for purpose of interceding;

adeunt per Æduos, in fide
they approach (him) through the Ædui, under the protection

quorum civitas erat antiquitus. Æduis
of whom (their) state was formerly. The Ædui

petentibus, Cæsar libenter dat veniam, que accipit
petitioning, Cæsar readily gives pardon, and receives

excusationem, quod arbitrabatur æstivum
(their) excuse, because he judged (that) the summer

tempus esse instantis belli non
time to be [was] (one) of [for] impending war (and) not

quæstionis. Centum obsidibus imperatis,
of [for] investigation. A hundred hostages having been ordered

tradit hos Æduis custodiendos. Carnutes
he delivers these to the Ædui to be guarded. The Carnutes

mittunt legatos que obsides eodem,
send ambassadors and hostages to the same place,

usi Remis deprecatoribus, in clientelā
having made use of the Remi as intercessors, under the protection

quorum erant; ferunt eadem responsa.
of whom they were; they carry (back) the same answers.

Cæsar peragit concilium, que imperat equites
Cæsar holds the council, and orders horsemen

civitatibus (dat).
(of) the states.

5. Hāc parte Galliæ pacatā, insistit
This part of Gaul having been pacified, he applies

totus et mente et animo in bellum
(himself) altogether both in mind and soul to the war

Trevirorum et Ambiorigis. Jubet Cavarinum
of the Treviri and Ambiorix. He orders Cavarinus

proficisi secum cum equitatu Senonum, ne quis
to march with him with the cavalry of the Senones, lest any

motus civitatis existat aut ex hujus
commotion of the state may arise either from his

iracundiā, aut ex ŏo odio, quod meruĕrat.
irascibility, or from that hatred, which he had merited.

His rebus constitutis, quod habebat pro
These things having been settled, because he regarded (it) for

explorato Ambiorigem non esse certaturum[8]
[as] well known (that) Ambiorix would not contend

prœlio, circumspiciebat animo ejus reliqua consilia.
in battle, he considered in mind his other plans.

Menapii erant propinqui finibus Eburonum,
The Menapii were neighboring to the frontiers of the Eburones,

muniti perpetuis paludibus que silvis; qui uni ex
protected by continuous marshes and woods; who alone from

Galliā nunquam miserant legatos ad Cæsarem
Gaul never had sent ambassadors to Cæsar

de pace; sciebat hospitium esse
concerning peace; he knew (that) hospitality was [existed]

cum iis Ambiorigi (dat.); item
with [between] them (and) Ambiorix; also

cognoverat venisse in amicitiam
he had discovered (that he) to have [had] come into friendship

Germanis per Treviros. Existimabat
to [with] the Germans through the Treviri. He considered (that)

hæc auxilia detrahenda illi, prius quam
these auxiliaries ought to be detached from him, before

ipsum lacessendum bello; ne salute des-
(he) himself ought to be assailed in war; lest safety having been

peratā, aut abdĕret se in Menapios,
despaired of, either he might hide himself among the Menapii,

aut cogeretur congredi cum transrhenanis.
or be forced to unite with the over-Rhine (Germans).

Hoc consilio inito, mittit impedimenta
This plan having been formed he sends the baggage

totius exercitūs ad Labienum in Treviros, que
of the whole army to Labienus among the Treviri, and

jubet duas legiones proficisci ad eum. Ipse
orders two legions to proceed to him. (He) himself

proficiscitur cum quinque expeditis legionibus in
marches with five light armed legions against

Menapios. Illi, nullā manu coactā,
the Menapii. They, no force having been assembled,

freti præsidio loci, confugiunt in silvas
relying on the protection of the place, retreat into the woods

que paludes, que conferunt eodem sua.
and marshes, and convey to the same place their property.

6. Cæsar, copiis partitis cum C. Fabio,
Cæsar, the forces having been divided with C. Fabius,

legato, et M. Crasso, quæstore, que pontibus
the lieutenant, and M. Crassus, the quæstor, and bridges

effectis celerĭter, adiit tripartito;
having been constructed hastily, advances in three divisions;

incendit ædificia que vicos, potitur magno
he burns the houses and villages (and) gets possession of a great

numero pecŏris, atque hominum. Coacti
number of cattle, and of men. Having been forced

quibus rebus, Menapii mittunt legatos ad
by which [these] things, the Menapii send ambassadors to

eum, causā petendæ[9] pacis. Ille, obsidibus
him, for the purpose of seeking peace. He, the hostages

acceptis, confirmat se habit-
having been received, declares (that he) himself about to

urum numero hostium, si recepissent
[would] hold (them) in the number of enemies if they received

aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legatos sŭis finibus.
either Ambiorix, or his ambassadors in their territories.

His rebus confirmatis, relinquit Commium,
These things having been settled he leaves Commius,

Atrebatem, cum equitatu in Menapiis loco
the Atrebatian, with the cavalry among the Menapii in place

custodis; ipse proficiscitur in Treviros.
of a guard; he himself marches against the Treviri.

7. Dum hæc geruntur a Cæsare, Tre-
While these (things) were being performed by Cæsar, the

viri, magnis copiis peditatūs, que equitatūs coac-
Treviri, great forces of infantry, and of cavalry having been

tis, parabant adoriri Labienum cum unā
assembled, were preparing to attack Labienus with one

legione, quæ hiemaverat in eorum finibus. Que
legion, which had wintered in their territories. And

jam aberant ab eo non longius
already they were distant from him not farther (than)

viā bidui, quum cognoscunt duas
a journey of two days, when they learn (that) two

legiones venisse missū Cæsaris.
legions [to] have arrived by the sending [dispatched] of [by] Cæsar.

Castris positis a quindecim[10] millibus
Their camp having been pitched distant fifteen thousand

passuum constituunt expectare auxilia (pl.)
(of) paces they determine to wait for the aid [auxiliaries]

Germanorum. Labienus, consilio hostium cog-
of the Germans. Labienus, the plan of the enemy having

nito, sperans temeritate eorum
been learned, hoping (that) by the rashness of them

fore aliquam
[by their rashness] to be about to [there would] be some

facultatem dimicandi, præsidio quinque cohortium
opportunity of fighting, a guard of five cohorts

relicto impedimentis, proficiscitur contra hostem
having been left for the baggage, marches against the enemy

cum viginti quinque cohortibus, que magno
with twenty five cohorts, and great [much]

equitatu, et communit castra, spatio mille
cavalry, and fortifies (his) camp, an interval of a thousand

passuum intermisso. Erat, inter Labienum
paces having been left between. There was, between Labienus

atque hostem, flumen difficili transitu, que
and the enemy, a river with a difficult crossing, and

præruptis ripis. Neque ipse habebat in animo
with steep banks. Neither he himself had in mind

transire hoc, neque existimabat hostes
to cross this, nor did he think (that) the enemy

transituros. Spes auxiliorum augebatur quotidie.
would cross. The hope of auxiliaries was increased daily.

Loquitur palam in concilio, quoniam Germani
He says openly in council, (that) since the Germans

dicuntur appropinquare sese non
are said to be approaching (that he) himself (would) not

devocaturum in dubium suas que fortunas
(about to) call into doubt [hazard] his own and the fortunes

exercitūs, et motorum castra
of the army, and (that he) about to [would] move the camp

primā luce[11] postero die. Hæc deferuntur
at daybreak on the next day. These (words) are carried

celeriter ad hostes, ut ex magno numero
quickly to the enemy, as from [of] the great number

equitatūs Gallorum, natura cogebat nonnullos
of cavalry of the Gauls, nature compelled some

favēre Gallicis rebus. Noctu Labienus, tribunis
to favor the Gallic affairs. At night, Labienus, the tribunes

militum que primis ordinibus coac-
of the soldiers and the first orders (of centurions) having been

tis, proponit quid consilii sit sui;
assembled, sets forth what of plan is his [what his plan is]

et quo facilius det hostibus
and that the more easily he may give to the enemy

suspicionem timōris, jubet castra movēri
a suspicion of fear, he orders the camp to be moved

majore strepitu et tumultu, quam fert consuetudo
with greater noise and confusion, than is the custom

Romani populi. His rebus efficit profectionem
of the Roman people. By these things he makes the departure

similem fugæ. Hæc quoque in
like to a flight. These (things) also in [on account of]

tanta propinquitate castrorum deferuntur ad
so great [such] nearness of the camps are announced to

hostes per exploratores ante lucem.
the enemy through spies before daylight.

8. Vix novissimum agmen processerat extra
Scarcely the rear marching-line had proceeded beyond

munitiones, cum Galli cohortati inter se[12]
the fortifications, when the Gauls having encouraged one another

ne dimittĕrent speratam prædam ex
(*that*) *they should not cast away the hoped for booty from*

manibus; esse longum expectare
(*their*) *hands,* (*that*) *it would be long* [*tedious*] *to wait for*

auxilium Germanorum, Romanis perterritis;
the assistance of the Germans, the Romans having been terrified;

neque suam dignitatem pati ut non
(*that*) *neither their dignity suffers that they should not*

audeant adoriri tantis copiis tam exiguam
dare to attack with so great forces so small

manum, præsertim fugientem atque impeditam;
a band, especially fleeing and encumbered;

non dubitant transire
(*having encouraged one another thus*) *they do not hesitate to cross*

flumen et committĕre prœlium iniquo loco.
the river and to join battle in an unfavorable place.

Labienus suspicatus quæ fore,
Labienus having suspected which [*this*] *to be about to* [*would*] *be*

ut elicĕret omnes citra flumen, progredie-
in order that he might lure all to this side the river, was march-

batur placide usus eādem simulatione (abl.) itineris.
ing on quietly using the same pretence of a march.

Tum, impedimentis præmissis paulum, atque
Then, the baggage having been sent forward a little, and

collocatis quodam tumulo; "habētis," inquit,
having been placed on a certain eminence; "you have," says he,

"milites, facultatem quam petistis; tenētis
"*soldiers, the opportunity which you have sought; you hold*

hostem impedito atque iniquo loco;
the enemy in an encumbered and unfavorable place;

præstate eandem virtutem nobis ducibus, quam
exhibit the same courage to us (*your*) *generals which*

sæpenumero præstitistis imperatori; existimate
so often you have displayed to your commander; suppose

eum adesse, et cernĕre hæc
him to be present, and to observe these (deeds as if)

coram." Simul jubet signa con-
in his presence." At the same time he orders the standards to be

verti ad hostem, que aciem dirigi; et
turned to the enemy, and the battle-line to be formed, and

paucis turmis dimissis præsidio ad
a few troops of horsemen having been sent for [as] a guard to

impedimenta, disponit reliquos equites ad latera.
the baggage, he stations the remaining cavalry on the wings.

Nostri, clamore sublato, celeriter jaciunt
Our men, a shout having been raised, quickly throw

pila in hostes. Illi, ubi, præter spem,
(their) weapons at the enemy. They, when, contrary to expectation,

viderunt quos credebant fugĕre ire ad
they saw those whom they believed to be in flight come toward

se infestis signis, non potuerunt ferre
them with hostile standards, were not able to sustain

impetum nostrorum; ac primo concursu,
the attack of our (men); and on the first encounter,

conjecti in fugam, petiverunt proximas
having been thrown into flight, sought the nearest

silvas; Labienus consectatus quos equitatū,
woods; Labienus having followed whom [them] with (his) cavalry,

magno numero interfecto, compluribus
a great number having been slain, (and) very many

captis, recēpit civitatem, paucis
having been captured, received the state (in submission), a few

diebus post. Nam Germani, qui veniebant
days afterwards. For the Germans, who were coming

auxilio, fugā Trevirorum perceptā,
for [as] aid, the flight of the Treviri having been learned,

contulerunt sese domum. Cum iis propinqui
betook themselves home. With them the relations

Indutiomari, qui fuerant auctores defectionis
of Indutiomaris, who had been the authors of the revolt

comitati eos excessere ex civitate.
having accompanied them departed from the state.

Principatus atque imperium traditum est Cingetorigi,
The leadership and command was assigned to Cingetorix.

quem demonstravimus permansisse in
whom [who] we have shown to have [had] remained in

officio ab initio.
allegiance from the beginning.

9. Cæsar, postquam venit ex Menapiis in
Cæsar, after he came from the Menapii into

Treviros constituit de duabus causis transire Rhenum;
the Treviri resolved for two reasons to cross the Rhine;

altera quarum erat, quod (Germani) miserant
the one of which was, because (the Germans) had sent

auxilia Treviris contra se; altera
auxiliaries to the Treviri against himself; the other (that)

Ambiorix ne habēret receptum ad eos. His
Ambiorix might not have a refuge among them. These

rebus constitutis, instituit facĕre pontem
things having been determined he resolved to make a bridge

paulum supra eum locum, quo antea trans-
a little above this place, at which before he had

⌜duxerat exercitum. Ratione notā atque
transported the army. The plan having been known and

institutā, opus efficitur, paucis diebus, magno
adopted, the work is completed, in a few days, by the great

studio militum. Firmo præsidio relicto ad
zeal of the soldiers. A strong guard having been left near

pontem in Treviris, ne quis motus oriretur
the bridge among the Treviri, lest any revolt might arise

subito ab iis, traducit reliquas copias que
suddenly from them, he leads across the remaining forces and

equitatum. Ubii, qui ante dederant obsides,
the cavalry. The Ubii, who before had given hostages,

atque venerant in deditionem, mittunt ad eum
and had come to a surrender send to him

causā purgandi sui[13] legatos qui doceant,
for the purpose of clearing themselves ambassadors who may show

neque auxilia missa in Treviros ex
(that) neither auxiliaries had been sent to the Treviri from

suā civitate, neque fidem læsam ab se;
their state, nor faith (had been) violated by them;

petunt atque orant ut parcat sibi, ne
they beg and pray that he may spare them, lest

communi odio Germanorum innocentes pendant
in (his) common hatred of the Germans the innocent pay

pœnas pro nocentibus; si velit amplius obsidum,
the penalties for the guilty; if he desires more [of] hostages,

pollicentur dare. Causā cognitā,
they promise to give (them). The case having been investigated,

Cæsar reperit auxilĭa missa esse ab
Cæsar finds the auxiliaries to have [had] been sent by

Suevis; accepit satisfactionem Ubiorum;
the Suevi; he accepts the explanation of the Ubii; and

perquirit aditus que vias in Suevos.
carefully seeks out the approaches and roads into the Suevi.

10. Interim fit certior[14] ab Ubiis, paucis
In the meanwhile he is informed by the Ubii, a few

diebus pōst, Suevos cogĕre omnes
days after (that) the Suevi to collect [are collecting] all

copĭas in unum locum, atque denuntiare
(their) forces into one place, and to give notice [are

iis nationibus quæ sunt sub eorum imperĭo,
giving notice] to those nations who are under their command.

ut mittant auxilia peditatūs que equitatūs.
that they send auxiliaries of foot [infantry] and of cavalry.

His rebus cognitis providet rem frumentariam,
These things having been learned he provides a corn supply,

deligit idoneum lŏcum castris; imperat
he selects a suitable place for the camp; he commands

Ubiis, ut deducant pecŏra, que conferant
the Ubii that they drive away the cattle, and collect

omnia sua ex agris in oppida; sperans
all their (property) from the fields into the towns; hoping

barbăros atque imperitos homines adductos
(that) the barbarous and ignorant men led

inopiā cibariorum posse deduci ad
by the want of food to be able [might] (to) be brought into

iniquam conditionem pugnandi. Mandat
an unfavorable condition of fighting. He orders (the Ubii)

ut mittant crebros exploratores in Suevos,
that they send numerous scouts among the Suevi,

cognoscant quæque gerantur (pl.) apud ĕos.
that they may learn whatever is carried on among them.

Illi faciunt imperata, et, paucis diebus intermissis,
They execute the orders and a few days having passed,

referunt; omnes Suevos, posteaquam certiores
report; (that) all the Suevi after more certain

nuntii venerant de exercitu
messengers [news] had come concerning the army

Romanorum, recepisse sese penitus ad
of the Romans to have [had] betaken themselves quite to

extremos fines cum omnibus suis copiis que
the extreme boundaries with all their forces and (those)

sociorum, quas coëgissent. Esse
of (their) allies, which they had collected. To be [There is]

silvam ibi infinitæ magnitudinis, quæ
a forest there of boundless extent, which

appellatur Bacenis; hanc pertinēre longē
is called Bacenis; this to extend [extends] far

introrsus, et objectam pro nativo muro,
into the interior and is opposed for [as] a natural wall [defence]

prohibēre injurĭis que incursionibus Cheruscos
to check [it checks] from injuries and incursions the Cherusci

a Suevis, que Suevos a Cheruscis; Suevos
from the Suevi and the Suevi from the Cherusci; the Suevi

constituisse exspectare adventum Romanorum,
to have [had] resolved to await the arrival of the Romans,

ad initĭum ejus silvæ.
at the entrance of this forest.

11. Quoniam perventum est ad hunc locum,
Since it has been reached [we have come] to this place,

videtur non esse alienum proponere
it seems not to be foreign [improper] to present (an account)

de moribus Galliæ que Germaniæ, et
concerning the manners of Gaul and of Germany and

quo hæ nationes differant inter
in what (respects) these nations may differ among

sese.[15] In Galliā sunt factiones,
themselves. In Gaul (there) are factions,

non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque
not only in all the states and

pagis que partibus, sed etiam pæne in singulis
cantons and parts, but also almost in the individual

domibus; que principes earum factionum sunt
houses; and the chiefs of those factions are (those)

qui existimantur habere, judicio eorum
who are considered to have, in the judgment of them [their

summam auctoritatem; ad arbitrium que
judgment] the highest authority; to the will and

judicium quorum, summa omnium rerum que
judgment of whom, the management of all affairs and

consiliorum redeat. Que id videtur
counsels may return. And this seems (to have been)

institutum (esse) antiquitus causā ejus rei,
instituted anciently for the sake of this thing,

ne quis ex plebe egēret auxilii (gen.)
that no one from [of] the people should lack assistance

contra potentiorem; enim quisque non patitur
against the more powerful; for each one does not suffer

suos opprimi que circumveniri; neque si faciat
his own to be oppressed and overreached; nor if he should do

aliter habeat ullam auctoritatem inter suos.
otherwise would he have any authority among his (people).

Hæc eadem ratio est in summā
This same plan [system] exists in the management [authority]

totius Galliæ. Namque omnes civitates divisæ sunt
of all Gaul. For indeed all the states are divided

in duas partes.
into two parties.

12. Cum Cæsar vēnit in Galliam, Ædui erant
When Cæsar came into Gaul, the Ædui were

principes alterius factionis, Sequani alterius. Hi,
the chiefs of one faction, the Sequani of the other. These,

cum valērent minus per se,
[*The latter*] *as they prevailed less by themselves,*

(quod summa auctoritas erat in Æduis
(*because the supreme authority was among the Æduі*

antiquitus, que magnæ erant eorum
anciently [*of old*], *and great* (*states*) *were their*

clientelæ), adjunxerant Germanos atque
tributaries), *they* [*the Sequani*] *had united the Germans and*

Ariovistum sibi, que perduxerant eos ad
Ariovistus to themselves, and had brought them over to

se magnis jacturis que pollicitationibus. Vero
themselves by great sacrifices and promises. Indeed

compluribus secundis prœliis factis, atque
very many successful battles having been fought, and

omni nobilitate Æduorum interfectā,
all the nobility of the Æduі having been slain,

antecesserant tantum potentiā, ut
they [*the Sequani*] *had surpassed so much in power, that*

transducĕrent ad se magnam partem clientium
they brought over to themselves a great part of the clients

ab Æduis, que accipĕrent ab iis
[*tributaries*] *from the Æduі, and received from these*

filios principum obsides, et cogĕrent jurare
the sons of the chiefs as hostages, and forced (*them*) *to swear*

publice, se inituros[16] nihil consilii
publicly, (*that*) *they would enter* (*into*) *nothing of* [*no*] *design*

contra Sequanos; et possidērent partem
against the Sequani; and they kept a part

finitimi agri occupatam per vim, que
of the neighboring territory seized by force, and

obtinērent principatum totius Galliæ. Divitiacus
obtained the sovereignty of all Gaul. Divitiacus

adductus quā necessitate, profectus Romam
led by which [*this*] *necessity, having proceeded to Rome*

ad senatum causā petendi auxilii,
to the senate for the purpose of asking aid,

redierat re infectā. Adventu
had returned his purpose unaccomplished. By the arrival

Cæsaris, commutatione rerum factā,
of Cæsar, a change of affairs having been effected,

obsidibus redditis Æduis, veteribus
the hostages having been returned to the Ædui, old

clientelis restitutis, novis comparatis
tributaries having been restored, (and) new having been acquired

per Cæsarem, (quod ii, qui aggregaverant
through Cæsar, (because these, who had united

se ad eorum amicitiam, vidēbant se
themselves to their friendship, saw (that) they

uti[17] meliore conditione atque æquiore
to use [enjoyed] a better condition and more equitable

imperio) rĕliquis rebus, eorum gratiā
government) (their) other affairs, their authority

que dignitate amplificatā, Sequani
and dignity [influence] having been enlarged, the Sequani

dimisserant principatum, Remi successerant
had lost the sovereignty, (and) the Remi had succeeded

in eorum locum; quod intelligebatur
in their place; as it was perceived

quos[18] adæquare gratiā apud
whom (that they) equaled (the Ædui) in favor with

Cæsarem, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias
Cæsar, those, who on account of old hostilities

poterant nullo modo conjungi cum Æduis,
could in no manner be united with the Ædui.

dicabant se in clientelam Remis.
were declaring themselves under the protection to [of] the Remi.

Illi tuebantur hos diligenter; et ita tenēbant
They were protecting them carefully; and so they held

novam et repente collectam auctoritatem. Res
a new and suddenly acquired influence. Affairs

erat tum eo statu, ut Ædui haberentur
were then in this state, that the Ædui were held as

longe principes, Remi obtinērent secundum
by far the principal (people), while the Remi obtained the second

locum dignitatis.
place of dignity [influence].

13. In omni Gallia sunt duo genera, eorum
In all Gaul there are two classes, of those

hominum, qui sunt aliquo numero atque honore.
men who are of any account and honor.

Nam plebs habētur pæne loco servorum,
For the common people are held almost in place of slaves,

quæ audet nihil per se, et adhibētur nulli
who dare nothing by themselves, and are admitted to no

concilio. Plerique quum premuntur aut ære alieno,
council. Many when they are oppressed either by debt,

aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injuriā
or by the greatness of the tributes, or by the injury [violence]

potentiorum, dicant sese in servitutem
of the more powerful, declare themselves in servitude

nobilibus; omnia eadem jura sunt in hos, quæ
to the nobles; all the same rights are over these, which

dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus
(are) to masters over slaves. But of these two

generibus, alterum est Druidum, alterum
classes, the one is (that) of the Druids, the other (that)

Equitum. Illi intersunt divinis rebus,
of the knights. They (the Druids) are occupied with sacred things,

procurant publica ac privata sacrificia, inter-
they have charge of public and private sacrifices, (and) inter-

pretantur religiones. Magnus numerus adolescentium
pret religion. A great number of youths

concurrit ad hos causā disciplinæ, que ii,
resort to these for the purpose of training, and they

sunt magno honore apud eos. Nam
(the Druids) are in great honor among them. For

constituunt de fere omnibus controversiis
they decide concerning almost all controversies (both)

publicis que privatis; et si quod facĭnus est
public and private; and if any crime has been

admissum, si cædes facta, si est
committed, if (any) murder has been done if (there) is

controversia de hæreditate, si de finibus, iidem
a dispute about inheritance, if about boundaries the same

decernunt que constituunt præmia que pœnas.
decide (it) and determine the recompenses and punishments.

Si quis, aut privatus aut publicus, non
If any (person), either private or public, should not

steterit eorum decreto, interdicunt sacrificiis.
submit to their decree, they ban (him) from the sacrifices.

Hæc est gravissima pœna apud eos. Hi
This is a very serious punishment among them. Those

quibus[19] est ita interdictum, habentur numero
who are thus interdicted, are held in number

impiorum ac sceleratorum; omnes decedunt iis,
of the impious and wicked; all avoid them,

que defugiunt eorum aditum que sermonem; ne
and flee from their approach and conversation; lest

accipiant quid (neut.) incommodi ex
they receive some (of) evil from

contagione; neque jus redditur eis
contact; neither (is) justice administered to them

petentibus neque ullus honos communicatur. Autem
petitioning nor any honor is attributed. But

omnibus his Druidibus unus præst, qui habet
over all these Druids one presides, who has

summam auctoritatem inter eos. Hoc mortuo,
supreme authority among them. This (chief) being dead,

si quis ex reliquis excellit dignitate succedit.
if any one from [of] the others excels in dignity he succeeds.

At si plures sunt pares deligitur suffragio
But if many are equal election is made by the vote

Druidum; etiam nonnunquam contendunt armis
of the Druids; also sometimes they contend with arms

de principatū. Hi considunt in consecrato
for the chieftainship. These (Druids) assemble in a consecrated

loco, certo tempŏre anni in finibus
place, at a certain time of the year in the territories

Carnutum, quæ regĭo habētur media totius Galliæ.
of the Carnutes, which region is held as the center of all Gaul.

Huc undĭque, omnes qui habent controversias,
Here from all sides all who have disputes,

conveniunt, que parent eorum judiciis que decretis.
assemble, and submit to their judgment and decrees.

Disciplina existimatur reperta in Britanniā,
(This) institution [cult] is supposed (to have) originated in Britain,

atque inde (esse) translata in Galliam. Et
and from thence (to have been) transferred into Gaul. And

nunc, qui volunt diligentius cognoscere eam
now, those who wish more perfectly to know this

rem, plerumque proficiscuntur illo causā
thing [sect], often go there for the purpose

discendi.
of learning (it).

14. Druides consueverunt abesse a bello, neque
The Druids are accustomed to be absent from war, nor

pendunt tributa unā cum reliquis; (habent vaca-
do they pay tribute together with the rest; (they have an exemp-

tionem militiæ, que immunitatem omnium
tion from military service and immunity of [in] all

rerum). Excitati tantis præmiis, multi conveniunt in
things). Excited by such advantages, many assemble for

disciplinam, et suā sponte et mittuntur a
instruction, both of their own accord and also are sent by

parentibus que propinquis. Dicuntur ediscere
parents and relations. They are said to learn by heart

magnum numerum versuum ibi. Itaque nonnulli
a great number of verses there. Therefore many

permanent vicenos annos in disciplinā; neque
remain twenty years under instruction; nor

existimant esse fas mandare ea
do they consider (it) to be lawful to commit these (things)

litteris, cum utantur Græcis litteris in fere
to writing, although they use the Greek letters in nearly

reliquis rebus, publicis que privatis rationibus.
(all) other affairs, in public and in private transactions.

Id videtur mihi instituisse de duabus causis;
This seems to me to have been established for two reasons;

quod neque velint disciplinam efferi in
because they neither wish their discipline to be divulged to

volgos, neque ĕos qui discunt, confisos
the common people, nor (that) those who learn relying

litteris, studēre memoriæ minus.
on writing, should cultivate (their) memory the less.

Quod fere accidit plerisque, ut præsidio
Which [This] ordinarily happens to most men, so that by the aid

litterarum remittant diligentiam in perdiscendo,
of writing they relax (their) application in thoroughly learning,

ac memoriam. In primis volunt persuadēre
and (their) memory. In particular they wish to inculcate

hoc; animas non interire, sed post mortem
this; (that) souls [do] not (to) die, but after death

transire ab aliis ad alios[20] atque putant
(to) pass from one (body) to another and they think

hōc maxime excitari ad virtutem,
(that) by this (men) greatly to be [are] roused to courage,

metu mortis neglecto. Præterea disputant,
the fear of death having been disregarded. Moreover they discuss,

et tradunt juventuti multa de sideribus,
and impart to the youths many things concerning the stars,

atque eorum motu, de magnitudine mundi
and their motion, concerning the size of the world

ac terrarum, de naturā rerum, de
and the earth, concerning the nature of things, concerning

vi ac potestate immortalium deorum.
the power and majesty of the immortal gods.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum
The other class is (of) the knights. These, when there

est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante
is need, and any war occurs, (which before

adventum Cæsaris solēbat accidĕre fere quotannis,
the arrival of Cæsar was wont to happen nearly every year,

uti aut ipsi inferrent injurias, aut
that either they themselves might inflict injuries or

propulsarent illatas) omnes versantur in bello;
might repel (them) inflicted) all are employed in the war;

atque ut quisque eorum est amplissimus
and in proportion as each one of them is very noble

genere que copiis, ita habet plurimos ambactos
by family and resources, so he has very many vassals

que clientes circum se. Noverunt hanc
and clients about himself [him]. They have learned [know] this

gratiam que potentiam unam.
authority and power only.

16. Omnis natio Gallorum est admodum dedita
The whole nation of the Gauls is very much given

religionibus, atque ob eam causam,
to religion [superstitions] and for this reason (those)

qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, que qui
who are afflicted with very severe diseases and (those) who

versantur in prœliis que periculis, aut immolant
are engaged in war and dangers, either sacrifice

homines pro victimis, aut vovent se
men for [as] victims, or vow (that they) themselves

immolaturos;[21] que utuntur Druidibus
to be about to [will] sacrifice (them); and they use the Druids

(abl.) administris ad ea sacrificia; quod arbitrantur,
as performers of these sacrifices; because they think

nisi vita hominis reddatur pro vitā
(that) unless the life of a man be rendered for the life

hominis, numen immortalium deorum
of a man, the divine will [divinity] of the immortal gods

non posse aliter placari; que habent sacrificia
can not otherwise be appeased; and they have sacrifices

ejusdem generis instituta publice. Alii habent
of the same kind performed publicly. Others have

simulacra immani magnitudine, membra quorum
images with [of] vast size, the limbs of which

contexta viminibus complent vivis hominibus;
woven with twigs they fill with living men;

quibus succensis homines exanimantur
which [these] having been set on fire the men perish

circumventi flammā. Arbitrantur supplicia
surrounded by flame. They think (that) the sacrifice

eorum, qui sint comprehensi in furto aut in
of those, who have been taken in theft or in

latrocinia, aut aliquā noxā esse gratiora
robbery, or some culpable act to be [are] more acceptable

immortalibus diis, sed cum copia ejus
to the immortal gods, but when a supply of this

generis deficit, descendunt etiam ad supplicia
kind is wanting they descend also to the punishment [sacrifice]

innocentium.
of the innocent.

17. Maxime colunt deum Mercurium; sunt
They principally worship the god Mercury; there are

plurima simulacra hujus; ferunt hunc inventorem
many images of him; they regard him (as) the inventor

omnium artium; hunc ducem viarum
of all arts; (they consider) him the guide of their journeys

atque itinerum; arbitrantur hunc habēre maximam
and marches; they believe him to have very great

vim ad quætus pecuniæ que mercaturas (pl.).
power for the acquisition of money and (for) trade.

Post hunc Apollinem et Martem, et
After him (they worship) Apollo and Mars, and

Jovem, et Minervam. De his habent fere
Jupiter, and Minerva. About these they have nearly

eandem opinionem, quam reliquæ gentes;
the same opinion, which (as) other nations; (that)

Appollinem depellĕre[22] morbos, Minervam tradĕre
Apollo drives away diseases, (that) Minerva imparts

initia operum atque artificiorum; Jovem
the principles of crafts and of arts; (that) Jupiter

tenēre imperium cœlestium; Martem regĕre
holds the empire of the celestials; (that) Mars rules

bella. Huic, quum constituerunt dimicare prœlio,
wars. To him when they have resolved to engage in battle,

plerumque devovent, ea quæ ceperint
often they vow, those (things) which they may take

bello; animalia quæ superaverint capta
in war; the animals which may have survived (when) captured

immolant, conferunt reliquas res in
they sacrifice, (and) bring together the remaining things into

unum locum. In multis civitatibus licet conspicari
one place. In many states there may be seen

tumulos exstructos harum rerum, consecratis locis.
piles built of these things, in consecrated places.

Neque sæpe accĭdit, ut quispiam, religione
Nor does it often happen, that any one, religion

neglectā, audēret aut occultare apud se
being disregarded, should dare either to conceal at his home

capta, aut tollĕre posita, que
the things captured, or to take away the things deposited, and

gravissimum supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est
the most grievous punishment with torture has been ordained

ei rei.
for this thing.

18. Omnes Galli prædicant se prognatos
All the Gauls assert (that) they are descended

ab Dite patre, que dicunt id
from Dis [Pluto] as progenitor, and they say (that) this (account)

prodĭtum[23] ab Druidibus. Ob eam causam
has been handed down by the Druids. For this reason

finiunt spatia (pl.) omnis temporis non
they determine the duration of all time not

numero dierum, sed noctium; et observant
by the number of days, but of nights; and observe

natales dies, et initia (pl.) mensium et
birth days, and the commencement of the months and

annorum, sic ut dies subsequatur noctem. In
of years, in such a way that the day may follow the night. In

reliquis institutis vitæ differunt hōc ab fere
other usages of life they differ in this from nearly all

reliquis, quod non patiantur suos liberos adire
others, that they do not suffer their children to approach

se palam, nisi cum adoleverint, ut
them publicly, except when they have grown up, so that

possint sustinēre munus militiæ; que
they may be able to bear the duty of military service; and

ducunt turpe filium in puerili ætate
they consider (it) shameful (for) a son in boyish age

assistĕre in conspectu patris, in publico.
to attend in the presence of his father, in public.

19. Quantas pecunias viri acceperunt ab
As much money (as) the husbands have received from

uxoribus, nomine dotis, tantas, æstimatione
wives, in the name of dower, so much, an estimate

factā, communicant cum dotibus ex suis
having been made, they join with the dower from their own

bonis. Omnis hujus pecuniæ ratio conjunctim
goods. Of all this money an account in common

habetur, que fructus servantur; uter eorum
is kept, and the profits are reserved; whichever of them

superārit vitā. pars utriusque cum fructibus
shall have survived in life, the share of both with the profits

superiorum temporum (pl.) pervĕnit ad eum. Viri
of the previous time falls to him. Husbands

habent potestatem vitæ que nĕcis in uxores,
have the power of life and death against [over] the wives.

sicuti in libĕros. Et cum pater-
as well as against [over] the children. And when the father

familias natus illustriore loco decessit,
of a family born in a more illustrious place [rank] has died,

ejus propinqui conveniunt, et si res vēnit
his relations assemble, and if the event has come

in suspicionem, habent de morte quæstionem
into suspicion, they hold about his death an examination

de uxoribus in servilem modum,[24] et si est
of his wives after the slave manner, and if it is

compertum interficiunt excruciatas igni atque
proved they kill (them) tortured by fire and

omnibus tormentis. Funera, pro cultu
all torments. The funerals, for the civilization

Gallorum, sunt magnifica et sumptuosa, que omnia,
of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly, and all things,

quæ arbitrantur fuisse cordi[25] vivis, inferunt
which they judge to have been dear to the living, they cast

in ignem, etiam animalia; ac paulo supra hanc
into the fire, even animals; and a little before this

memoriam, servi et clientes, quos constabat
memory [time], slaves and clients, whom it was understood

dilectos esse ab iis, cremabantur unā,
to have [had] been beloved by them, were burnt together

justis funeribus confectis.
(with them), the proper funeral rites having been performed.

20. Quæ civitates existimantur administrare
Those states (which) are believed to administer

suam rem publicam (sing.) commodius, habent
their public affairs more advantageously, have

sanctum legibus si quis acceperit
established by law (that) if any one shall have heard

quid a finitimis de re publicā rumore aut
anything from neighbors about the state by rumor or

famā, uti deferat ad magistratum, neve
by report, that he should bring (it) to the magistrate, nor

communicet cum quo alio; quod cognitum est
communicate with any other, because it has been known

sæpe temerarios atque imperitos homines
(that) often rash and inexperienced men

terrēri falsis rumoribus, et impelli
to be [are] terrified by false rumors, and to be [are] impelled

ad facĭnus, et căpĕre consilium de summis
to crime, and form a plan about the most important

rebus. Magistratus occultant quæ visa sunt que
things. The magistrates conceal what seem best and

produnt multitudini, quæ judicaverint esse ex usu.
disclose to the people what they have decided to be of use.

Non conceditur loqui de re publicā nisi
It is not allowed to speak concerning a public matter except

per concilium.
through the council.

21. Germani differunt multum ab hāc consue-
The Germans differ much from this way

tudine; nam habent neque Druides, qui præsint
of life; for they have neither Druids, who preside over

divinis rebus; neque student sacrificiis Ducunt
sacred things; nor are they interested in sacrifices. They hold

numĕro deorum eos solos, quos cernunt,
in the number of the gods, those only whom they perceive,

et quorum opibus (pl.) juvantur aperte,
and by whose assistance they are benefitted obviously,

Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam; acceperunt
as the Sun, and Vulcan, (fire) and the Moon; they have heard

reliquos ne quidem famā. Omnis vita
(of) the others not even by report. All (their) life

consistit in venationibus (pl.) atque in studiis
is employed in hunting and in the pursuits

militaris rei (sing); ab parvulis student
of military affairs; from children they accustom themselves

labori ac duritiæ. Qui permanserunt diutissime
to labor and hardship. Those who have remained the longest

impuberes, ferunt maximam laudem inter suos.
chaste, obtain the greatest praise among their (people).

Putant hoc staturam ali,
(They) believe (that) by this the stature to be [is] increased,

hoc vires ali, que nervos
by this the strength to be [is] increased, and the nerves

confirmari. Vero habuisse notitiam
to be [are] strengthened. Indeed to have had the knowledge

feminæ intra vicesimum annum habent in
of a woman within [under] the twentieth year they hold among

turpissimis rebus; cujus rei est nulla
the most shameful things; of this thing there is no

occultatio, et quod perluuntur promiscue in
concealment, both because they bathe promiscuously in

fluminibus, et utuntur pellibus, aut parvis tegimentis
the rivers, and use skins, or small coverings

(abl.) renonum, magnā parte corpŏris nudā.
of deer hides, a great part of the body being naked.

22. Non student agri culturæ; que major
They are not fond of agriculture; and the greater

pars eorum victūs consistit in lacte et caseo
part of their food consists in [of] milk and cheese

et carne. Neque habet quisquam certum modum
and meat. Nor has any one a fixed portion

agri, aut proprios fines; sed magistratus ac
of land, or his own boundaries; but the magistrates and

principes, in singŭlos annos attribuunt quantum
chiefs, from year to year, assign as much

agri, et quo loco visum est, gentibus que
(of) land, and in what place it seems best, to the tribes and

cognationibus hominum, qui coierunt unā,
to the families of men, who have united together,

atque anno post cogunt transire alio
and in the year after they compel (them) to go somewhere else.

Adferunt multas causas ejus rei (gen.); ne capti
They offer many reasons for this thing; lest captivated

assiduā consuetudine commutent studium
by continued custom they may change (their) zeal

gerendi belli agri culturā; ne studeant
of [for] waging war for agriculture; lest they may be eager

parare latos fines, que potentiores expellant
to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful may expel

humiliores possessionibus; ne ædificent
the more humble from possessions; lest they may build

accuratius ad vitandos frigŏra atque æstus; ne qua
with too much care for avoiding cold and heat; lest any

cupiditas pecuniæ oriatur, ex quā re factiones
desire of money may arise, from which thing factions

que dissensiones nascuntur; ut contineant
and dissensions originate; that they may keep

plebem æq uitate animi, quum quisque
the common people in peace of mind, since each one

videat suas opes æquari cum
may see (that) his own means to be [are] equal with

potentissimis.
the most powerful.

23. Est maxima laus civitatibus, habēre
It is the greatest honor to the states, to have

solitudines quam latissimas[26] circum se,
deserts as (most) wide (as possible) about themselves,

finibus vastatis. Existimant hoc
their frontiers having been laid waste. They consider this

proprium virtutis, finitimos expulsos
a peculiar (evidence) of valor, (that) their neighbors expelled

agris cedĕre, neque quemquam
from (their) lands (to) abandon (them), and (that) not any

(sing) audere consistĕre prope se.
(to) dare (to) settle near them.

Simul arbitrantur se
At the same time they think (that) they themselves

fŏre tutiores hōc, timōre repentinæ
to be about to [will] be more safe by this, the fear of sudden

incursionis sublato. Cum civitas aut
invasion having been removed. When the state either

defendit bellum illatum, aut infert,
repels war waged against it, or wages war,

magistratus deliguntur, qui præsint ei bello,
magistrates are chosen, who may preside over this war,

ut habeant potestatem vitæ que nĕcis.
so that they may have the power of life and death.

In pace est nullus communis magistratus, sed
In peace there is no general magistrate, but

principes regionum atque pagorum dicunt
the chiefs of the provinces and cantons say [administer]

jus inter suos, que minŭunt controversias.
justice among their (people), and settle disputes.

Habent nullam infamiam latrocinĭa, quæ fiunt
They hold as no disgrace robberies which are committed

extra fines cujusque civitatis, atque prædicant
beyond the boundaries of any state, and they assert

ea fieri causā exercendæ
these [robberies] to be committed for the purpose of exercising

juventutis ac minuendæ desidiæ. Atque ubi quis
the youth and of preventing sloth. And when any one

ex principibus dixit in concilĭo, se
from [of] the chiefs has said in council [that he] himself

fŏre ducem, ut qui velint
to be about to [will] be the leader, that those who may wish

sequi profiteantur; ĭi qui probant et
to follow may volunteer; those who approve both

causam et hominem consurgunt, que pollicentur
the cause and the man rise up, and promise

suum auxilium, atque collaudantur ab multitudine.
their aid, and are applauded by the multitude.

Qui ex iis, non secuti sunt, ducuntur
Those of them, (who) have not followed, are reckoned

in numero desertorum ac proditorum; que
in the number of deserters and of traitors, and

postea fides abrogatur iis omnium
afterwards credit is taken away from them in all

rerum (gen.). Putant non fas violare
things. They consider it not lawful to injure

hospites; qui venerunt ad eos de quāque
their guests; those who have come to them for any

causā, prohibent ab injuriā, que habent
reason, they defend from harm, and they hold (them)

sanctos; domus omnium patent iis, que
inviolable; the houses of all are open to them, and

victus communicatur.
food is shared (with them).

24. Ac antea fuit tempus, cum Galli
And formerly (there) was a time, when the Gauls

superarent Germanos virtute, et ultro
excelled the Germans in bravery, and of their own accord

inferrent (imp. subj.) bella, ac propter
used to wage war, and on account of

multitudinem hominum que inopiam agri,
the multitude of men and the scarcity of land,

mittĕrent (imp. subj.) colonias trans Rhenum.
used to send colonies across the Rhine.

Itaque Volcæ Tectosages occupārunt ea loca
Therefore the Volcæ Tectosages occupied those places

Germaniæ, quæ sunt fertilissima, atque consederunt
of Germany, which are the most fruitful, and settled

ibi, circum Hercyniam silvam, (quam video
there, about the Hercynian forest, (which I perceive

esse notam Eratostheni et quibusdam
to have been [was] known to Eratosthenes and some other

Græcis famā; illi appellant quam Orcyniam).
Greeks by report; they call which [it] Orcynia).

Quae gens continet se iis sedibus
Which [This] nation maintains itself in these settlements

ad hoc tempus, que habet summam opinionem
to this time, and has the highest reputation

justitiæ et bellicæ laudis; que nunc
of [for] justice and (of) warlike honor, and now

permanent in eādem inopia, egestate,
they remain in the same privation [want] poverty [need],

patientiā, quā Germani; utuntur
(and) resignation in which [as] the Germans; they use

eodem victu et cultu corpŏris. Propinquitas
the same food and care of the body. The proximity

provinciæ Gallis, et notitia transmarinarum
of (our) province to the Gauls, and the knowledge of transmarine

rerum largitur (sing.) multa ad copiam
affairs provides many (things) for supply [wealth]

atque usus. Paulatim assuefacti superari, que
and use. By degrees accustomed to be overcome, and

victi multis prœiis ipsi ne quidem[27]
conquered in many battles they do not even

comparant se virtute cum illis.
compare themselves in valor with them [the Germans].

25. Latitudo hujus Hercyniæ silvæ, quæ
The breadth of this Hercynian forest, which

demonstrata est supra, patet iter novem dierum
has been mentioned above, extends a journey of nine days

expedito. Enim potest non finiri aliter,
for an unburdened (man). For it can not be bounded otherwise,

neque noverunt mensuras itinerum. Oritur
nor do they know measures of roads. It begins

ab finibus Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et
from [at] the frontiers of the Helvetii, and of the Nemetes. and

Rauracorum, que pertinet rectā regione
of the Rauraci, and it extends in a straight direction (along)

flumĭnis Danuvi, ad fines Dacorum et
the river Danube, to the territories of the Daci and

Anartium; hinc flectit se sinistrorsus diversis
of the Anartes; thence it bends itself to the left in different

regionibus a flumĭne, que attingit fines
directions from the river, and it touches the boundaries

multarum gentium propter magnitudinem. Neque
of many nations on account of its great extent. Nor

est quisquam hujus Germaniæ, qui dicat
is (there) any one of this (part of) Germany, who may say

se aut adisse ad
himself (that he) either to have gone [has gone] to

initium ejus silvæ, cum processerit
the beginning of this forest, though he may have proceeded

iter sexaginta dierum, aut acceperit ex quo
a journey of sixty days, or may have heard from what

loco oriatur. Constat multa genera
place it begins. It is certain (that) many kinds

ferarum nasci in ea, quæ sint non visa in
of wild beasts are born in it, which are not seen in

reliquis locis; ex quibus quæ maxime differant
other places; from which (those) that greatly differ

ab ceteris, et videantur prodenda
from the rest, and seem worthy to be handed down

memoriæ, sunt hæc.
to memory, are these.

26. Est bos figurā cervi, a mediā
There is an ox [animal] in the shape of a stag, from the mid

fronte cujus, inter aures, unum cornu existit
forehead of which, between the ears, a horn grows

excelsius, que măgis directum his cornibus,
higher, and more straight (than) those horns,

quæ sunt nota nobis. Ab summo ejus rami
which are known to us. From the top of this branches

diffunduntur late sicut palmæ. Nature
are spread out broadly like palm (leaves). The appearance

feminæ que maris est eădem, eădem forma
of the female and male is the same, the same form

que magnitudo cornuum.
and size of the horns.

27. Sunt item, quæ appellantur alces.
There are also (animals), which are called elks.

Figura harum, et varietas pellium est
The shape of these, and the type of the skins is

consimilis capris, sed magnitudine antecedunt
very like to goats, but in size they surpass

paulo; que sunt mutilæ cornibus, et habent
a little; and they are devoid of horns, and (they) have

crura sine nodis que articulis; neque
legs without articulations and joints; neither

procumbunt causā quietis, neque si afflictæ
do they lie down for the purpose of rest, nor if afflicted

quo casu conciderint, possunt erigĕre
by any accident they have fallen down, can they raise

sese aut sublevare. Arbores sunt his pro
themselves or get up. The trees are to them for [as]

cubilibus; applicant se ad eas, atque
beds; they support themselves against these, and

ita reclinatæ modo paulum capiunt quietem;
so reclined merely a little while take rest;

quum ex vestigiis quarum animadversum est
when from the footsteps of which [these] it has been discovered

a venatoribus quo consueverint recipĕre
by the hunters where they have been accustomed to betake

se, aut subruunt omnes eo
themselves, either they undermine all (the trees) in that

loco a radicibus, aut accidunt arbores tantum ut
place at the roots, or they cut the trees so much that

summa species earum stantium relinquatur.
the total [mere] appearance of them standing may be left.

Huc cum ex consuetudine reclinaverint se,
Here when by custom they have reclined themselves,

affligunt infirmas arbores ponděre, atque ipsæ
they overturn the weak trees by (their) weight, and they

concidunt una.
fall down together (with them).

28. Est tertium genus eorum, qui
There is a third kind of these (animals), which

appellantur uri. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo
are called *wild oxen.* *These* *are* *in size* *a little*

infra elephantos, specie et colore et
below *the elephants,* *with the appearance* *and* *color* *and*

figurā tauri. Eorum vis est magna, et
form *of the bull.* *Their* *strength* *is* *great,* *and* (*their*)

velocitas magna; parcunt neque homĭni neque feræ
speed *great;* *they spare* *neither* *man* *nor* *beast*

quam conspexerint; hos captos foveis
that *they have seen;* *these* *captured* *in pits*

interficiunt studiose. Adolescentes durant se
they kill *with much zeal.* *The youths* *harden* *themselves*

hōc labore, atque exercent hōc genĕre
by this *task,* *and* *exercise* *by this* *kind*

venationis; et qui interfecerunt plurimos
of hunting; *and* (*those*) *who* *have killed* *the most*

ex his, ferunt magnam laudem, cornibus
from [*of*] *these,* *obtain* *great* *honor,* *the horns*

relatis in publicum quæ sint
having been brought *into* *public* *which* [*that they*] *may be* (*as*)

testimonio. Sed ne quidem parvuli excepti
evidence. *But* *not* *even* *the young* (*when*) *captured*

possunt assuescĕre ad homĭnes, et
can *become accustomed* *to* *men,* *and*

mansuefieri. Amplitudo et figura et species
be tamed. *The size* *and* *shape* *and* *appearance*

cornuum differt multum a cornibus nostrorum
of (*their*) *horns* *differs* *much* *from* *the horns* *of our*

boum. Hæc studiose conquisita
oxen. *These* (*horns*) *zealously* *sought*

circumcludunt ab labris argento, atque
they mount *from* [*on*] *the edges* *with silver,* *and*

utuntur in amplissimis epŭlis pro
use (*them*) *in* (*their*) *most splendid* *feasts* *for*

pocŭlis.
cups.

29. Cæsar postquam compĕrit per Ubios
Cæsar *after* *he discovered* *through* *the Ubian*

exploratores, Suevos recepisse sese in
scouts, (that) the Suevi had withdrawn themselves into

silvas, longius, constituit non progredi,
the forests, further, resolved not to proceed,

verĭtus inopiam frumenti, (quod, ut
fearing a scarcity of corn, (because, as

demonstravimus supra, omnes Germani student
we have shown above, all the Germans attend

minime agri culturæ); sed ne tolleret
very little to agriculture); but that he might not take away

omnino barbăris metum sui reditūs atque ut
altogether from the barbarians the fear of his return and that

tardaret eorum auxilia, reducto exercitu,
he might retard their auxiliaries, having led back the army,

rescindit ultimam partem pontis, quæ contingebat
he breaks down the farthest part of the bridge which touched

ripas Ubiorum, in longitudinem ducentorum
the shores of the Ubii, to the length of two hundred

pedum, atque in extremo ponte (abl.)
feet, and on the extreme [end] (of the) bridge

constituit turrim quattuor tabulatorum, quæ ponit
he constructs a tower of four stories, and places

præsidium duodecim cohortium causā tuendi
a guard of twelve cohorts for the purpose of defending

pontis, quæ firmat eum locum magnis
the bridge, and strengthens this place with great

munitionibus. Præfecit ei loco quæ præsidio,
fortifications. He placed over this place and garrison,

C. Volcatium Tullum, adolescentem; ipse, cum
C. Volcatius Tullus, a young man; he himself, when

frumenta incipĕrent maturescĕre, profectus ad
the crops began to ripen, having set out to

bellum Ambiorigis, per Arduennam
the war of [with] Ambiorix, through the Arduennian [Ardennes]

silvam, (quæ est maxima totius Galliæ, atque
forest, (which is the largest of all Gaul, and

pertinet ab ripis Rheni quæ finibus
extends from the shores of the Rhine and the territories

Trevirorum ad Nervios, que patet amplius
of the Treviri to the Nervii, and reaches more than

quingentis millibus in longitudmem) præmittit
five hundred miles in length) sends forward

L. Minucium Basilium, cum omni equitatu, si
L. Minucius Basilius, with all the cavalry, (to see) if

possit proficĕre quid celeritate itinĕris,
he may be able to gain anything by quickness of march,

atque opportunitate tempŏris; monet ut
and by the favorableness of the time; he warns that

prohibeat ignes fieri in castris (pl.), ne
he should prohibit fires to be made in the camp, lest

qua significatio fiat procul ejus
any intimation [sign] be made at a distance of his

adventūs; dicit sese subsequi confestim.
coming; he says that he himself to [will] follow speedily.

30. Basilius facit ut imperatum est; itinere
Basilius does as was commanded; the march

confecto celeriter, que contra opinionem
having been performed quickly, and contrary to the expectation

omnium, deprehendit multos inopinantes in agris;
of all, he captures many unaware in the fields;

eorum indicio contendit ad Ambiorigem ipsum,
by their information he marches to Ambiorix himself,

in loco quo dicebatur esse cum paucis
in the place in which he was said to be with a few

equitibus. Fortuna potest multum, cum in
horsemen. Fortune can do much, not only in

omnibus rebus, tum in militari re (sing.).
all (other) things, but also in military affairs.

Nam sicut accidit magno casu, ut incideret
For although it happened by great chance, that he fell

in ipsum incautum atque imparatum, que ejus
on him off his guard and unprepared, and his

adventus videretur ab hominibus prius quam
arrival was seen by the men before

afferretur famā ac nuntiis, sic fuit
it could be announced by report and messengers, yet it was

magnæ fortunæ, omni militari instrumento quod
(of) great fortune, all the military equipment that

habēbat circum se erepto, rhedis
he had about him having been seized, his chariots

que equis comprehensis, ipsum
and horses having been captured, (that) he himself

effugĕre mortem. Sed hoc factum est eo quod,
should escape death. But this was effected by the fact that,

ædificio circumdato silvā (ut
the house (having been) surrounded by a wood (as

fere sunt domicilia Gallorum, qui causā
generally are the dwellings of the Gauls, who for the sake

vitandi æstūs, plerumque petunt propinquitates
of avoiding the heat, often seek the vicinity

silvarum ac fluminum), ejus comites que familiares
of woods and rivers), his attendants and friends

sustinuerunt paulisper vim nostrorum equitum
sustained for a little while the force of our calvary

in angusto loco. His pugnantibus (abl.
in a narrow place. (While) these (were) fighting,

abs.), quidam ex suis intulit illum in
a certain one from [of] his (men) placed him on

equum; silvæ texerunt fugientem; sic fortuna
a horse; the woods covered (him) fleeing; thus fortune

valuit multum, et ad subeundum periculum, et
availed much, both for encountering danger, and

ad vitandum.
for avoiding (it).

31. Ne Ambiorix non conduxerit suas copias
Whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces

judicio, quod existimaverit non dimicandum[28]
on purpose, because he thought (it) not to [must not] be engaged

prœlio; an fuerit exclusus tempore et prohibitus
in battle; or was cut off by time and prevented

repentino adventu equitum, cum
by the sudden arrival of the cavalry, when

crederet reliquum exercitum subsequi,
he believed (that) the remainder of the army was following

est dubium, sed certe nuntiis dimissis
is doubtful, but certainly messengers having been sent

clam per agros jussit
secretly through the fields [country] he ordered

quemque consulĕre sibi; quorum pars
that each one should take care of himself; of whom a part

profugit in Arduennam silvam,
fled into the Arduennan [Ardunes] forest,

pars in continentes paludes. Qui
a part into the continuous marshes. (Those) who

fuerunt proxĭmi Oceanum, hi occultaverunt
were nearest the Ocean, these hid

sese in insulis, quas æstus
themselves in the islands, which the tides

consuērunt efficĕre. Multi egressi ex suis
are accustomed to form. Many having emigrated from their

finibus crediderunt se que omnia
territories confided [consigned] themselves and all

sua alienissimis. Catuvolcus rex dimidiæ
their (property) to entire strangers. Catuvolcus king of the half

partis Eburonum qui inierat consilium
part of the Eburones who had entered into counsel

unā cum Ambiorĭge, jam confectus ætate,
together with Ambiorix, now worn out with age,

quum posset non ferre laborem aut belli aut
since he could not bear the fatigue either of war or

fugæ, detestatus Ambiorĭgem omnibus
of flight, having cursed Ambiorix with all (kinds of)

precibus qui fuisset auctor ejus consilii,
imprecations who [since he] had been the author of this plan [design],

exanimavit se taxo, (cujus est
killed himself by yew (leaves), (of which (tree) there is

magna copia in Galliā que Germaniā).
a great abundance in Gaul and in Germany).

32. Segni que Condrusi, ex gente et
The Segni and Condrusi, from [of] the nation and

numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones
the number of the Germans, who are between the Eburones

que Treviros, miserunt legatos ad Cæsarem
and Treviri, sent ambassadors to Cæsar

oratum ne ducĕret se in numero
to pray that he would not consider them in the number

hostium, neve judicaret causam omnium
of enemies, nor should he judge (that) the cause of all

Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum esse
the Germans, who were on this side of the Rhine to be

unam; se cogitāsse nihil
[was] one [the same]; (that) they to have [had] thought nothing

de bello, misisse nulla auxilia
about war, (that) they to have [had] sent no auxiliaries

Ambiorĭgi. Cæsar, re exploratā
to Ambiorix. Cæsar, the thing [matter] having been investigated

quæstione captivorum, imperavit si qui
by the questioning of the prisoners, commanded (that) if any

Eburones convenissent ad eos ex fugā ut
Eburones had come to them from flight that

reducerentur ad se. Si fecissent ita,
they should be brought back to him. If they did so,

negavit se violaturum eorum
he disavowed (that) himself [he] about to [would] harm their

fines. Tum copiis distributis in
territories. Them (his) forces having been distributed into

tres partes, contulit impedimenta omnium legionum
three parts, he removed the baggage of all the legions

Aduatucam. Id est nomen castelli. Hoc est
to Aduatuca. This is the name of a fortress. This is

fere in mediis finibus Eburonum, ubi
nearly in the middle (of the) territories of the Eburones, where

Titurius atque Aurunculeius consederunt causā
Titurius and Aurunculeius had encamped for the purpose

hiemandi. Cæsar probat hunc locum quum
of wintering. Cæsar approves this place not only

reliquis rebus, tum quod munitiones
for the other things, but also because the fortifications

superioris anni manebant integræ, ut
of the preceding year were remaining entire, (so) that

sublevaret laborem militum; reliquit præsidio
he might lighten the labor of the soldiers; he left for [*as*] *a guard*

impedimentis quattuor-decimam legionem, unam
to the baggage the fourteenth legion, one

ex iis tribus, quas proxime conscriptas,
of those three, which lately (*having been*) *enrolled,*

traduxerat ex Italiā. Præfēcit ei legioni
he had brought over from Italy. He appointed over this legion

que castris, Q. Tullium Ciceronem, que attribuit
and the camp, Q. Tullius Cicero, and assigned

ducentos equites.
(*him*) *two hundred horsemen.*

33. Exercĭtu partito, jubet T. Labienum
The army having been divided, he orders T. Labienus

proficisi cum tribus legionibus adversus
to march with three legions in the direction of

Oceanum, in eas partes quæ attingunt Menapios.
the Ocean, into these parts which touch on the Menapii.

Mittit C. Trebonium cum pari numĕro legionum
He sends C. Trebonius with a like number of legions

ad depopulandum eam regionem,[29] quæ adjacet
for devastating that district, which borders on

Aduatucis. Ipse cum tribus reliquis
the Aduatuci. (*He*) *himself with the three remaining* (*legions*)

constituit ire ad flumen Scaldim, quod
resolves to go to the river Scaldis [*Scheldt*], *which*

influit in Mosam que extremas partes
flows into the Mosa [*Meuse*], *and* (*to*) *the extreme parts*

Arduennæ, quo audiebat
of the Arduennian [*Ardennes*] (*forest*), *whither he heard*

Ambiorĭgem profectum cum paucis equitibus.
Ambiorix to have [*had*] *gone with a few horsemen.*

Discedens confirmat sese reversurum
On departing he promises (*that*) (*he*) *himself about to* [*would*] *return*

septimum diem post; ad quam diem sciebat
(*on*) *the seventh day afterwards; on which day he knew*

frumentum debēri ei legioni, quæ
(*that*) *grain to be* [*was*] *due to this legion. which*

relinquebatur in præsidio. Hortatur Labienum que
was left in garrison. He urges Labienus and

Trebonium revertantur ad eam diem, si
Trebonius that they should return on this day, if

possint facĕre commodo rei publicæ, ut,
they could do (it) to the advantage of the republic, that,

concilio communicato rursus, que rationibus
counsel having been communicated mutually, and the plans

hostium exploratis, possint capĕre
of the enemy having been ascertained, they may be able to take

aliud initium belli.
[adopt] another start [beginning] of [in] the war.

34. Erat, ut demonstravimus supra, nulla certa
There was, as we have shown above, no fixed

mănus, non præsidium, non oppidum, quod
body of men, not a garrison, not a town, that

defenděret se armis, sed multitudo dispersa in
could defend itself by arms, but a multitude scattered in

omnes partes. Ubi cuique aut abdĭta vallis, aut
all directions. Where to any one either a hidden valley, or

silvestris locus, aut impedita palus, offerebat
a woody place, or a difficult swamp, offered

aliquam spem præsidii aut salutis, consederat.
some hope of protection or of safety, he had settled.

Hæc loca erant nota vicinitatibus, que res
These places were known to the neighbors, and the thing

requirebat magnam diligentiam, non in
[condition] required great care, not in

tuendā summā (abl.) exercitūs (enim nullum
protecting the main body of the army (for no

periculum, universis, poterat accidĕre ab
danger, to the whole, could happen from (them)

perterrĭtis ac dispersis), sed in conservandis singulis
terrified and dispersed), but in preserving individual

militibus; quæ res tamen ex parte pertinebat
soldiers; which thing [this condition] however in part pertained

ad salutem exercitūs. Nam et cupidĭtas prædæ
to the safety of the army. For both the desire of booty

evocabat multos longĭus, ac silvæ incertis
enticed many too far and the woods by their uncertain

que occultis itineribus prohibebant adire
and hidden paths prevented (them) to advance [from

confertos. Si vellet negotium confici
advancing] close together. If he wished the business to be finished,

que stirpem sceleratorum hominum interfici,
and a race of infamous men to be exterminated,

plures mănus dimittendæ, que milites
a great many bands to [must] be sent out, and the soldiers

diducendi erant; si vellet continere manipulos
to [must] be detached; if he desired to keep the companies

ad signa, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo
to the ensigns, as the constituted order and custom

Romani exercitūs postulabat, locus ipse erat
of the Roman army demanded, the place itself was

præsidio barbăris; neque dĕerat
(for) a protection to the barbarians; neither was there wanting

singulis audacia insidiandi ex occulto, et
to individuals the daring of ambushing in secret, and

circumveniendi dispersos. At in difficultatibus
of surrounding dispersed (soldiers). But in difficulties

ejusmodi quantum diligentiā poterat provideri
of this nature as much as by diligence could be provided

providebatur; ut potius aliquid omitteretur
was provided so that rather something might be omitted

in nocendo, esti animi omnium
in injuring (the enemy), although the minds of all

ardebant ad ulciscendum, quam nocere-
were burning to be avenged than that (the enemy) might

tur cum aliquo detrimento militum.
be injured with any loss of soldiers.

Cæsar dimittit nuntios ad finitimas civitates;
Cæsar sends off messengers to the neighboring states;

evocat omnes ad se, spe prædæ, ad
he invites all to himself, by the hope of plunder for

diripiendos Eburones; ut potius vita Gallorum
ravaging the Eburones; that rather the life of the Gauls

periclitetur in silvis, quam legionariorum;
may be hazarded in the woods, than (that) of the legionary

simul, ut magnā multitudine
(soldiers); at the same time, that a great multitude

circumfusā, stirps ac nomen civitatis
having been sent abroad, the race and name of the state

tollatur pro tali facinŏre. Magnus numĕrus
may be destroyed for such a crime. A great number

celeriter convenit undique.
quickly assembled from all places.

35. Hæc gerebantur in omnibus partibus
These (things) were carried on in all parts

Eburonum, que septimus dies appetebat,
of the Eburones, and the seventh day was approaching,

ad quem diem Cæsar constituerat reverti ad
on which day Cæsar had resolved to return to

impedimenta que legionem. Hic potuit cognosci,
the baggage and the legion. Here it might be learned,

quantum fortuna possit in bello, et quantos
how much fortune can do in war, and how great

casus afferat. Hostibus dissipatis
mischances it may bring. The enemy having been dispersed

ac perterrĭtis, ut demonstravimus, erat nulla
and terrified, as we have shown, there was no

manus, quæ afferret modo parvam causam
body of men, which might create only [even] a slight cause

timōris. Fama pervenit trans Rhenum ad
of fear. The report spread beyond the Rhine to

Germanos, Eburones dirĭpi, atque
the Germans, (that) the Eburones to be [were] pillaged, and

omnes evocari ultro ad prædam.
(that) all to be [were] invited freely to the booty

Sugambri cogunt duo millia equitum;
[plunder]. The Sugambri collect two thousand (of) horse;

qui sunt proxĭmi Rheno, a quibus Tencteros
they are the nearest to the Rhine, by whom [and by them] the Tencteri

atque Usipetes receptos ex fugā,
and Usipetes were received in (their) flight, (as)

docuimus supra; transeuntes Rhenum navibus
we have shown above; crossing the Rhine in ships

que ratibus triginta millibus passuum infra eum
and boats thirty thousand paces below this

locum ubi pons perfectus erat, que præsidium
place where the bridge had been made, and the garrison

relictum ab Cæsare, adeunt primos fines
left by Cæsar, they enter the first [nearest] territories

Eburonum; excipiunt multus dispersos ex fugā;
of the Eburones; they surprise many dispersed in flight;

potiuntur magno numĕro pecŏris, cujus
they obtain possession of a great number of cattle, of which

barbări sunt cupidissimi. Invitati prædā
the barbarians are very covetous. Enticed by booty

procedunt longius. Non palus, non silvæ,
they proceed farther. Neither swamp, nor woods,

morantur hos natos in bello que latrocinis.
impede these men born in war and plundering.

Quærunt ex captivis in quibus locis Cæsar
They inquire of the prisoners in what place Cæsar

sit; reperiunt profectum longius, que
may be; they find (that) he has gone further, and

cognoscunt omnem exercĭtum discessisse.
learn (that) all the army to have [has] departed.

Atque unus ex captivis inquit, "quid vos
Moreover one from [of] the captives said "why do you

quibus jam licet esse fortunatissimis sectamini
to whom now it is allowed to be most fortunate follow

hanc miseram et tenuem prædam? Tribus horis
this wretched and trifling plunder? In three hours

potestis venire Aduatucam; huc exercitus Romanorum
you can come to Aduatuca; there the army of the Romans

contulit omnes suas fortunas; est tantum
has collected all its property; there is so little

præsidii, ut ne quidem murus possit cingi,
(of a) garrison, that not even the wall can be manned,

neque audeat quisquam agredi extra munitiones."
nor dares any one go beyond the fortifications."

(Hac) spe oblatā, Germani relinquunt
(This) hope having been offered, the Germans leave

in occulto prædam quam nacti erant;
in hiding the booty which they had obtained;

ipsi contendunt Aduatucam, usi eodem
they proceed to Aduatuca, using the same

duce cujus indicio cognoverant
(person) as guide by whose information they had learned

hæc.
these things.

36. Cicero, (qui per omnes superiores dies,
Cicero, (who through all the former days,

præceptis Cæsaris continuisset milites in
according to the orders of Cæsar had kept the soldiers in

castris summa diligentiā, ac passus est ne
camp with the greatest diligence, and allowed not

quidem quemquam calonem egredi extra
even any camp follower to go beyond

munitionem), septimo die diffidens Cæsarem
the fortification), on the seventh day distrusting (that) Cæsar

servaturum fidem de numĕro dierum,
about to [would] keep faith about the number of days,

quod audiebat eum progressum longius,
because he heard (that) he had proceeded further,

neque ulla fama de ejus redĭtu afferebatur,
nor was any report of his return brought,

simul permotus vocibus eorum, qui
at the same time moved by the words of those, who

appellabant illius patientiam pæne obsessionem si
were calling his endurance nearly a siege if

quidem non licēret egredi ex castris;
indeed it was not allowed to go out from camp;

expectans nullum casum hujusmodi quo
expecting no event of such kind by which [that]

posset offendi, in tribus milibus,
he could be injured, within three miles (of the camp),

novem legionibus oppositis, que maximo
nine legions having been opposed and a numerous

equitatu, hostibus dispersis ac pæne
cavalry, the enemy having been dispersed and almost

deletis, misit quinque cohortes frumentatum in
annihilated, he sent five cohorts to forage in

proximas segĕtes, inter quas et castra
the neighboring corn-fields, between which and the camp

unus collis omnino intererat. Complures ex
one hill in all [alone] intervened. Many from

legionibus relicti erant ægri in castris; ex quibus,
the legions had been left sick in the camp; of whom,

qui hōc spatio dierum convaluerant,
(those) who in this period of time had recovered,

circiter trecenti mittuntur sub vexillo unā;
about three hundred are sent under a standard together;

præterea magna multitudo calonum magna
moreover a great multitude of camp followers (and) a great

vis jumentorum, quæ subsederat in castris,
force of beasts of burden, that had remained in the camp,

sequitur, potestate factā.
follow (them), permission having been given.

37. Hoc ipso tempŏre et casu Germani
At this very time and by chance the German

equĭtes interveniunt, que protĭnus eodem illo
horsemen arrive, and immediately with that same

cursu, quo venerant, conantur irrumpĕre in
speed, with which they had come, try to break into

castra ab decumanā portā; nec visi sunt,
the camp at the decuman gate; nor were they seen,

(silvis objectis ab eā parte), prius
(a wood being interposed at [on] this part [side]), until

quam appropinquarent castris; usque eo, ut
they had approached the camp; even so, that

mercatores, qui tendĕrent sub vallo,
the merchants (sutlers), who encamped under the rampart,

non habērent facultatem recipiendi sui.
had not an opportunity of taking themselves away.

Nostri inopinantes pĕrturbantur novā
Our (men) taken unawares are confused with the new

re, ac cohors in statione vix sustĭnet
condition, and the cohort on guard scarcely sustains

primum impĕtum; hostes circumfunduntur ex
the first attack; the enemy are spread out on

reliquis partibus, si possent reperire quem adĭtum;
the other sides, [to see] if they could find some approach;

nostri ægre tuentur portas; locus
our (men) with difficulty defend the gates; the place

ipse per se que munitio defendit
itself through itself and the fortification defends

reliquos adĭtus; totis castris trepidatur, atque
the other approaches; in all the camp there is alarm, and

alius quærit ex alio causam tumultūs; neque
one inquires of another the cause of the confusion; neither

provident quo signa ferantur, neque in
do they provide where the ensigns may be carried, nor into

quam partem quisque conveniat. Alius pronuntiat
what part each one may assemble. One declares

castra jam capta, alius contendit,
(that) the camp to be [is] already taken, another affirms (that),

exercitu atque imperatore deleto,
the army and the commander having been destroyed,

victores barbăros venisse; plerique fingunt
the victorious barbarians (to) have come; the greater part form

novas religiones sibi ex loco, que
strange superstitions for themselves from the place, and

ponunt ante oculos calamitatem Cottæ et
put before (their) eyes the calamity of Cotta and

Titurii, qui occiderint in eodem castello. Omnibus
Titurius, who fell in the same fortress. All

perterrĭtis tali timore, opinio
(having been) alarmed by such fear, the belief

confirmatur barbaris, ut audierant ex
it confirmed to [among] the barbarians, as they had heard from

captivo, nullum præsidium esse intus;
the captive, (that) no garrison to be [was] within;

nituntur perrumpĕre, que ipsi adhortantur
they endeavor to force an entrance, and they exhort

se, ne dimittant tantam fortunam ex
one another, lest they may let go so great a prize from

manibus.
their hands.

38. P. Sextĭus Bacŭlus, qui duxerat primum
P. Sextius Baculus, who had led the first

pilum apud Cæsarem cujus fecimus mentionem
company under Cæsar of whom we have made mention

superioribus prœliis, relictus erat æger in præsidio,
in former battles, had been left sick in the garrison,

ac caruerat cibo jam quintum diem. Hic,
and had been without food now the fifth day. He,

diffisus suæ saluti ac omnium, inermis
mistrusting his safety and (that) of all, unarmed

prodit ex tabernaculo; videt hostes
goes out from the tent; he sees (that) the enemy

imminēre, atque rem esse in
to be [are] pressing on, and that the affair to be [is] in

summo discrimĭne; capit arma a proximis,
the greatest danger; he seizes arms from the nearest,

atque consistit in portā. Centuriones ejus
and places himself in the gate. The centurions of that

cohortis quæ erat in statione sequuntur hunc;
cohort which was on guard follow him;

paulisper sustinent prœlium unā; animus
for a little while they sustain the battle together; his mind

relinquit Sextĭum[30] gravibus vulneribus acceptis;
leaves Sextius severe wounds having been received;

tractus per mănūs (pl.) ægre servatur.
dragged away by hand with difficulty he is saved.

Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui confirmant
This period having been interposed, the others encourage

sese tantum, ut audeant consistĕre
one another so much, that they dare take stand

in mŭnitionibus, qŭe præbeant speciem
on the fortifications, and show the appearance

defensorum.
of defenders.

39. Intĕrim frumentatione confectā,
In the meantime the foraging having been completed,

nostri milites exaudiunt clamorem, equites
our soldiers hear the shout, the horsemen

præcurrunt cognoscunt in quanto periculo
hasten on before, and ascertain in what great danger

res sit. Vero hīc est nulla munitio,
the matter is. But here there is no fortification,

quæ recipiat perterritos. Modo conscripti
which may receive (those) affrighted. (Those) lately enrolled

atque imperiti militaris usūs convertunt ora ad
and unskilled in military practice turn faces to

tribunum militum que centuriones; expectant
the tribune of the soldiers and centurions; they await

quid præcipiatur ab his. Nemo est tam
what may be commanded by them. No one is so

fortis, quin perturbetur novitate rei.
brave, but (that) he is disconcerted by the strangeness of the affair

Barbări, conspicati signa procul,
[situation]. The barbarians, having seen the standards at a distance,

desistunt ab oppugnatione; primo credunt
desist from the attack; at first they believe (that)

legiones redisse, quas cognoverant ex
the legions have returned, which they had learned from

captivis discessisse longius; postea, paucitate
the captives had gone further; afterwards, the fewness

despectā, faciunt impetum, ex
having been perceived, they make an attack, from [on]

omnibus partibus.
all parts [sides].

40. Calones procurrunt in proximum tumŭlum
The camp followers run to the nearest high ground

celeriter dejecti hinc, conjiciunt se
(and) having been quickly driven thence, they throw themselves

in signa que manipŭlos; eō măgis
among the standards and companies; so much the more

perterrent timidos milites. Alii censent
they alarm the affrighted soldiers. Some are of the opinion

cunĕo facto celeriter
(that) a wedge having been formed they should quickly

perrumpant, quoniam castra sint tam propinqua,
break through, and as the camp is so near,

etsi aliqua pars circumventa ceciderit,
although some part having been surrounded might fall,

at confidunt reliquos posse
still they trust (that) the remainder to be able [can]

servari. Alii ut consistant in
(to) be saved. Others (advise) that they take stand on

jugo, atque omnes ferant eundem casum.
the hill-top, and (that) all undergo the same fate.

Veteres milites, quos docuimus
The veteran soldiers, whom [who] we have mentioned

profectos una sub vexillo non
(to have) marched out together under a standard do not

probant hoc. Itaque cohortati inter se,
approve this. Therefore having encouraged one another,

C. Trebonio, Romano equite, qui præpositus erat
C. Trebonius, a Roman knight, who had been placed over

eis, duce, perrumpunt per medios[31]
them, being their commander, they break through the middle

hostes que omnes ad unum perveniunt
[central] enemies and all to one [a man] arrive

incolumes in castra (acc.). Calones que
safe in the camp. The camp followers and

equites subsecuti hos eodem impetu,
the horsemen having followed these with the same dash,

servantur virtute militum. At ii, qui
are saved by the bravery of the soldiers. But those, who

constiterant in jugo, etiam nunc nullo
had taken stand on the hill-top, even now no

usu militaris rei (sing.) percepto, neque
experience of military affairs having been acquired, neither

potuerunt permanēre in eo consilio, quod proba-
were able to persist in this design, which they had

verant, ut defendĕrent se superiore
approved, that they should defend themselves in the higher

loco, neque imitari eam vim que
position, nor (were able) to imitate that vigor and

celeritatem, quam viderant profuisse
speed, which they had seen to have [had] availed

aliis; sed conati recipere se in
the others; but having attempted to betake themselves into

castra demiserunt in iniquum locum.
the camp they descended into a disadvantageous place.

Centuriones, nonnulli quorum transducti erant
The centurions, some of whom had been transferred

ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum,
from the lower ranks of the other legions,

causā virtutis, in superiores ordines hujus
by reason of bravery, into the higher ranks of this

legionis, ne amittĕrent laudem militaris
legion, lest they might lose renown in military

rei (sing.) partam ante conciderunt pugnantes
affairs acquired before, fell fighting

fortissime. Pars militum, hostibus
most valiantly. A part of (these) soldiers, the enemy

summotis virtute horum,
having been removed by the bravery of these [by their bravery],

pervenit in castra incolŭmis, præter spem;
arrived in the camp safe, beyond expectation;

pars circumventa a barbăris periit.
a part surrounded by the barbarians perished.

41. Germani, expugnatione castrorum des-
The Germans, the storming of the camp having

peratā, quod videbant nostros
been despaired of, because they saw (that) our men

jam constitisse in munitionibus receperunt
had now taken stand on the fortifications betook

sese trans Rhenum, cum eā prædā quam
themselves beyond the Rhine, with that booty which

deposuerant in silvis. Ac tantus fuit
they had deposited in the woods. And so great was

terror, etiam post discessum hostium, ut
the alarm, even after the departure of the enemy, that

eā nocte, cum C. Volusenus venisset ad
on this night, when C. Volusenus had come to

castra, missus cum equitatu, non
the camp, having been sent with the cavalry, he could not

facĕret fidem Cæsarem adesse cum
make [create] confidence (that) Cæsar was near with

exercĭtu incolŭmi. Timor præoccupaverat animos
the army safe. Fear had preoccupied the souls

omnium sic, ut mente pæne alienatā,
of all so, that with a mind almost unbalanced,

dicĕrent equitatum tantum recepisse se
they were saying, (that) the cavalry only to have [had] returned

ex fugā, omnibus copiis deletis,
from the flight, all the forces having been destroyed,

que contendĕrent Germanos ne fuisse
and they asserted (that) the Germans not to have been

oppugnaturos[32] castra exercĭtu
about to assault [would not have assaulted] the camp (if) the army

incolŭmi; quem timorem Cæsaris adventus
being [was] safe; which fear Cæsar's arrival

sustŭlit.
removed.

42. Ille reversus, non ignarus eventūs
He [Cæsar] having returned, not ignorant of the casualty

belli, questus unum, quod cohortes essent
of war, complained (of) one (thing), that the cohorts had been

omissæ ex statione et præsidio; indicavit
sent from the post and from the garrison; he pointed out

ne quidem minimum locum debuisse
(that) not even the least opportunity ought

relinqui casui; fortunam potuisse
to be left to chance; fortune had been able (to do)

multum in repentino adventu hostium, etiam multō
much by the sudden arrival of the enemy, also much

amplius, quod avertisset barbăros ab
more, because she had turned away the barbarians from

vallo ipso que portis castrorum. Omnium
the rampart itself and the gates of the camp. Of all

quarum rerum videbatur maxime admirandum,
which [these] things it seemed most to be wondered at

quod Germani, qui transierant Rhenum eo
that the Germans, who had crossed the Rhine with this

consilio, ut depopularentur fines Ambiorigis,
design, that they might lay waste the territories of Ambiorix,

delati ad castra Romanorum, obtulerunt
having been led to the camp of the Romans brought

Ambiorĭgi optatissimum beneficium.
to Ambiorix a most desirable benefit.

43. Cæsar rursus profectus ad vexandos[33]
Cæsar again having departed to harass

hostes, magno numĕro coacto ex
the enemy, a great number having been assembled from

finitimis civitatibus dimittit in omnes
the neighboring states he sends (them) into all

partes. Omnes vici atque omnia ædificia,
parts. All the villages and all the buildings,

quæ quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; præda
which any one had noticed were set on fire; spoils

agebatur ex omnibus locis; frumenta non
were driven off from all places; the corn not

solum consumebantur (pl.) a tantā multitudine
only was consumed by such a multitude

jumentorum atque hominum, sed etiam procubuerant
of cattle and men, but also had fallen down

tempŏre anni atque imbribus; ut si qui
by the time of year and the rains; so that if any

etiam in præsentiā occultāssent se, tamen
even in [for] the present had concealed themselves, yet

videretur his perendum[34] inopiā omnium
it would seem (that) they must perish through want of all

rerum, exercĭtu deducto. Ac sæpe
things, the army having been withdrawn. And often

ventum est in eum locum, equitatu diviso
it came to this pass, the cavalry having been divided

tanto in omnes partes, ut captivi
so much into [in] all directions, that the prisoners

contenderent Ambiorigem non modo visum
declared (that) Ambiorix was not only seen

ab se in fugā, sed etiam nec abisse
by them in flight, but also (that) he had not gone

plane ex conspectu; ut spe consequendi
clearly out of sight; (so) that the hope of overtaking

illatā, atque infinito labore
(him) having been raised, and an immense labor

suscepto, qui putarent se
having been undertaken, those who thought (that) they

ituros summam gratiam a Cæsare, pæne
would obtain the highest favor from Cæsar, nearly

vincĕrent naturam studio, que semper paulum
conquered nature by (their) efforts, and always but little

videretur defuisse ad summam felicitatem;
seemed to be wanting to complete success;

atque ille eripĕret se latēbris ac silvis
but he rescued himself by hiding places and woods

aut saltibus, et occultatus noctu petĕret alias
or forests, and concealed by night he sought other

regiones, que partes, non majore præsidio
regions, and places, with no greater guard

equitum quam quattuor, quibus solis audebat
of horsemen than four, to whom alone he dared

committĕre suam vitam.
to entrust his life.

44. Regionibus vastatis tali modo,
The country having been laid waste in such manner,

Cæsar reducit exercitum damno duarum
Cæsar leads back the army with the loss of two

cohortium Durocortorum Rhemorum; que concilio
cohorts to Durocortorum of the Rhemi; and a council

indicto in eum locum Galliæ, instituit
having been summoned into this part of Gaul, he resolved

habēre quæstionem de conjuratione Senonum
to have an investigation about the conspiracy of the Senones

et Carnutum; et graviore sententiā pronun-
and Carnutes; and a very severe sentence having been

ciatā de Accone, qui fuerat princeps
pronounced on Acco, who had been the chief

ejus consilii, sumpsit supplicium, more
of this counsel, he took [inflicted] punishment, after the custom

majorum.[35] Nonnulli verĭti judicium profugerunt;
of our ancestors. Some afraid of a trial fled;

cum interdixisset aquā atque igni quibus,
when he had interdicted water and fire to them,

collocavit in hibernis duas legiones ad fines
he stationed in winter quarters two legions on the frontiers

Trevirorum, duas in Lingonibus, reliquas
of the Treviri, two among the Lingones, the remaining

sex Agendici in finibus Senonum, que
six at Agendicum in the territories of the Senones, and

frumento proviso exercitui, ut
corn having been provided for the army, as

instituerat profectus est in Italiam ad agendos
he had resolved he departed for Italy to hold

conventus.
the assemblies.

LIBER SEPTIMUS
Seventh Book

The seventh book opens with a statement of the rising of the Gauls upon knowledge of civil disturbances in Rome which might detain Caesar in the city. Caesar at length sets out for his province and unexpectedly crosses the Alps with an army through deep snows. Meantime Vercingetorix, an Arvernian, had been chosen leader of the revolution. Caesar by rapid marches here and there holds the people in check. He captures Velaunodunum, Cenavum, Noviodunum and Avaricum. Labienus goes on an expedition to the north as far as Lutetia, which the Gauls burn, and after defeating the Gauls in battle he rejoins Caesar. In spite of Caesar's efforts the Aedui join the revolt. Caesar obtains cavalry from Germany and with their aid defeats Vercingetorix in several battles. He is forced to raise the siege of Gergovia on account of the increasing activity of the Gallic nations. Caesar concentrates his forces against Vercingetorix and drives him to Alesia. The investment of Alesia and a general uprising of all Gaul now follow. Caesar is attacked by an army of a quarter of a million from without and holds eighty thousand within the city. After having built extensive works and conquering in fierce contests, he defeats the outside forces, repulses the besieged and compels the surrender of the city. Vercingetorix is sent to Rome in chains, and six years later takes part in Caesar's triumph, after which he is executed. The nations make peace with Caesar who quarters his troops in various places in Gaul. He himself winters at Bibracte. On receiving Caesar's letters the senate decrees a thanksgiving of twenty days.

1. Galliā quietā, Cæsar ut constituerat
Gaul being at peace, Cæsar as he had resolved

proficiscitur in Italiam ad agendos conventus;
proceeds to Italy to hold the assemblies;

ubi cognoscit de cæde P. Clodii, que
there he learns of the murder of P. Clodius, and

factus certior de consulto Senatūs,
having been made acquainted with the decree of the Senate,

ut omnes juniores Italiæ conjurarent,
that all the young men of Italy should take military oath,

instituit habēre delectum totā provinciā. Eæ
he resolved to hold a levy in all the province. These

res celeriter perferuntur in Transalpinam Galliam.
things quickly are reported into Transalpine Gaul.

Galli ipsi addunt et affingunt rumoribus,
The Gauls themselves add to and enlarge the rumors,

(quod res videbatur poscĕre,) Cæsarem
(as the case seemed to demand,) (that) Cæsar

retinēri urbano motu (sing.), neque posse
was detained by the city commotions, nor could

venire ad exercitum in tantis dissentionibus. Impulsi
come to the army in such dimensions. Incited

hāc occasione, qui jam ante dolērent
by this opportunity, those who even before lamented

se subjectos imperio Romani populi,
(that) they were subjected to the dominion of the Roman people,

incipiunt inire consilia de bello liberius
begin to enter into plans concerning war more freely

atque audacius. Principes Galliæ,
and more daringly. The principal men of Gaul,

conciliis indictis inter se silvestribus
councils having been convoked among themselves in woody

ac remotis locis, queruntur de morte
and remote places, complain concerning the death

Acconis; demonstrant hunc casum posse
of Acco; they represent (that) this fate might

recidĕre ad ipsos; miserantur communem
occur to themselves; they bewail the common

fortunam Galliæ; deposcunt omnibus pollicitationibus
lot of Gaul; they demand with all promises

ac præmiis, qui faciant initium belli,
and rewards, (that) some make a beginning of war,

et vindicent Galliam in libertatem
and defend Gaul into [for] (its) freedom

periculo sui capĭtis.[1] Dicunt in primis
at the peril of their lives. They say especially

rationem habendam ejus, ut
(*that*) *care* *was to* [*must*] *be had* *of* [*for*] *this*, *that*

Cæsar intercludatur ab exercĭtu, priusquam eorum
Cæsar *should be cut off* *from* *the army*, *before* *their*

clandestina consilia efferantur. Id esse facile,
secret *designs* *are reported.* (*That*) *this was* *easy*,

quod neque legiones, imperatore absente,
because *neither* *the legions*, *the commander* *being absent*,

audeant egrĕdi ex hibernis, neque possit
dare *to come forth* *from* *winter quarters*, *nor* *can*

imperator pervenire ad legiones sine præsidio.
the commander *arrive* *at* *the legions* *without* *a guard.*

Postremo præstare interfici in acie,
Finally (*that*) *it was better* *to be killed* *in the* *battle-line*,

quam non recuperare vetĕrem gloriam
than *not* *to recover* (*their*) *ancient* *glory*

belli que libertatem quam acceperint a
of [*in*] *war* *and* *the liberty* *which* *they have received* *from*

majoribus.
the forefathers.

2. His rebus agitatis, Carnutes profitentur
These *things* *having been discussed*, *the Carnutes* *proclaim*

se recusare nullum periculum causā
(*that*) *they* *to* [*will*] *refuse* *no* *danger* *for the sake*

commūnis salutis; pollicentur se principes
of the common *safety;* *they promise* (*that*) *they* *the first*

ex omnibus facturos bellum; et
from [*of*] *all* *about to* [*would*] *make* *war;* *and*

quoniam in præsentiā possent non cavēre
since *at* *the present* (*time*) *they could not* *give security*

inter se obsidibus, ne res efferatur,
among *themselves* *by hostages*, *lest* *the matter* *be divulged*

petunt ut sanciatur jurejurando ac fide,
they request *that* *it be ratified* *by oath* *and* *pledge*,

militaribus signis collatis, (quo
the military *standards* *having been stacked together*, (*by which*

more eorum gravissima cærimonia continētur)
usage *their* *most solemn* *ceremony* *is guarded* [*confirmed*])

ne initio belli facto,
lest the commencement of the war having been made,

deserantur a reliquis. Tunc, Carnutibus
they should be deserted by the others. Then, the Carnutes

collaudatis, jurejurando dato ab
having been applauded, the oath having been given by

omnibus qui aderant, tempŏre ejus
all who were present, (and) the time of [for] this

rei constituto, discedĭtur[2] ab
movement having been determined, it is departed[they depart] from

concilio.
the council.

3. Ubi ea dies vēnit, Carnutes, Cotuato et
When this day came, the Carnutes, Cotuatus and

Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus,
Conconnetodumnus as leaders, desperate men,

concurrunt Cenabum, que signo
assĕmble hastily at Cenabum [Orleans], and the signal

dato, interficiunt Romanos cives,
having been given, kill the Roman citizens,

qui constiterant ibi causā negotiandi, in
who had settled there for the purpose of trading, among

iis C. Fufium Citam, honestum Romanum equitem,
them C. Fufius Cita, an honorable Roman knight,

qui jussu Cæsaris, præerat frumentariæ rei;
who by order of Cæsar, presided over the grain supply;

que diripiunt eorum bona. Fama celeriter
and they plunder their property. The report quickly

perfertur ad omnes civitates Galliæ. Nam ubi
is spread to all the states of Gaul. For when

major atque illustrior res incidit, significant
a greater and more notable affair occurs, they indicate

per agros que regiones clamore; alii
(it) through the lands and territories by a shout; others

deinceps excipiunt hunc, et tradunt proximis,
in succession receive this, and transmit (it) to the nearest

ut tunc accidit. Nam quæ gesta essent
as then happened. For what (things) had been done

Cenabi sole oriente (abl. abs.),[3]
at Cenabum [Orleans] at sun rise,

audita sunt ante primam vigiliam[4] confectam,
were heard before the first watch was completed,

in finibus Arvernorum, quod est spatium
in the territories of the Arverni, which is a space

circiter centum et sexaginta millium
[distance] of about a hundred and sixty thousand

passuum.
paces.

4. Ibi simili ratione Vircingetorix, Arvernus,
There in like manner Vircingetorix, an Arvernian,

filius Celtilli, adolescens summæ potentiæ,
the son of Celtillus, a young man of the highest power,

(cujus pater obtinuerat principatum totius Galliæ,
(whose father had held the foremost place of all Gaul,

et ob eam causam, quod appetebat regnum
and for this reason, that he was seeking sovereign

interfectus erat ab civitate), suis clientibus
power had been put to death by the state), his clients

convocatis, facile incendit eos. Ejus
having been called together, he easily inflamed them. His

consilio cognito concurritur[5] ad arma.
design having been known they rush to arms.

Prohibētur ab Gobannitione suo patruo, que
He is opposed by Gobannitio his uncle, and

reliquis principibus, qui non existimabant
the other chiefs, who did not think (that)

hanc fortunam temptandam; expellitur
this fortune [hazard] ought to be attempted; he is expelled

ex oppido Gergoviā. Tamen non
from the town (of) Gergovia. However he does not

desistit, atque in agris habet delectum
desist, and in the fields [country] holds a levy

egentium ac perditorum. Hāc manu coac-
of needy and desperate (men). This band having

ta, quoscunque ex civitate adit
been collected, whomsoever of the state he approaches

perducit in suam sententiam. Hortatur, ut
he brings over to his opinion. He exhorts, that

capiant arma causā communis libertatis;
they take arms for the sake of the common liberty;

que magnis copiis coactis, expellit ex
and great forces having been collected, he expels from

civitate suos adversarios a quibus ejectus erat
the state his adversaries by whom he had been evicted

paulo ante. Appellatur rex ab suis;
a little before. He is called king by his (followers);

dimittit legationes quoquoversus; obtestatur ut
he sends embassies in every direction; he implores that

maneant in fide. Celeriter adjungit sibi
they remain in faith. Speedily he attaches to himself

Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones,
the Senones, the Parisii, the Pictones, the Cadurci, the Turones,

Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos, que omnes reliquos,
the Aulerci, the Lemovici, the Andes, and all the rest,

qui attingunt Oceanum. Imperium defertur
who border on the Ocean. The chief command is conferred

ad eum consensu omnium. Quā potestate
on him by the consent of all. Which [This] power

oblatā, impĕrat obsĭdes omnibus iis
having been obtained, he demands hostages from all these

civitatibus; jubet certum numĕrum militum
states; he orders a fixed number of soldiers

celeriter adduci ad se; constituit quantum
speedily to be brought to him; he decrees what number

armorum quæque civitas efficiat domi, que
of arms each state should prepare at home, and

ante quod tempus; in primis studet equitatui.
before what time; especially he attends to the cavalry.

Summæ diligentiæ addit summam severitatem
To the highest diligence he adds the highest severity

imperii; magnitudine supplicii cogit
of command; by the greatness of punishment he forces

dubitantes. Nam majore delicto commisso
the hesitating. For a greater crime having been committed

necat igni atque omnibus tormentis;
he puts to death by fire and all (kinds of) tortures;

de leviore causā, auribus desectis, aut
for a slighter cause, the ears having been cut off, or

singŭlis oculis (plural) effosis, remittit
a single eye (having been) put out, he sends (them)

domum; ut sint documento reliquis, et
home; that they may be (for) an example to the rest, and

perterreant alios magnitudine pœnæ.
may terrify others by the greatness of the punishment.

5. Exercĭtu coacto celeriter his
An army having been assembled quickly by these

suppliciis, mittit Lucterium Cadurcum hominem
punishments, he sends Lucterius the Cadurcan a man

summæ audaciæ cum parte copiarum in
of the highest daring with a part of the forces to

Rutenos; ipse proficiscitur in Bituriges.
the Ruteni; he himself sets out into the Bituriges.

Ejus adventu Bituriges mittunt legatos ad
On his arrival the Bituriges send ambassadors to

Æduos, (in quorum fide erant,) rogatum
the Ædui, (in whose alliance they were,) to ask for

subsidium, quo possint facilius
aid, by which [that] they may be able the more easily

sustinēre copias hostium. Ædui de consilio
to resist the forces of the enemy. The Ædui by the advice

legatorum, quos Cæsar reliquerat ad
of the lieutenants, whom Cæsar had left at [with]

exercitum, mittunt copias equitatūs que peditatūs
the army, send forces of cavalry and foot

Biturigibus; qui cum venissent ad flumen
to the Bituriges; who when they had arrived at the river

Ligerim, quod dividit Bituriges ab Æduis,
Loire. which divides the Bituriges from the Ædui,

morati paucos dies ibi, neque ausi
having delayed a few days there, and not having dared

transire flumen, revertunt domum; que renuntiant
to cross the river, return home; and they report

nostris legatis se veritos perfidiam
to our lieutenants (that) they having feared the treachery

Biturigum revertisse; quibus[6] cognoverint
of the Bituriges to have [had] returned; to whom they had ascertained

id consilii fuisse, ut si transissent
this plan to have [had] been, that if they had crossed

flumen, ex unā parte ipsi, alterā
the river, on the one side they [the Bituriges], on the other

Arverni circumsistĕrent se. Ne fecerint
the Arverni would surround them. Whether they did

id de eā causā, quam pronunciārunt
this from [for] that reason, which they alleged

legatis, an adducti perfidiā, quod nihil
to the lieutenants, or were induced by treachery, because nothing

constat nobis, non vidētur ponendum esse
is clear to us, it does not seem (that it) ought to be put down

pro certo. Biturges eorum discessu statim
for certain. The Bituriges on their retreat immediately

conjungunt se cum Arvernis.
unite themselves with the Arverni.

6. His rebus nuntiatis Cæsari, in Italiam,
These things having been reported to Cæsar, in Italy,

cum jam ille intelligĕret urbanas res
since already he understood (that) the city affairs

pervenisse in commodiorem statum virtute[7]
had come into a more satisfactory state by the conduct

Cn. Pompeii, profectus est in Transalpinam Galliam.
of Cn. Pompey, he set out for Transalpine Gaul.

Quum venisset eo afficiebatur magnā
When he had arrived there he was troubled with the great

difficultate, quā ratione posset pervenire
difficulty, in [as to] what manner he could reach

ad exercitum. Nam si arcessĕret legiones in
the army. For if he should summon the legions into

Provinciam, intelligebat dimicaturas
the province, he understood (that) they about to [must] fight

prœlio in itinĕre, se absente; si ipse
in battle on the march, he being absent; if he himself

contendĕret ad exercĭtum, videbat, suam
should hasten to the army, he saw (that) his

salutem recte committi ne quidem
safety properly to [could] be committed not even

iis, qui eo tempŏre viderentur
to those, who at this time were appearing

pacti.
(to be) peaceable.

7. Intĕrim Lucterĭus Cadurcus missus
In the mean time Lucterius the Cadurcan having been sent

in Rutenos conciliat eam civitatem Arvernis.
to the Ruteni gains over this state to the Arveni.

Progressus in Nitiobrĭges et Gabalos, accipit
Having marched into the Nitiobriges and Gabali, he receives

obsĭdes ab utrisque; et magnā manu co-
hostages from both; and a large band having been

actā, contendit facĕre eruptionem in Provinciam
collected, he hastens to make an invasion into the province

versus Narbonem. Quā re nuntiatā,
toward Narbo. Which [This] thing having been reported,

Cæsar existimavit, antevertendum omnibus
Cæsar thought, that (it) to [must] be preferred to all

consiliis, ut proficisceretur Narbonem.
(other) plans, that he should set out to Narbo.

Cum venisset eō, confirmat timentes, constituit
When he had arrived there, he encourages the timid, he places

præsidia in provincialibus Rutenis, Volcis
garrisons among the provincial Ruteni, the Volci

Arecomicis, Tolosatibus, quæ circum Narbonem, quæ
Arecomici, the Tolosates, and about Narbo, which

loca erant finitima hostibus; jubet partem copiarum
places were near the enemy; he orders a part of the forces

ex Provinciā que supplementum, quod adduxerat
from the province and the recruits, which he had brought

ex Italiā convenire in Helvios qui contingunt
from Italy to assemble among the Helvii who border on

fines Arvernorum.
the territories of the Arverni.

8. His rebus comparatis, Lucterĭo jam
These things having been arranged, Lucterius now

represso et remoto, quod putabat
having been checked and removed, because he thought (it)

periculosum intrare intra præsidia, pro-
dangerous to enter within [among] the garrison, he [Cæsar]

ficiscitur in Helvĭos. Etsi mons Cebenna,
marches into the Helvii. Although mount Cevennes,

qui discludit Arvernos ab Helvĭis impediebat
which separates the Arverni from the Helvii blocked

iter altissimā nive durissimo tempŏre
the road with very deep snow at the severest time [season]

anni, tamen nive sex pedum in altitudinem
of the year, nevertheless the snow six feet in height [depth]

discussā, atqua viis ita patefactis,
having been removed, and the roads thus having been opened,

pervenit ad fines Arvernorum summo
he arrives at the territories of the Arverni by the utmost

labore militum. Quibus oppressis,
labor of his soldiers Who [They] (having been) astounded,

inopinantibus, quod existimabant se
taken unawares, because they thought (that they) themselves

munītos Cebennā ut muro, ac eo
(were) defended by the Cevennes as by a wall, and in this

tempore anni semitæ unquam patuerant
season of the year the paths never had lain open

homini ne singulari quidem, imperat
to a man (not) by himself even, he [Cæsar] commands

equitibus, ut vagentur quam latissime
the cavalry, that they should roam as far as

possint, et inferant quam maximum
they may be able, and should occasion the very greatest

terrorem hostibus. Hæc celeriter perferuntur
fear to the enemy. These (things) are quickly announced

ad Vercingetorigem famā ac nuntiis; quem
to Vercingetorix by report and messengers; whom [him]

omnes Arverni perterrĭti circumsistunt atque
all the Arverni alarmed beset and

obsecrant ut consulat suis fortunis, neu
entreat that he look out for their property, nor

patiatur se diripi ab hostibus,
suffer them to be plundered by the enemy

præsertim cum videat omne bellum trans-
especially when he sees (that) all the war has been trans-

latum ad se. Precibus quorum[8] per-
ferred to themselves. By the entreaties of whom [them] having been

motus ille movet castra ex Biturigibus
stirred he moves (his) camp from the Bituriges

versus in Arvernos.
towards the Arverni.

9. At Cæsar moratus biduum in iis locis
But Cæsar having delayed two days in these places

quod[9] præceperat opinione, hæc
because he had anticipated in [through] surmise, (that) these

ventura usu de Vercingetorige,
(things) would come in use [to pass] regarding Vercingetorix,

discĕdit ab exercĭtu per causam cogendi
departs from the army (as) for the cause of raising

supplementi que equitatūs; præfēcit Brutum,
recruits and cavalry; he placed Brutus,

adolescentem, iis copiis; monet hunc, ut
a young man, over these forces; he instructs him, that

equites pervagentur quam latissime in
the cavalry should range about as far as possible into

omnes partes, se daturum operam
all directions, (that) he about to [would] take care

ne absit ab castris longius
that he may not be absent from the camp longer (than)

triduo. His rebus constitutis, pervĕnit
three days. These things having been arranged, he arrives

Viennam maximis itineribus quam potest,
at Vienna [Vienne] by as great marches as he is able,

suis inopinantibus. Ibi nactus recentem
his (men) not expecting (him). There having found the fresh

equitatum, quem præmiserat eō multis
[newly enrolled] cavalry, which he had sent there many

diebus ante, itinĕre intermisso neque
days before, the march having been interrupted neither

diurno neque nocturno, contendit per fines
by day nor by night, he hastens through the territories

Æduorum in Lingones, ubi duæ legiones
of the Ædui into the Lingones, where two legions

hiemabant, ut si etiam quid consilii de
were wintering, that if also any plan respecting

suā salute iniretur ab Æduis præcurrĕret,
his safety was entered into by the Ædui he might anticipate

celeritate. Cum pervenisset eō mittit
(it). by (his) quickness. When he had arrived there he sends

ad reliquas legiones, que cogit omnes in unum
to the other legions, and gathers all into one

locum, prius quam possit nuntiari
place, before it is possible [can] (to) be announced

Arvernis de ejus adventu. Hāc re
to the Arverni concerning his arrival. This thing

cognitā, Vercingetorix rursus reducit
having been known, Vercingetorix again marches back (his)

exercĭtum in Biturĭges, atque inde profectus
army to the Bituriges, and thence having set out

Gorgobinam, oppidum Boiorum, quos
to Gorgobina, a town of the Boii, whom (having been)

victos Helvetico prœlio, Cæsar collocaverat
conquered in the Helvetian battle, Cæsar had placed

ibi, que attribuerat Æduis, instituit oppugnare.
there, and had assigned to the Ædui, he resolved to assault (it).

10. Hæc res afferebat magnam difficultatem
This affair was causing great perplexity

Cæsari ad capiendum consilium;[10] si contin-
to Cæsar for taking [forming] a plan; if he should

ēret legiones in uno loco reliquam partem
keep together the legions in one place the remaining part

hiemis, ne, stipendiariis Ædui expugnatis,
of the winter, lest, the tributaries of the Ædui having been stormed,

cuncta Gallia deficĕret, quod videretur
all Gaul might revolt, because it would seem (that)

nullum præsidium positum esse in eo
no protection to have been [had been] placed in that place

amicis; sin educĕret maturius ex
for (his) friends; but if he should lead too early from

hibernis, ne laboraret ab re frumentariā,
winter quarters, lest he be troubled by the grain supply,

subvectionibus (pl.) duris. Visum est præstare
transportation (being) difficult. It seemed to be better

tamen perpeti omnes difficultates, quam tantā
however to endure all difficulties, than so great

contumeliā acceptā, alienare voluntates
an insult having been received, to alienate (the) good will

omnium suorum. Itaque cohortatus Æduos
of all his (allies). Therefore having exhorted the Ædui

de supportando commeatu præmittit ad Boios,
about transporting provisions he sends ahead to the Boii,

qui doceant de suo adventu, que
(some) who may inform (them) of his arrival, and

hortentur ut maneant in fide, atque
may exhort (them) that they remain in alliance, and

sustineant impĕtum hostium magno anĭmo.
resist the attack of the enemy with great courage [spirit].

Duabus legionibus, atque impedimentis totius
Two legions, and the baggage of the entire

exercitūs relictis Agendici, proficiscitur
army having been left at Agendicum [Sens], he marches

ad Boios.
to the Boii.

11. Cum altĕro die venisset ad Vellaunodunum
When on the next day he had come to Vellaunodunum

oppidum Senonum, instituit oppugnare,
[Beauns] a town of the Senones, he resolved to attack (it),

ne relinquĕret quem hostem post se,
lest he might leave any enemy behind him, (and)

quo uteretur expeditiore re frumentariā; que
that he might use more easily the grain supply; and

biduo circumvallavit id, terio die legatis
in two days he invested it, on the third day ambassadors

missis ex oppido de deditione,
having been sent from the town concerning a surrender,

jubet arma proferri, jumenta produci,
he orders the arms to be brought out, the cattle to be produced,

sexcentos obsides dari. Relinquit C. Trebonium,
six hundred hostages to be given. He leaves C. Trebonius,

legatum, qui conficĕret ea, ut ipse
(his) lieutenant, who should execute these things, that he himself

facĕret iter quam primum. Proficiscitur,
might make a march as soon as possible. He sets out,

Cenabum Carnutum, qui, nuntio de
to Cenabum of the Carnutes, who, the information of

oppugnatione Vellaunoduni tum primum
the siege of Vellaunodunum then first [immediately]

allato, causā tuendi Cenabi,
having been brought, for the purpose of defending Cenabum,

comparabant præsidium quod mittĕrent eō, cum
were preparing a garrison which they might send there, since

existimarent eam rem ductum iri
they thought this affair was to be drawn out

longius. Pervenit huc biduo. Castris
longer. He arrived there in three days. The camp

positis ante oppidum, exclusus
having been placed before the town, (being) prevented

tempŏre diei, differt oppugnationem in
by the time of day, he defers the attack to

posterum; imperat militibus quæque
the next (day); he orders to [from] the soldiers whatever

sint usui ad eam rem; et quod pons
may be of use for this affair; and as the bridge

flumĭnis Ligĕris contingebat oppidum Cenabum,
of the river Loire joined the town (of) Cenabum,

veritus ne profugĕrent ex oppĭdo noctu,
having feared lest they might flee from the town at night,

jubet duas legiones excubare in armis.
he orders two legions to keep watch under arms.

Cenabenses ēgressi ex oppĭdo silentio
The people of Cenabum having departed from the town in silence

paulo ante mediam noctem cœperunt transire
a little before mid night began to cross

flumen. Quā re nuntiatā per
the river. Which [This] thing having been announced by

exploratores, Cæsar, portis incensis
the scouts, Cæsar, the gates having been set afire

intromittit legiones, quas jusserat esse
sends in the legions, which he had ordered to be

expeditas, atque potītur oppido (abl.); perpaucis[11]
ready, and seizes the town; very few

ex numĕro hostium desideratis quin
from [of] the number of the enemy having been lacking but that

cuncti caperentur, quod angustiæ (pl.) pontis
the whole should be taken, because the narrowness of the bridge

atque itinerum intercluserant fugam multitudinis.
and of the roads had cut off the flight of the multitude.

Dirĭpit atque incendit oppidum; donat prædam
He pillages and burns the town; he gives the booty

militibus; transducit exercĭtum Ligĕrim, atque
to the soldiers; he leads his army over the Loire, and

pervĕnit in fines Biturigum.
arrives in the territories of the Bituriges.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi cognovit de adventu
Vercingetorix, when he learned of the arrival

Cæsaris, desistit oppugnatione, atque proficiscitur
of Cæsar, desists from the siege, and marches

obviam Cæsari. Ille instituerat oppugnare
to meet Cæsar. He [Cæsar] had begun to besiege

Noviodunum, oppidum Biturigum, positum
Noviodunum [Saucerre] a town of the Bituriges, situated

in viā. Ex quo[12] oppido cum legati
on the road. From which town when ambassadors

venissent ad eum oratum ut ignoscĕret sibi,
had come to him to entreat that he would pardon them,

que consulĕret suæ vitæ (sing.), ut conficĕret
and would spare their lives, that he might accomplish

reliquas res celeritate, quā erat consecutus
the remaining affairs with the speed, by which he had won

pleraque, jubet arma proferri
the most, he orders the arms to be brought forth

equos produci, obsĭdes dari. Parte
the horses to be produced, (and) hostages to be given. A part

obsĭdum jam traditā, cum reli-
of the hostages already having been surrendered, while the other

qua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis
things were being executed, the centurions and a few

militum intromissis, qui conquirĕrent
of the soldiers having been introduced, who should collect

arma que jumenta, equitatus hostium qui
the arms and the horses, the cavalry of the enemy which

antecesserat agmen Vercingetorigis, est visus procul;
had preceded the army of Vercingetorix, was seen at a distance;

quem[13] atque simul oppidani conspexerunt,
which as soon as the townsmen saw,

atque venerunt in spem auxilii, clamore
and came to the hope of aid, a shout

sublato cœperunt capĕre arma, claudĕre
having been raised they began to take arms, to shut

portas, complēre murum. Centuriones in
the gates, (and) to fill the walls. The centurions in

oppĭdo, cum intellexissent ex significatione
the town, when they had understood from the action

Gallorum aliquid novi consilii iniri ab
of the Gauls (that) some (of) new plan was formed by

iis, gladiis dĭstrictis, occupaverunt
them, their swords having been drawn, took possession of

portas, que receperunt omnes suos incolŭmes.
the gates, and received all their (men) safe.

13. Cæsar jubet equitatum educi ex castris,
Cæsar orders the cavalry to be led from the camp,

que committit equestre prœlium. Suis jam
and joins in a cavalry battle. His (men) being now

laborantibus submittit circiter quadringentos
hard pressed he sends about four hundred

Germanos equites, quos ab initio instit-
German horsemen. whom from the beginning he had

uerat habēre cum se. Galli potuerunt
determined to keep with himself. The Gauls could

non sustinēre eorum impĕtum, atque conjecti
not sustain their attack, and having been thrown

in fugam, receperunt se ad agmen, multis
into flight, betook themselves to the army, many

amissis. Quibus profligatis, oppidani
having been lost. Who [These] having been routed, the townsmen

rursus perterrĭti, perduxerunt ad Cæsarem eos
again alarmed, led out to Cæsar those

comprehensos quorum operā existimabant
(having been) arrested by whose means they thought

plebem concitatam, que dediderunt sese
(that) the people were incited, and surrendered themselves

ei. Quibus rebus confectis, Cæsar
to him. Which [These] things having been accomplished, Cæsar

profectus est ad oppĭdum Avarĭcum, quod
marched to the town (of) Avaricum [Bourges], which

erat maximum que munitissimum in finibus
was the largest and best fortified in the territories

Biturigum, atque fertillissimā regione agri,
of the Bituriges, and in a most fertile district of country.

quod eo oppido recepto, confidebat
because this town having been taken, he was confident

se redacturum civitatem Biturigum
(that) he about to [would] reduce the state of the Bituriges

in potestatem.
into (his) power.

14. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis
Vercingetorix, so many continual reverses

Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni, ac-
at Vellaundunum, Cenabum, (and) Noviodunum, having been

ceptis, convocat suos ad concilium; docet
received, calls his (followers) to a council; he shows

bellum gerendum esse longe aliā
(that) the war to [must] be carried on with a far different

ratione, atque sit gestum antea, huic rei
plan, than it had been carried on before, to this thing

studendum omnibus modis, ut Romani
it must be attended by all means, that the Romans

prohibeantur pabulatione, et commeatu: id esse facile, quod ipsi abundent equitatu,
should be prohibited from foraging, and from provisions: (that) this to be [was] easy, because they abound in cavalry,

et quod subleventur tempŏre anni; pabŭlum posse non secari; hostes
and because they are assisted by the season of the year; (that) forage could not (to) be cut; (that) the enemy

dispersos necessario petĕre ex ædificiis; omnes hos posse quotidie delēri ab
dispersed (must) necessarily (to) seek (it) from the buildings; (that) all these could daily (to) be destroyed by

equitibus. Præterea causā salutis commoda familiaris rei (sing.) negligenda;
the horsemen. Moreover for the sake of safety the advantages of private property to [must] be disregarded; (that)

oportĕre vicos atque ædificia incendi, hoc est, spatio a Boiā quoquoversus,
to be [it was] necessary (for) the villages and houses to be burnt, that is, in a space from Boia in every direction,

quō videantur posse adire causā pabulandi. Harum rerum suppetĕre copiam ipsis,
where (the Romans) might seem to be able to go for the purpose of foraging. Of these things to be [there is] at hand an abundance for themselves,

quod subleventur opibus eorum in quorum finibus bellum geratur; Romanos aut non
because they would be assisted by the means of those in whose territories war should be waged; (that) the Romans either not

laturos[14] inopiam, aut progressuros longius a castris cum magno periculo; neque
to be about to [would not] bear privation, or (that they) to be about to [would] proceed farther from the camp with great danger; nor

interesse, ne interficiant ipsos ne exuant
to be [did it make] any difference, whether they kill them or deprive [them] of

impedimentis, quibus amissis, bellum possit
(their) baggage, which having been lost, war can

non geri. Præterea, oportēre
not (to) be waged. Moreover, (that it) to be [was] necessary

oppida incendi, quæ sint non tuta ab
(for) the towns to be burnt, which were not safe from

omni periculo munitione et naturā loci;
all danger by fortification and by the nature of the place;

neu sint suis receptacula ad
that neither they may be for our (people) retreats for

detrectandam militiam neu proposita Romanis
evading military service nor offered to the Romans

ad tollendam copiam commeatūs que prædam.
for carrying off an abundance of provisions and plunder.

Si hæc videantur gravia aut acerba, debēre (inf.)
If these (things) should seem severe or cruel, they ought

æstimare, illa multo gravius
to consider, (that) those things (are) much more severe (that

liberos conjuges abstrahi in
their) children (and) wives to [should] be dragged into

servitutem, ipsos interfici; quæ
slavery, (and they) themselves (to be) slain; which

sit necesse accidĕre victis.
would be certain to befall the conquered.

15. Hāc sententiā probatā consensu
This opinion having been approved by the consent

omnium, uno die amplius viginti urbes Biturigum
of all, in one day more than twenty cities of the Bituriges

incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus.
are burned. This same is done in the remaining states.

In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quæ
In all parts conflagrations are seen; which

etsi omnes ferebant cum magno dolore, tamen
although all bore with great grief, yet

··· proponebant sibi hoc solaci,
they placed before themselves this (as) a consolation,

quod confidebant se, victoriā prope
that they trusted they, the victory being nearly

exploratā, celeriter recuperaturos amissa.
assured, quickly about to [would] recover (their) losses.

Deliberatur in communi concilio de Avarico,
It is deliberated in general council about Avaricum,

placeat, incendi
(whether) it is best, (that it) (to) [should] be burnt

an defendi. Bituriges procumbunt
or (to) be defended. The Bituriges fall

ad pedes omnibus Gallis
at the feet (of) all the Gauls, (begging that)

ne cogerentur succendĕre suis
they should not be forced to set fire with their own

manibus pulcherrimam urbem prope totius Galliæ,
hands (to) the most beautiful town nearly of all Gaul,

quæ sit et præsidio et ornamento civitati;
which is both (for) a protection and an ornament to the state;

dicunt se defensuros facile
they say (that) they about to [would] defend (it) easily

naturā loci, quod, circumdata prope
by the nature of the place, because, surrounded almost

ex omnibus partibus flumĭne et palude, habeat
on all sides by the river and by a marsh, it has

unum et perangustum adĭtum. Venia
one [a single] and very narrow entrance. Permission

datur petentibus, Vercingetorige primō dissuadente,
is given to those petitioning. Vercingetorix at first opposing,

post concedente et ipsorum precibus et
afterwards yielding both because of their entreaties and

misericordiā vo!gi. Idonei defensores
because of compassion of [for] the multitude. Suitable defenders

deliguntur oppĭdo.
are selected for the town.

16. Vercingetorix subsequitur Cæsarem minoribus
Vercingetorix follows near Cæsar by lesser

itineribus, et deligit locum castris munitum
marches, and selects a place for the camp defended

paludibus que silvis, longe ab Avarĭco quindecim
by marshes and woods, distant from Avaricum fifteen

millia passuum. Ibi cognoscebat per certos
thousand paces. There he learned by faithful

exploratores in singŭla tempŏra (pl.) diei quæ
scouts at each time [hour] of the day what things

agerentur (pl.) ad Avarĭcum; et imperabat
were done at Avaricum; and he commanded

quid vellet fieri; observabat omnes nostras
what he wished to be done; he watched all our

pabulationes que frumentationes, que quum
foragings and corn-raids, and when

necessario procederent longius, adoriebatur
through necessity they proceeded rather far, he attacked

dispersos, que afficiebat magno incommodo
(them) dispersed and inflicted great injury;

(dat.); etsi occurrebatur ab nostris
although (this) was obviated by our (men)

quantum poterat provīdēri ratione, ut
as much as (it) could (to) be provided against by foresight, that

irētur (pass. sing.)[15] incertis temporibus que
they should go at uncertain times and

diversis itineribus.
by different routes.

17. Castris positis ad eam partem
The camp having been pitched near that part

oppidi, quæ intermissa ā flumĭne et
of the town, which having been left by the river and

palude, ut diximus supra, habēbat angustum
marsh, as we have said above, had a narrow

adĭtum, Cæsar cœpit apparare aggerem, agĕre
approach, Cæsar began to prepare the mound, to move

vineas, constituĕre duas turres; nam
the shelters (and) to construct two towers; for

" natura loci prohibebat circumvallare.
the nature of the place prevented to blockade [investment].

Non destitit adhortari Boios atque Æduos de
He did not cease to exhort the Boii and Ædui about

frumentariā re; altĕri quorum, quod agebant
the corn supply; the latter of whom, because they acted

nullo studio, adjuvabant non multum; altĕri non
with no zeal, assisted not much; the others not

magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua
with [having] great means, because the state was small

et infirma, consumpserunt celeriter quod habuerunt.
and weak, consumed quickly what they had.

Exercĭtu affecto summā difficultate
The army (having been) afflicted with the greatest want

frumentariæ rei, tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentiā
of provisions, by the poverty of the Boii, by the negligence

Æduorum, incendiis ædificiorum, usque
of the Ædui, (and) by the burning of the buildings, even

eo[16] ut milites caruerint frumento
to this [extent] that the soldiers were without corn (for)

complures dies, et sustentarent extremam famem
many days, and they satisfied the extreme hunger

pecŏre adacto e longinquioribus vicis;
by cattle driven from the more distant villages;

tamen nulla vox audita est ab iis
yet not a word was heard from them

indigna majestate Romani popŭli et
unworthy the majesty of the Roman people and (their)

superioribus victoriis. Quin etiam cum Cæsar
former victories. Moreover also when Cæsar

appellaret singŭlas legiones in opĕre, et dicĕret
addressed the several legions at work and said

se dimissurum oppugnationem, si ferrent
(that) he would abandon the siege, if they bore

iopiam acerbius, universi petebant ab
the want too severely, all to a man begged from [of]

eo ne facĕret id; se
him that he would not do this; (saying that) they them-

sic meruisse complures annos
selves in such manner to have [had] ser ed very many years

illo imperante ut accipĕrent nullam ignominiam
under his command that they admitted no dishonor (and)

nunquam discederent, re infectā;
never withdrew, their purpose (having been) unaccomplished;

se laturos hoc loco ignominiæ,
they about to[would] regard this (as) an occasion of dishonor,

si relinquissent oppugnationem inceptam; præ-
if they should abandon the siege (once) commenced, to be

stare perferre omnes acerbitates, quam
[it was] preferable to endure all hardships than (that)

non parentarent Romanis civibus, qui
they should not avenge the Roman citizens, who

interissent perfidiā Gallorum Cenabi. Hæc
had perished by the perfidy of the Gauls at Cenabum. These

eadem mandabant centurionibus que
same (words) they entrusted to the centurions and

tribunis, ut per eos deferrentur
tribunes, that through them they might be communicated

ad Cæsarem.
to Cæsar.

18. Cum turres jam appropinquassent muro,
When the towers already had approached the wall,

Cæsar cognovit ex captivis Vercingetorigem,
Cæsar ascertained from the prisoners (that) Vercingetorix,

pabulo consumpto, movisse
the forage having been consumed, to have [had] moved (his)

castra propius Avarĭcum, atque ipsum, cum
camp nearer to Avaricum, and (that) he with

equitatu que expeditis, qui consuēssent
the cavalry and the light armed, who had been trained

prœliari inter equites, causā insidiarum
to fight among the horsemen, for the purpose of ambuscades

profectum eo quo arbitrabatur
to have [had] marched thither, where he thought (that)

nostros venturos pabulatum postĕro
our (men) about to [would] come to forage on the following

die. Quibus rebus cognĭtis profectus
day. Which [These] things having been learned, having set out

silentio mediā nocte, pervēnit ad castra hostium
in silence at mid night, he arrived at the camp of the enemy

mane. Illi, adventu Cæsaris celeriter
early in the morning. They, the arrival of Cæsar speedily

cognito per exploratores, abdiderunt
having been learned through scouts, concealed

carros que sua impedimenta in artiores silvas,
the wagons and their baggage in the thicker woods,

instruxerunt omnes copias in edito
(and) drew up all (their) forces on an elevated

atque aperto loco. Quā re nuntiatā,
and open place. Which thing having been announced,

Cæsar celeriter jussit sarcinas conferri,
Cæsar quickly ordered the packs to be collected together,

arma expediri.
(and) the arms to be made ready.

19. Erat collis leniter acclivis ab infimo.
There was a hill gently sloping from below.

Difficĭlis atque impedita palus cingebat hunc
A difficult and impassable swamp surrounded this

ex fere omnibus partibus, non latior
on nearly all sides, not wider than

quinquaginta pedibus. Hoc colle, pontibus
fifty feet. On this hill, the bridges

interruptis, Galli continebant se,
having been broken down, the Gauls stationed themselves,

fiduciā loci; que distributi generatim
in confidence of the place, and, arranged in tribes

in civitates, obtinebant omnia vada
according to their states, they were holding all the shallows

ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodibus; sic
and passes of this swamp by trusty guards; thus

parati animo, ut, si Romani conarentur
prepared in mind, that, if the Romans should attempt

perrumpĕre eam paludem, premĕrent,
to break through this swamp, they would crush (them),

ex superiore loco, hæsitantes, ut
from the higher station, while sticking fast; so that

qui viděrent propinquitatem loci,
(any) who saw the nearness of the position,

existimarent paratos ad dimicandum
would think (that) they were prepared for fighting

prope æquo Marte; qui perspicĕrent
almost on equal terms; (but any) who perceived

iniquitatem conditionis, cognoscĕrent
the disadvantage of the condition [place], would understand (that)

sese ostentare inani simulatione. Cæsar
they (to) make show with an empty pretense. Cæsar

edocet milites indignantes, quod hostes
shows the soldiers (who were) indignant, because the enemy

possent ferre suum conspectum, tantulo spatio
could endure their sight, so small a space

interjecto, et exposcentes signum
(having been) interposed, and (who were) demanding the signal

prœlii, quanto detrimento, et morte
of [for] battle, with how great loss, and with the death

quot fortium virorum sit necesse
of how many brave men it would be necessary

constare victoriam; cum viděret quos sic
to assure the victory; (saying that) since he saw them so

paratos animo, ut recusarent nullum periculum
prepared in mind, that they refused no danger

pro suā laude, se debēre condemnari summæ
for his glory, he ought to be condemned of the greatest

iniquitatis, nisi habeat eorum vitam cariorem
injustice, unless he holds their lives dearer

suā salute. Consolatus milites sic,
than his safety. Having consoled the soldiers thus,

reducit in castra eodem die; instituit
he returns to the camp on the same day; he undertook

administrare reliqua, quæ pertinebant ad
to perform the other things, which pertained to

oppugnationem oppidi.
the siege of the town.

20. Vercingetorix, cum redisset ad suos
Vercingetorix, when he had returned to his (men)

insimulatus proditionis, quod movisset castra
was accused of treason, because he had moved (his) camp

propius Romanos; quod discessisset cum omni
nearer to the Romans; because he had departed with all

equitatu; quod relinquisset tantas copias sine
the cavalry; because he had left such great forces without

imperio; quod ejus discessu Romani venissent
a command; because on his departure the Romans had come

tantā opportunitate, et celeritate; omnia
with so great timeliness, and celerity; (that) all

hæc potuisse non accidĕre fortuito, aut
this could not (to) happen accidentally, or

sine consilio; illum malle[18] habēre
without design; (that) he to prefer [preferred] to have the

regnum Galliæ concessu Cæsaris, quam ipsorum
sovereignty of Gaul with the permission of Cæsar, than by their

beneficio. Accusatus tali modo, respondit
favor. Having been accused in such manner, he replied

ad hæc quod movisset castra, factum
to these (things) (saying) that he had moved the camp was done

inopiā pabuli, ipsis etiam hortantibus; quod
by want of forage, they themselves even urging; that

accessisset propius Romanos, persuasum
he had approached nearer the Romans, he was induced

opportunitate loci, qui ipse defendĕret
by the advantage of the place, which itself would protect

se sine munitione; vero operam equitum
itself without defence; (that) indeed the service of the horsemen

debuisse (inf.) neque desiderari in palustri loco,
ought not to be wanted in a marshy place,

et fuisse utilem illic, quo
and to have been [was] useful there, where

profecti sint; se consulto discedentem
they had gone; (that) he on purpose (when) departing

tradidisse summam imperii nulli, ne
to have [had] conferred the chief command on no one, lest

is impellĕretur ad dimicandum studio multi-
he might be driven to fighting by the zeal of the

tudinis; cui rei, vidēret omnes studēre,
multitude; for which thing, he saw all to be [were] eager,

propter mollitiem[19] animi, quod possent
on account of (their) weakness of mind, because they could

non diutius ferre laborem. Si Romani
no longer endure labor. If the Romans

intervenerint casu gratiam habendam
came up by chance (that) thanks must be given

fortunæ; si vocati indicio alicujus,
to fortune; if invited by the information of any one (thanks must

huic;[20] quod et potuerint cognoscĕre eorum
be given) to him; because they could both (to) perceive their

paucitatem ex superiore loco, et despicĕre
small number from the higher ground, and (could) (to) despise

virtutem qui non ausi dimicare turpiter
the courage (of those) who not having dared to fight basely

receperint se in castra. Se desiderare (inf.)
had betaken themselves into camp. He desired

nullum imperium a Cæsare per proditionem,
no sovereign power from Cæsar by treason,

quod posset habēre victoriā, quæ esset
because he was able (to) have (it) by victory, which was

jam explorata sibi ac omnibus Gallis; quin
now certain to himself and to all the Gauls; but

etiam remittĕre ipsis, si videantur tribuĕre
even he to [would] resign to them, if they seemed to confer

honorem sibi magis quam accipĕre
honor on him rather than to receive

salutem ab se. Inquit, "ut intelligatis
safety from him. He said, "in order that you may know

hæc pronuntiari sincere a me, audite
these things to be [are] announced truly by me, hear

Romanos milites." Producit servos quos
the Roman soldiers." He brings forward slaves whom

exceperat in pabulatione, paucis diebus ante,
he had captured in foraging, a few days before,

et excruciaverat et fame que vinculis.
and had tortured both by hunger and chains.

Hi edocti jam ante, quæ pronunciarent
They having been taught already before, what they should declare

interrogati, dicunt se esse legionarios,
(when) interrogated, say that they were legionary soldiers,

adductos fame et inopiā
(and) (having been) led by hunger and want

exisse clam ex castris si possent
to have [had] gone out secretly from camp (to see) if they were able

reperire quid frumenti aut pecŏris in
[could] (to) find any (of) corn or cattle in

agris; omnem exercĭtum premi
the fields; (that) all the army to be [was] oppressed

simili inopiā; nec vires cujusquam jam
by a like want; nor (does) the strength of any one now

sufficĕre, nec posse ferre laborem
(to) suffice, nor to be [are they] able to bear the labor

opĕris. Itaque imperatorem statuisse, si
of the work. Therefore the commander to have [had] resolved, if

profecissent nihil in oppugnatione oppidi,
they accomplished nothing in the siege of the town,

deducĕre exercĭtum triduo. "Hæc beneficia,"
to withdraw (his) army in three days. "These benefits,"

inquit Vercingetorix, "habētis a me, quem
said Vercingetorix, "you have from me, whom

insimulatis proditionis, cujus operā vidētis tantum
you accuse of treason, by whose means you see so great

victorem exercĭtum pæne consumptum fame,
a conquering army nearly destroyed by hunger,

sine vestro sanguine; quem, turpiter recipien-
without your blood; which (army) disgracefully retreat-

tem se ex hāc fugā, provisum est a me, ne
ing from this flight, it has been provided by me, that not

qua civitas recipiat suis finibus."
any state shall receive in its territories."

21. Omnis multitudo conclamat et concrepat
All the multitude shout and rattle

armis suo more, quod consueverunt
with (their) arms in their manner, which they are accustomed

facĕre in eo cujus orationem approbant,
to do in the case of him whose speech they approve,

Vercingetorigem esse summum ducem, nec
(saying) Vercingetorix to be [is] the greatest general, nor

dubitandum de ejus fide, nec
must it be doubted *concerning* *his* *faithfulness,* *nor*

posse bellum administrari majore
to be possible [could] *the war* *(to) be carried on* *with greater*

ratione. Statuunt ut decem millia hominum
judgment. *They decree* *that* *ten* *thousand* *men*

delecta ex omnibus copiis submittantur in
selected *from* *all* *the forces* *should be sent* *into*

oppidum; nec censent communem salutem
the town; *nor* *do they think* *the general* *safety*

committendum Biturigibus solis, quod
ought to be committed *to the Bituriges* *alone,* *because*

intelligebant summam victoriæ
they understood *(that)* *the completeness* *of the victory*

constare pæne in eo, si retinuissent
would depend *almost entirely* *upon* *this,* *if* *they should hold*

oppidum.
the town.

22. Consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant
Plans *of every* *kind* *of the Gauls* *opposed*

singulari virtuti nostrorum militum, ut est (sing.)
the uncommon *bravery* *of our* *soldiers,* *as* *they are*

genus summæ sollertiæ, atque aptissimum ad
a nation *of the greatest* *ingenuity,* *and* *very apt* *for [at]*

imitanda atque efficienda omnia, quæ traduntur
imitating *and* *making* *all things,* *which* *are imparted*

ab quoque. Nam avertebant laqueis falces,
by *every one.* *For* *they turned aside* *with nooses* *the hooks,*

quos[21] cum destinaverant, reducebant introrsus
which *when* *they had caught,* *they hauled* *within*

tormentis, et subtrahebant aggerem cuniculis,
by engines, *and* *they undermined* *the mound* *by tunnels,*

eo scientius, quod apud eos sunt magnæ
the more skilfully, *because* *among* *them* *are* *great*

ferrariæ, atque omne genus cuniculorum est notum
iron mines, *and* *all* *kinds* *of tunnels* *are known*

atque usitatum. Autem contabulaverant totum
and *employed.* *Moreover* *they had fortified* *the entire*

murum ex omni parte turribus, atque intexerant
wall on every side with towers, and had covered

has coriis; tum crebris diurnis que nocturnis
these with hides; also in (their) frequent daily and nightly

eruptionibus, aut inferebant ignem aggeri,
sallies, either they were setting fire to the mound,

aut adoriebantur milites occupatos in opere; et
or were attacking our soldiers occupied in the work; and

adæquabant altitudinem nostrarum turrium,
they were equaling the height of our towers,

quantum agger quotidianus expresserat has,
as much as the mound daily had raised them,

malis suarum turrium commissis; et
the masts of their towers having been joined [spliced]; and

morabantur apertos cuniculos præustā et
they were retarding (our) open tunnels by burnt and

præcutā materiā, et fervefactā pice, et saxis
very sharp stakes, and by boiling pitch, and by stones

maximi ponderis, que prohibebant
of very great weight, and they were checking (us from)

appropinquare (inf.) mœnibus.
approaching the walls.

23. Autem hæc est fere forma omnibus Gallicis
Now this is generally the form to [of] all the Gallic

muris. Directæ trabes perpetuæ in longitudinem,
walls. Straight beams continuous in length,

binos pedes distantes paribus intervallis inter
two feet distant at equal intervals between

se[22] collocantur in solo. Hæ revinciuntur
one another are placed on the ground. These are made fast

introrsus, et vestiuntur multo aggere.
within, and are covered with much mound-filling.

Autem ea intervalla, quæ diximus
But these intervals, which we have mentioned

effarciuntur in fronte grandibus saxis. Iis
are filled up in front with great stones. These

collocatis et coagmentatis, alius ordo
having been placed and united together, another row

adjicitur insuper, ut illud idem intervallum
is put above, so that, this same interval

servetur, neque trabes contingant inter
may be observed, nor the beams may touch each

se,[23] sed intermissæ paribus spatiis, singulæ
other, but separated by equal spaces, the several (beams)

contineantur (pl.) arte singulis interjectis saxis;
may be kept in place closely by the several interposed stones;

sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum
so successively the whole work is bound together, till

justa altitudo muri expleatur. Cum est
the proper height of the wall is completed. Not only is

hoc opus non deforme in speciem que varietatem
this work not unsightly in appearance and variety

alternis trabibus ac saxis, quæ servant suos
by the alternate beams and stones, which preserve their

ordines rectis lineis, tum habet ad utilitatem,
order in straight lines, but also it has for utility,

et defensionem urbium summam opportunitatem,
and defence of cities great advantage,

quod et lapis defendit ab incendio, et
because both the stone protects from fire, and

ab ariete materia, quæ
from the battering-ram the wood-work, which (having been)

revincta introrsus trabibus plerumque perpetuis
fastened internally by beams mostly continuous (for)

quadragenos pedes, potest neque perrumpi,
forty feet, can neither be broken through,

neque distrahi.
nor rent apart.

24. Oppugnatione impeditā tot iis
The siege having been impeded by so many these

rebus, cum milites tardarentur toto
[such] things, though the soldiers were retarded the whole

tempore luto, frigore, et assiduis imbribus, tamen
time by mud, cold, and continual rains, yet

superaverunt omnia hæc continenti labore,
they overcame all these (things) by their continual labor,

et viginti quinque diebus, extruxerunt aggerem
and in twenty five days, they constructed a mound

trecentos et triginta pedes latum, octoginta
three hundred and thirty feet wide, (and) eighty

pedes altum. Cum is pæne contingĕret
feet high. When this (mound) nearly touched

murum hostium, et Cæsar excubaret ad opus
the wall of the enemy, and Cæsar kept watch at the work

consuetudine, que exhortaretur milites, ne quod
by his custom, and encouraged the soldiers, that not any

tempus omnino intermitteretur ab opere, paulo
time at all should be lost from the work a little

ante tertiam vigiliam, est animadversum
before the third watch, it was observed (that)

aggerem fumare (inf.), quem hostes succenderant
the mound to smoke [was smoking] which the enemy had fired

cuniculo; que eodem tempore clamore sublato
by a mine; and at the same time a shout having been raised

toto muro, eruptio fiebat duabus portis ab
on all the wall, a sally was made from two gates on

utroque latere turrium. Alii eminus jaciebant
each side of the towers. Some from a distance were throwing

faces atque aridam materiem de muro in
torches and dry material from the wall on

aggerem; alii fundebant picem que reliquas res,
the mound; others were pouring pitch and other things,

quibus ignis potest incitari; ut ratio posset
by which the fire might be encouraged; so that a plan could

vix iniri, quo primum occurreretur,[24] aut
scarcely be adopted, where first they should obstruct, or

cui rei auxilium ferretur;
to which affair [predicament] aid should be brought;

tamen quod, instituto Cæsaris, duæ legiones
however as, by the arrangement of Cæsar, two legions

semper excubabant pro castris, que plures partitis
always were watching before the camp, and many at allotted

temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut
times were at work, it was quickly managed, that

alli resisterent eruptionibus, alli reducĕrent
some should oppose the sallies, others should draw back

turres que interscindĕrent aggerem; vero
the towers and cut off the mound; and indeed

omnis multitudo concurret ex castris ad
(that) a whole multitude should run from the camp to

restinguendum.
extinguish (the fire).

25. Cum pugnaretur[25] in omnibus locis,
While it was fought [they were] fighting in all places,

reliquā parte noctis jam consumptā, que
the remaining portion of the night now having been spent, and

spes victoriæ semper redintegraretur hostibus (dat.),
the hope of victory continually was renewed in the enemy,

magis eo quod videbant pluteos turrium
the more so because they saw the coverings of the towers

deustos, animadvertebant apertos nec
burnt off, (and) observed (that we) unprotected not

facile adire ad auxiliandum; que ipsi
easily to go [approached] for aiding; and (while) they

recentes semper succedĕrent defessis (dat.),
fresh all the time were succouring the wearied,

que arbitrarentur omnem salutem Galliæ
and (they) were judging (that) all the safety of Gaul

positam[26] in illo vestigio tempŏris, accidit
(was) placed in that instant of time, there happened

nobis inspectantibus quod visum dignum
to us observing (that) which having seemed (to be) worthy

memoriā existimavimus non prætermittendum.
(of) memory we have thought to [must] not be passed over.

Quidam Gallus ante portam oppidi, qui e
A certain Gaul before the gate of the town, who from

regione turris projiciebat in ignem glebas
the locality of the tower was throwing into the fire lumps

sevi ac picis traditas per manus (pl.),
of tallow and pitch passed along by hand,

trajectus ab dextra latere scorpione, que
having been pierced on the right side by the cross-bow, and

exanimatus concidit; unus ex proximis
struck lifeless fell; one from [of] the nearest

transgressus hunc jacentem fungebatur illo
having stepped over him lying prostrate performed that

eodem munere; eādem ratione alteri exani-
same duty; in the same manner the second having been

mato ictu scorpionis, tertius successit,
killed by a stroke of the cross-bow, a third succeeded,

et quartus tertio; nec ille locus relictus est
and a fourth to the third; nor that place was left

vacuus a propugnatoribus, prius quam aggere
vacant by the defenders, until the mound

restincto atque hostibus submotis
having been) extinguished and the enemy having been repulsed

omni parte, finis factus est pugnandi.
on every side, an end was made of the fighting.

26. Galli experti omnia, quod nulla res
The Gauls having tried all things, because no thing

successerat, postero die ceperunt consilium profugĕre
had succeeded, on the next day adopted the plan to flee

ex oppido, Vercingetorige hortante et jubente.
from the town, Vercingetorix advising and commanding.

Sperabant, conati id silentio noctis
They were hoping, having attempted it in the silence of the night

sese effecturos non magnā
(that) they about to [would] accomplish (it) with no great

jacturā suorum, propterea quod castra
loss of their (men), because (that) the camp

Vercingetorigis aberant neque longe ab oppido,
of Vercingetorix was distant not far from the town,

et perpetua palus, quæ intercedebat, tardabat[27]
and a continuous marsh, which was intervening, would retard

Romanos ad insequendum. Que jam
the Romans for [in] following. And already

apparabant facĕre hoc noctu, cum matres
they were preparing to do this by night, when the mothers

familias repente procurrerunt in publicum,
of families [matrons] suddenly ran out into public,

que flentes projectæ ad pedes suorum
and weeping having thrown (themselves) at the feet of their

petierunt omnibus precibus, ne
(husbands) they begged with all entreaties, that they would not

dederent se et communes liberos hostibus
give up themselves and (their) common children to the enemy

ad supplicium, quos natura, et infirmitas
for punishment, whom nature, and the weakness

virium (pl). impediret ad capiendam fugam.
of (their) strength prevented for [from] taking flight.

Ubi viderunt eos perstare (inf.) in
When they saw (that) they persisted in (their)

sententiā, quod plerumque in summo periculo
design, because generally in the greatest danger

timor recipit non misericordiam, cœperunt conclamare,
fear admits not pity, they began to cry out,

et significare de fugā Romanis;
and to give warning concerning the flight to the Romans;

quo timore Galli perterriti, ne viæ
by which fear the Gauls having been alarmed, lest the roads

præoccuparentur ab equitatu Romanorum destiterunt
should be preoccupied by the cavalry of the Romans they desisted

consilio.
from (their) design.

27. Cæsar, postero die turri pro-
Cæsar, on the next day the tower having been

motā, que operibus directis, quæ
moved forward, and the works having been arranged, which

instituerat facĕre, magno imbri coorto,
he had determined to make, a great storm having arisen,

arbitratus est hanc tempestatem non inutilem ad
thought this time not unsuited for

capiendum consilium, quod vidēbat custodias
carrying out the plan, because he saw the guards

in muro dispositas paulo incautius; que
on the wall arranged a little more carelessly; and

jussit suos versari in opere langui-
he ordered his (men) to be occupied in the work rather

dius, et ostendit quid vellet fĭĕri.
sluggishly, and showed what he wished to be done.

Cohortatus legiones expeditas in occulto
Having exhorted the legions prepared in a concealed place

intra vineas, ut aliquando percipĕrent fructum
within the sheds, that at length they would receive the fruit

victoriæ pro tantis laboribus, proposuit præmia
of victory for such great labors, he offered rewards

iis, qui primi ascendissent murum, que dedit
to those, who first should scale the wall, and gave

signum militibus. Illi subito evolaverunt ex
the signal to the soldiers. They suddenly flew out from

omnibus partibus, que celeriter complērunt murum.
all sides, and quickly filled the wall.

28. Hostes perterriti novā re,
The enemy having been alarmed by the sudden affair

dejecti muro que turribus,
[*action*], (*having been*) *driven from the wall and towers,*

constiterunt cuneatim foro ac patentioribus
they drew up as a wedge in the square and more open

locis, hōc animo, ut si ex quā pārte venire-
places, with this idea, that if on any side (*any one*) *should*

tur[28] contra obviam depugnarent acie
come against they might fight with a line of battle

instructā. Ubi viderunt neminem demittĕre
drawn up. When they saw (*that*) *no one lowered*

sese in æquum locum, sed undique circum-
himself into the level place, but on every side they were

fundi toto muro, verĭti ne omnino
spread around on the whole wall, having feared lest altogether

spes fugæ tolleretur, armis
the hope of flight might be taken away, (*their*) *arms*

abjectis petiverunt ultimas partes
having been thrown away they sought the farthest parts

oppidi continenti impetu; que ibi pars,
of the town with a continuous rush; and there a part,

cum ipsi premĕrent se angusto exitu
as they crowded themselves in the narrow passage

portarum, interfecta est a militibus, pars
of the gates, was killed by the soldiers (and) a part

jam egressa portis, ab equitibus; nec
already having passed the gates, by the horsemen; nor

fuit quisquam qui studēret prædæ.
was there any one who was attending to plunder. (Having

Incitati sic et cæde Cenabensi,
been) excited so much both by the slaughter at Cenabum,

et labore opĕris pepercerunt non
and by the labor of the work they spared neither (those)

confectis ætate, non mulieribus non infantibus.
worn out with age, nor women nor children.

Denique ex omni eo numero, qui fuit circiter
Finally out of all this number, which was about

quadraginta millium, vix octingenti, qui primo
forty thousand, scarcely eight hundred, who, the first

clamore audito, ejecerant se ex
shout having been heard, had thrown themselves from

oppido, pervenerunt incolumes ad Vercingetorigem;
the town, came safe to Vercingetorix;

quos ille, nocte jam multā, excepit
whom he, the night (being) now much [late], received

ex fugā silentio, et veritus ne qua seditio
from the flight in silence, and having feared lest some sedition

oreretur in castris ex eorum concursu, et
might arise in the camp from their gathering, and

misericordiā volgi, suis familiaribus que
from the compassion of the throng, his friends and

principibus civitatum dispositis procul
the chiefs of the states having been located at a distance

in viā, curavit disparandos que
on the road, he took care (that) they should be separated and

deducendos ad suos, quæ[29] pars castrorum
be conducted to their (own people) (in) which part of the camp

obvenerat cuique civitati ab initio.
had fallen to each state from the beginning.

29. Postero die concilio convocato,
On the following day a council having been called,

consolatus que cohortatus est, ne
he consoled and exhorted, they should not be

admodum demittĕrent se animo, neve perturbarentur
too much cast down in mind, nor troubled

incommodo: Romanos non vicisse virtute
by (their) loss; (that) the Romans had not conquered by bravery

neque in acie, sed quodam artificio et
nor in a battle-line, but by a certain skill and

scientiā oppugnationis, cujus rei ipsi fuerint
by the science of siege, of which thing they were

imperiti; errare, si qui expectent in bello
unskilled; (those) err, if they expect in war

omnes eventus rerum secundos; nunquam
all results of affairs (to be) prosperous; never

placuisse sibi Avarĭcum defendi,
had it pleased him (that) Avaricum to [should] be defended,

ejus rei habēret ipsos testes; sed
of which thing he had themselves as witnesses; but

factum imprudentiā Biturigum
to have been (it was) brought about by the imprudence of the Bituriges

et nimiā obsequentiā reliquorom, uti hoc
and by the too great compliance of the rest, that this

incommodum acciperetur; tamen se sanaturum
disaster was received; however he would remedy

id celeriter majoribus commodis. Nam civitates
this quickly by greater advantages. For the states

quæ dissentirent ab reliquis Gallis, has suā
which dissented from the other Gauls, these by his

diligentiā adjuncturum, atque effecturum, unum consilium
exertion he would unite, and would make one counsel

totius Galliæ cujus consensui (dat.) ne orbis
of all Gaul whose union not the whole

terrarum quidem possit obsistĕre;
world even would be able [could] (to) oppose;

que se habēre prope jam effectum id.
and he to have [had] nearly already effected this.

Interea esse æquum impet-
In the mean time to be [it was] just (that) to [it should]

rari ab iis causā communis salutis,
be obtained from them for the sake of the general safety,

ut instituĕrent munire castra, quo
that they should decree to fortify their camp, so that

possent facilius sustinēre
they would be able [could] the more easily (to) resist

repentinos impetus hostium.
the sudden attacks of the enemy.

30. Hac oratio fuit non ingrata Gallis, quod
This speech was not disagreeable to the Gauls, because

ipse non defecerat animo, tanto incommodo
he himself had not failed in courage, so great a loss

accepto, neque abdiderat se in occultum,
having been received, neither had he hidden himself in secret,

neque fugerat conspectum multitudinis; que
nor fled the sight of the multitude; and

existimabatur providēre et præsentire plus
he was thought to foresee and to forecast more

animo quod, re integrā, cen-
in mind because, the matter (being) not begun, he had

suerat primo Avaricum incendendum,
decided first (that) Avaricum to [should] be burnt,

post deserendum Itaque ut adversæ
afterwards (that) it to [should] be deserted. And so as adverse

res minuunt auctoritatem reliquorum imperatorum;
affairs diminish the authority of other commanders;

sic ex contrario dignitas hujus incommodo
so on the contrary the authority of this one a loss

accepto, augebatur in dies;
having been sustained, was increased (from day) to day;

simul veniebant in spem, ejus
at the same time they were coming into the hope, because of his

affirmatione, de adjungendis reliquis civitatibus; que
assertion, of uniting the other states; and

primum Galli eo tempore instituerunt munire
first the Gauls at this time undertook to fortify

castra; et sic homines insueti laboris
their camp; and so men unaccustomed to labor

confirmati sunt animo, ut existimarent omnia
were encouraged in mind, that they should think (that) all

quæ imperarentur patienda sibi.
(things) which were commanded must be endured by them.

31. Nec Vercingetorix laborabat minus animo
Nor Vercingetorix was exerting himself less in mind

quam pollicitus est, ut adjungĕret reliquas
than he had promised, that he might attach the other

civitates, atque alliciebat eorum principes donis
states, and he was enticing their chiefs by presents

que pollicitationibus. Deligebat idoneos homines
and promises. He selected suitable men

huic rei, aut subdolā oratione aut amicitiā
for this affair, either by the wily speech or friendship

quorum quisque posset facillime capi.
of whom each (chief) might most easily be gained.

Qui refugerant Avarico expugnato,
Those who had escaped Avaricum having been stormed,

curat armandos que vestiendos. Simul
he takes care should be armed and clothed. At the same time

ut diminutæ copiæ redintegrarentur, imperat
that his diminished forces might be renewed, he orders

certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et
a certain number of soldiers from the states, whom, and

ante quam diem, velit adduci in castra;
before what day, he wishes to be brought into the camp;

que jubet omnes sagittarios, quorum erat
and he orders all the archers, of whom there was

permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri, et mitti
a very great number in Gaul, to be sought, and sent

ad se. His rebus, id quod deperierat
to him. By these means, that which he had lost

Avarici celeriter. expletur. Interim
at Avaricum speedily, is replaced. in the mean time

Teutomatus, filius Olloviconis, rex Nitiobrigum,
Teutomatus, the son of Ollovicon, king of the Nitiobriges,

cujus pater appellatus erat amicus ab nostro Senatu,
whose father had been called friend by our Senate,

pervēnit ad eum, cum magno numero suorum equitum,
came to him, with a great number of his cavalry,

et quos conduxerat ex Aquitaniā.
and (those) that he had hired from Aquitania.

32. Cæsar commoratus complures dies Avaricī,
Cæsar having delayed several days at Avaricum,

que nactus ibi summam copiam frumenti et
and having obtained there the greatest supply of corn and

reliqui commeatus, refecit exercitum ex labore
of other provisions, refreshed his army from labor

atque inopiā. Hieme jam prope confectā,
and want. The winter now nearly having been ended,

cum tempore ipso anni vocaretur ad
when by the season itself of the year he was invited to

gerendum bellum, et constituisset proficisci
carrying on war, and he had determined to march

ad hostem, sive elicĕre eum ex paludibus
against the enemy, either to entice him from the marshes

que silvis, sive posset premĕre obsidione,
and woods, or that he might crush by a siege,

principes Æduorum veniunt ad cum legati
chiefs of the Ædui come to him as ambassadors

oratum ut maxime necessario tempore
to entreat that in an especially necessary [critical] time

subveniat civitati; rem esse in
he should assist the state; (saying that) their affairs to be [are] in

summo periculo; quod cum singuli magistratus cre-
extreme danger; that whereas single magistrates were

ari antiquitus, atque consuēssent obtinēre
appointed of old, and had been accustomed to possess

regiam potestatem annum, duo gerant magistratum,
a kingly power for one year, two hold the magistracy,

et uterque eorum dicat se creatum esse
and each of them asserts (that) he was appointed

legibus. Horum alterum esse Convictrolitavem
by the laws. Of these the one was Convictrolitavis

florentem et illustrem adolescentem, alterum Cotum
a distinguished and illustrous young man, the other Cotus

natum antiquissimā familiā, atque ipsum hominem
sprung from a most ancient family, and himself a man

summæ potentiæ, et magnæ cognationis, cujus
of the highest power, and of great connections, whose

frater Valetiacus gesserit eundem magistratum
brother Valetiacus had held the same magistracy

proximo anno; omnem civitatem esse in armis,
the last year; the whole state was in arms;

senatum divisum, populum divisum, suas
the senate was divided, the people divided, their

clientelas[30] cujusque eorum: quod si controversia
partisans of each of them; but if the dispute

alatur diutius, fore uti pars civitatis
is fomented longer, it would happen that a part of the state

confligat cum parte; id ne accidat
would collide with a part; (that) this should not happen

positum in ejus diligentiā atque auctoritate.
was placed [rested] in his exertion and authority.

33. Cæsar, etsi existimabat detrimentosum
Cæsar, although he thought it injurious

discedĕre a bello atque hoste, tamen non
to depart from the war and the enemy, yet not

ignorans quanta incommoda consuēssent oriri
being ignorant how great wrongs were wont to arise

ex dissensionibus, ne tanta civitas et tam
from dissensions, lest so great a state and (one) so

conjuncta Romano populo, quam ipse semper
connected with the Roman people, which he always

aluisset, que ornāsset omnibus rebus, descendĕret
had cherished, and honored in all things, should resort

ad vim atque ad arma, atque ea pars quæ
to violence and to arms, and (lest) that part which

confidĕret minus sibi accersĕret auxilia a
trusted least in him should call for assistance from

Vercingetorige, existimavit huic rei præ-
Vercingetorix, thought (that) this action ought

vertendum; et quod legibus Æduorum,
to be anticipated; and because by the laws of the Ædui,

iis qui obtinērent summum magistratum
to those who possessed the chief magistracy

non licēret excedĕre ex finibus, ne
it was not allowed to depart from (their) territories, lest

videretur deminuisse quid de eorum
he should seem to have curtailed any thing respecting their

jure aut legibus, ipse statuit proficisci in
authority or laws, he himself resolved to set out to

Æduos, que evocavit omnem senatum, et
the Ædui, and summoned all the senate, and (those)

intra quos controversia esset, ad se
among whom the controversy might be, to (meet) him

Decetiam. Cum prope omnis civitas
at Decetia [Decize]. When nearly the whole state

convenisset eo, que doceretur fratrem
had assembled there, and he was informed (that) a brother

renunciatum a fratre, paucis clam vocatis,
had been proclaimed by a brother, a few having been secretly called,

alio loco, alio tempore, atque
in another place, (and) at another time, than

oportuerit; cum leges non solum vetarent
was proper; since the laws not only forbade

duos ex unā familiā, utroque vivo, creari
two of one family, both being alive, to be chosen

magistratus, sed etiam prohibērent esse in
magistrates, but also forbade (them) to be in

senatu; coegit Cotum deponĕre magistratum;
the senate; he compelled Cotus to resign the magistracy

jussit Convictolitavem, qui creatus esset per
he ordered Convictolitavis, who had been chosen through

sacerdotes more civitatis, magistratibus
the priests after the custom of the state, the magistracy

intermissis, obtinēre potestatem.
having lapsed, to hold the power [office].

34. Hōc decreto interposito, cohortatus
This decree having been delivered, he exhorted

Æduos ut obliviscerentur controversiarum
the Ædui that they should forget (their) controversies

ac dissensionum, atque omnibus rebus omis-
and dissensions, and all things having been

sis, servirent huic bello, que exspectarent
laid aside, they should attend to this war, and might expect

ea præmiā, quæ meruissent, ab se, Galliā
those rewards, which they should merit, from him, Gaul

devictā, que mittĕrent omnem
having been conquered, and (that) they should send all

equitatum, et decem millia peditum celeriter
the cavalry, and ten thousand footmen speedily

sibi, quæ disponĕret in præsidiis causā
to him, whom he might place in garrisons for the sake

rei frumentariæ; divisit exercitum in duas
of the grain supply; he divided (his) army into two

partes; dedit quattuor legiones Labieno ducendas
parts; he gave four legions to Labienus to be led

in Senones que Parisios; ipse duxit sex in
into the Senones and Parisii; he himself led six into

Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen
the Arverni to the town (of) Gergovia down the river

Elaver: attribuit partem equitatūs illi,
Allier: he gave a part of the cavalry to him (Labienus)

reliquit partem sibi. Quā re cognitā,
he left a part for himself. Which thing having been learned

Vercingetorix, omnibus pontibus ejus fluminis
Vercingetorix, all the bridges of this river

interruptis, cœpit facĕre iter ab
having been demolished, began to make his march on

alterā parte fluminis.
the other side of the river.

35. Cum uterque exercitus esset in conspectu
Since each army was in view

utrique que poneret castra fere e
to (of) the other and was pitching a camp almost over

regione castris, exploratoribus dispositis,
against a camp, scouts having been stationed,

necubi Romani transducĕrent copias,
(so) that in no place the Romans could lead across the forces,

ponte effecto; res erat
a bridge having been built; (this) thing [condition] was

Cæsari in magnis difficultatibus, ne imped-
to [placed] Cæsar in great difficulties, lest he should

iretur flumine, majorem partem æstatis,
be hindered by the river, for the greater part of the summer,

quod Elaver fere soleat non transiri
because the Allier generally is wont not to be crossed

vado ante autumnum. Itaque ne id
by fording before autumn. Therefore lest this

acciděret, castris positis silvestri loco
might happen, the camp having been pitched in a woody place

e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercin-
opposite one of these bridges, which Vercin-

getorix curaverat rescindendos, postero die
getorix had provided should be destroyed, on the next day

restitit in occulto, cum duabus legionibus;
he remained in a concealed place, with two legions;

misit, ut consueverat reliquas copias
he sent, as he had been accustomed the remaining forces

cum omnibus impedimentis, quibusque quartis
with all the baggage, each fourth

cohortibus demptis, uti numerus legionum
cohort having been removed, so that the number of the legions

videretur constare. Iis jussis progredi
should seem to agree. These having been ordered to advance

quam longissime possent, cum jam ex
as far (as) they could, when at last from

tempore diei capĕret conjecturam per-
the time of day he could make the conjecture (that) they

ventum in castra, cœpit reficĕre pontem
had arrived to [in] camp, he began to rebuild the bridge

iisdem sublicis inferior pars quarum remanebat
on the same piles the lower part of which was remaining

integra. Opere celeriter effecto, que
entire. The work quickly having been completed and

legionibus transductis, et idoneo loco
the legions having been led over, and a suitable place

castris delecto, revocavit reliquas copias.
for a camp having been selected, he recalled the remaining forces.

Vercingetorix, re cognitā, ne
Vercingetorix, the thing [event] having been learned, lest

cogeretur dimicare contra suam voluntatem,
he might be forced to fight against his will,

antecessit magnis itineribus.
preceded (him) by great [forced] marches.

36. Cæsar pervēnit Gergoviam, ex eo loco,
Cæsar reached Gergovia, from this place,

quintis castris que levi equestri prœlio
on the fifth encampment and a slight cavalry battle

facto eo die, situ urbis
having been fought on this day, the situation of the town

perspecto, quæ posita in
having been reconnoitered, which (having been) placed on

altissimo monte, habebat omnes aditus
a very high mountain, had all the approaches

difficiles, desperavit de expugnatione; constituit
difficult, he despaired of an assault; he determined

non agendum[31] de obsessione
(that) not to be [it must not be] acted respecting the siege

prius quam expedisset rem frumentariam. At
before (that) he had secured a grain supply. But

Vercingetorix castris positis prope oppidum,
Vercingetorix (his) camp having been placed near the town,

in monte, collocaverat copias singularum
on the mountain, had stationed the forces of each

civitatum separatim, circum se, mediocribus
state separately, around himself, at moderate

intervallis, atque omnibus collibus ejus jugi
intervals, and all the hills of this range

occupatis qua poterat despici,
having been occupied where it was possible to be viewed,

præbebat horribilem speciem; que jubebat
he was presenting a formidable appearance; and he was ordering

principes earum civitatum, quos delegerat
the chiefs of these states whom he had selected

sibi ad capiendum consilium, convenire ad
for himself for taking counsel, to come to

se quotidie primā luce seu quid
him daily at first light [early dawn], whether anything

videretur communicandum, seu quid minis-
might seem best to be discussed, or anything (to) be

trandum; neque intermittebat fere ullum diem,
performed; nor did he omit scarcely any day;

quin periclitaretur quid animi ac virtutis
but that he might try what (of) spirit and (of) courage

esset in quoque suorum equestri prœlio,
might be in each of his men by cavalry engagements,

sagittariis interjectis. Erat collis e
the archers having been intermixed. There was a hill

regione oppidi sub ipsis radicibus montis
opposite the town at the very roots [foot] of the mountain

egregie munitus, atque circumcisus ex omni parte
excellently fortified, and precipitous on every side

(quem si nostri tenērent, videbantur
(which if our men could hold, they would seem (able)

prohibituri hostes et[32] ex magnā parte
to prevent the enemy both in great part (from)

aquæ (gen.), et liberā pabulatione); sed is
water, and from free foraging); but this

locus tenebatur ab iis præsidio non nimis
place was held by them with a garrison not very

firmo; tamen, Cæsar egressus ex castris
strong; however, Cæsar having marched out from the camp

silento noctis, prius quam subsidium posset
in the silence of the night, before (that) aid could

venire ex oppido, præsidio dejecto,
come from the town, the garrison having been dislodged,

potitus loco, collocavit duas legiones, ibi,
having seized the place, he stationed two legions there,

que perduxit duplicem fossam duodenūm pedum
and led a double trench (of) twelve feet

a majoribus castris ad minora, ut
(wide) from the greater camp to the lesser, (so) that

etiam singuli possent commeare tuto ab
even single (soldiers) could pass safely from [on]

repentino incursu hostium.
the sudden attack of the enemy.

37. Dum hæc geruntur ad Gergoviam,
White these things were happening at Gergovia,

Convictolitais. Æduus, cui demonstravimus
Convictolitais. the Æduan, to whom we have shown

magistratum abjudicatum a Cæsare sollicitatus
the magistracy was adjudged by Cæsar having been solicited

pecuniā ab Arvernis colloquitur cum quibusdam
with money by the Arverni confers with certain

adolescentibus quorum Litavicus erat princeps, atque
young men of whom Litavicus was the chief, and

ejus fratres, adolescentes nati amplissimā familiā.
his brothers, young men born of most illustrious family.

Communicat præmium cum iis, que hortatur eos
He shares the money with them, and exhorts them

ut meminerint se liberos, et natos
that they should remember (that) they (were) free, and born

imperio; esse unam civitatem Æduorum quæ
for empire; (saying that) it is alone the state of the Ædui which

distineat certissimam victoriam Galliæ; reliquas
retards the most certain victory of the Gauls; the rest

contineri ejus auctoritate, quā transductā,
are restrained by its authority which having been brought over

non fore locum Romanis
[and if it were won over], there would not be a place for the Romans

consistendi in Galliā; se esse affectum nonnullo
to stand on in Gaul; (that) he was treated by a considerable

beneficio Cæsaris, tamen sic ut obtinuerit
benefit of Cæsar, however (only) so that he obtained

justissimam causam apud eum; sed tribuĕre (inf.)
a most just cause through him; but (he) owes

plus communi libertati. Enim cur Ædui
more to (their) common liberty. For why should the Ædui

veniant ad Cæsarem disceptatorem de suo jure
come to Cæsar as arbiter about their rights

et de legibus potius quam Romani ad
and about their laws rather than the Romans to

Æduos? Adolescentibus deductis
the Æduī? The young men having been brought over

celeriter, et oratione magistratūs, et præmio,
speedily, both by the speech of the magistrate, and the bribe,

cum profiterentur, se vel fore principes
when they promised, that they indeed would be leaders

ejus consilii, ratio perficiendi quærebatur,
of this enterprise, a plan of executing (it) was inquired into,

quod confidebant civitatem non posse
because they were confident (that) the state could not be

adduci temere ad suscipiendum bellum.
induced rashly to undertaking the war.

Placuit ut Litavicus præficeretur illis
it was resolved that Litavicus should be appointed over those

decem millibus quæ mitterentur Cæsari ad bellum,
ten thousand that were to be sent to Cæsar for the war,

atque curaret ducenda ea, que ejus
and should have charge of conducting them, and (that) his

fratres præcurr erent ad Cæsarem. Constituunt
brothers should go before (him) to Cæsar. They determine

quā ratione placeat reliqua agi.
in what manner it may be well (that) the rest to be [should be] performed.

38. Litavicus, exercitu accepto, cum
Litavicus, the army having been received, when

abesset circiter triginta millia passuum ab
he was distant about thirty thousand paces from

Gergovia, subito convocatis militibus,
Gergovia, having suddenly called together the soldiers,

lacrumans inquit, "Quo milites proficiscimur?
weeping he said, "Whither O soldiers are we going?

omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit.
all our Knighthood all the nobility has perished.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus principes civitatis
Eporedorix and Viridomarus chiefs of the state

insimulati proditionis interfecti sunt ab
having been accused of treason have been killed by

Romanis causā indictā. Cognoscite
the Romans the case not having been called. [without a trial] Know

hæc ab iis, qui fugerunt ex ipsā cæde. Nam
this from these, who have fled from the very massacre. For

ego fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis
I (my) brothers and all my relations

interfectis prohibeor dolore pronunciare quæ
having been killed am prevented by grief from announcing what

gesta sunt." Ii producuntur, quos ille edocuerat
has been done." Those are produced, whom he had taught

quæ vellet dici, atque eadem, quæ Litavicus
what he wished to be said, and the same, which Litavicus

pronunciaverat, exponunt multitudini: omnes
had announced, they explain to the multitude: (that) all

equites Æduorum interfectos, quod dicerentur
the knights of the Ædui were slain, because they were said

collocuti cum Arvernis; ipsos occultasse se
to have conspired with the Arverni; they had hid themselves

inter multitudinem militum, atque profugisse ex
among the multitude of soldiers, and had fled from

mediā cæde. Ædui conclamant, et
the midst (of the) massacre. The Ædui exclaim, and

obsecrant Litavicum ut consulat sibi,
entreat Litavicus that he should deliberate for themselves,

"Quasi vero," inquit ille, "res sit
"As if indeed," said he, "the thing were (a matter)

consilii, ac non sit necesse nobis contendĕre
of [for] a plan, and it were not necessary for us to hasten

Gergoviam et conjungĕre nosmet cum Arvernis?
to Gergovia and to unite ourselves with the Arverni?

An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinŏre
Or can we doubt, but that, so nefarious a crime

admisso, Romani jam concurrant ad
having been committed, the Romans now gather for

interficiendos nos? Proinde si est quid animi
slaying us? Therefore if there is any spirit

in nobis persequamur eorum mortem, qui
in us let us follow [avenge] their death, who

interierunt indignissime, atque interficiamus hos
have perished most ignobly, and let us slay these

latrones." Ostendit Romanos cives, qui erant
robbers." He shows the Roman citizens, who were

unā fiduciā ejus præsidii. Continuo diripit
with them in the confidence of his protection. He forthwith seizes

magnum numerum frumenti que commeatus;
a great quantity of corn and provisions;

interficit ipsos crudeliter excruciatos;
he kills them (the Romans) having cruelly tortured (them);

dimittit nuntios totā civitate Æduorum; permovet
he sends messengers in all the state of the Ædui; he excites

eodem mendacio de cæde
(them) with the same falsehood about the massacre

equitum et principum; hortatur ut simili
of knights and chiefs; he exhorts (them) that in like

ratione, atque ipse fecerit, persequantur suas
manner, as he had done, they should avenge their

injurias.
injuries.

39. Eporedorix adolescens natus summo loco,
Eporedorix a young man born in the highest rank,

et summæ potentiæ domi, et unā Viridomarus,
and of the highest power at home, and also Viridomarus,

pari ætate et gratiā, sed dispari genĕre,
of equal age and influence, but of unequal lineage

quem Cæsar perduxerat ad summam dignitatem
whom Cæsar had elevated to the highest dignity

ex humili loco, traditum sibi
from humble station, he having been recommended to him

ab Divitiaco, convenerant in numero equitum,
by Divitiacus, had come in the number of the horsemen,

evocati nominatim ab eo. Erat
(having been) called by name by him (Cæsar). There was

contentio his inter se de
a contest (between) these (two) among thrmselves concerning

principatu; et in illā controversiā magistratuum
rank; and in that dispute of the magistrates

alter pugnaverat pro Convictolitavi alter pro
the one had contended for Convictrolitais the other for

Coto summis opibus. Ex iis Eporedorix,
Cotus with (their) greatest resources. Of these Eporedorix,

consilio Litavici cognito defert rem
the designs of Litavicus having been learned reports the matter

ad Cæsarem fere mediā nocte; orat
to Cæsar about mid night; he begs (that)

ne patiatur civitatem pravis consiliis
he would not suffer the state by the wicked counsels

adolescentium deficĕre ab amicitiā Romani
of young men to fall from the friendship of the Roman

populi, quod provideat futurum, si tot millia
people, which he foresaw would happen, if so many thousands

hominum conjunxerint se cum hostibus,
of men should have united themselves with the enemy,

quorum salutem neque propinqui
whose safety neither (their) relations (could)

negligĕre neque posset civitas æstimare levi
neglect nor could the state consider (it) of slight

momento.
importance.

40. Cæsar affectus magnā sollicitudine
Cæsar, (having been) affected with great anxiety

hōc nuntio, quod semper præcipue
by this intelligence, because he had always particularly

indulserat civitati Æduorum, nullā dubitatione
favored the state of the Ædui, no delay

interpositā, educit ex castris quattuor
having been interposed, leads forth from the camp four

expeditas legiones, que omnem equitatum. Nec
light-armed legions, and all the cavalry. Nor

fuit spatium tali tempŏre ad contrahenda
was there an interval at such a time for contracting

castra, quod res videbatur posita
the camp, because the matter seemed placed [depending]

in celeritate. Relinquit C. Fabium legatum
on speed [dispatch]. He leaves C. Fabius (his) lieutenant

cum duabus legionibus præsidio castris;
with two legions for [as] a garrison to the camp;

quum jussisset fratres Litavici comprehendi,
when he had ordered the brothers of Litavicus to be arrested,

reperit profugisse paulo ante ad hostes.
he finds (that) they have fled a little before to the enemy.

Adhortatus milites, ne permoveantur
Having encouraged (his) soldiers, (that) they should not be troubled

labōre itinĕris necessario tempŏre, omnibus
by the labor of the march at (so) necessary a time, all

cupidissimis, progressus viginti quinque
(being) most eager, having proceeded twenty five

millia passuum, conspicatus agmen Æduorum,
thousand paces [miles], having seen the army of the Ædui

equitatu immisso, moratur atque
the cavalry having been sent against (them), he retards and

impedit eorum iter; que interdicit omnibus,
impedes their march; and he forbids all,

ne interficiant quemquam. Jubet Eporedorigem
that they should kill any one. He orders Eporedorix

et Viridomarum, quos ille existimabant interfectos,
and Viridomarus, whom they were thinking had been killed,

versari inter equites, que appellare suos
to mingle among the horsemen, and to address their

Iis cognitis, et fraude
(countrymen). These having been recognized, and the fraud

Litavici perspectā, Ædui incipiunt
of Litavicus having been perceived, the Ædui begin

tendĕre manus et significare deditionem, et
to extend (their) hands and to signify submission, and

projectis armis deprecari mortem.
having thrown away (their) arms to beg off death.

Litavicus profugit Gergoviam, cum suis clientibus,
Litavicus flees to Gergovia, with his clients,

quibus est nefas, more Gallorum, deserĕre
with whom it is a crime, by the custom of the Gauls, to desert

patronos, etiam in extremā fortunā.
(their) patrons, even in extreme [bad] fortune.

41. Cæsar, nuntiis missis ad civitatem
Cæsar, messengers having been sent to the state

Æduorum, qui docĕrent conservatos suo
of the Ædui, who should show (that those) had been saved by his

beneficio, quos potuisset interficĕre jure belli,
favor, whom he could have killed by the right of war,

que tribus horis noctis datis exercitui
and three hours of the night having been given to the army

ad quietem, movit castra ad Gergoviam.
for rest, he moved the camp toward Gergovia.

Fere medio itinĕre equites, missi a Fabio,
About the middle (of the) march horsemen sent by Fabius,

exponunt in quanto periculo res fuerit;
reveal in how great danger the affair has been;

demonstrant castra oppugnata summis
they explain (that) the camp was attacked by very great

copiis, quum integri crebro succederent
forces, as fresh (men) frequently succeeded

defessis, que defatigarent nostros assiduo
the tired, and exhausted our (men) by the continual

labōre, quibus (dat.)[33] propter magnitudinem
labor, by whom on account of the size

castrorum perpetuo permanendum esset
of the camp it must continually be remained [stationed]

vallo iisdem, multos vulneratos
on the rampart (by) the same, (that) many were wounded

multitudine sagittarum, atque omnis generis
by the multitude of arrows, and of every kind

telorum; ad sustinenda hæc tormenta
of weapons; for resisting these the hurling engines

fuisse magno usui; Fabium eorum dicessu,
were (of) great use; (that) Fabius on their departure,

duabus portis relictis obstruĕre
two gates having been left (open) was blocking up

ceteras, que addĕre pluteos vallo, et se
the rest, and adding breastworks to the wall, and (that) he

parare ad similem casum in posterum diem.
was preparing for a like fate on the next day.

Iis rebus cognitis, Cæsar pervēnit in
These things having been learned, Cæsar arrived at

castra ante ortum solis summo studio
the camp before the rising of the sun by the highest exertion

militum.
of the soldiers.

42. Dum hæc gerunter ad Gergoviam,
While these things are going on at Gergovia,

Ædui, primis nuntiis a Litavico accep-
the Ædui, the first messages from Litavicus having been

tis, relinquunt sibi nullum spatium ad
received, leave to themselves no time for

cognoscendum. Avaritia impellit alios iracundia
verifying (it). Avarice impels some passion

et temeritas alios, quæ est maxime innata
and rashness others, which (last) is especially natural

illi genĕri hominum, ut habeant levem
to that kind of men, (so) that they hold a slight

auditionem pro re compertā. Deripiunt bona
hearsay for a thing assured. They plunder the goods

Romanorum civium, faciunt cædes, abstra-
of Roman citizens, they commit murder, they drag (them)

hunt in servitutem. Convictolitavis adjuvat
away into slavery. Convictolitavis advances

proclinatam rem, que impellit plebem ad
the ruined condition, and drives the people to

furorem, ut facinŏre admisso
madness, that an enormity having been committed,

pudeat reverti ad sanitatem.
it may shame (them) to return to soundness of mind.

Educunt ex oppido Cobillono M. Aristium
They drag out from the town (of) Cobillonus M. Aristius

tribunum militum facientem iter ad
a tribune of the soldiers making (his) way to (his)

legionem, fide datā;
legion (although), a pledge (of safety) having been [had been] given;

cogunt eos facĕre idem, qui constiterant ibi
they force those to do the same, who had sojourned there

causā negotiandi. Continuo adorti hos
for the purpose of trading. Having continually attacked these

in itinĕre, exuunt omnibus
on (their) journey, they strip (them) of all (their)

impedimentis; obsident repugnantes diem que
baggage; they besiege (those) opposing day and

noctem, multis utrimque interfectis, concitant
night, many on both sides having been slain they summon

majorem multitudinem ad arma.
a greater multitude to arms.

43. Interim nuntiis allatis, omnes
Meantime news having been brought, (that) all

eorum milites tenēri in potestate Cæsaris,
of their soldiers to be [were] held in the power of Cæsar,

concurrunt ad Aristium, demonstrant nihil
they gather to Aristium, they show (that) nothing

factum publico consilio; decernunt quæstionem
(was) done by public design; they decree an investigation

de bonis direptis; publicant bona
concerning the goods plundered; they confiscate the goods

Litavici que fratrum; mittunt legatos ad
of Litavicus and (his) brothers; they send ambassadors to

Cæsarem gratiā purgandi sui. Hæc,
Cæsar for the sake of clearing themselves. These things,

faciunt gratiā recuperandorum suorum;
they do for the sake of recovering their (soldiers);

sed contaminati facinŏre et capti compendio
but implicated in the crime and allured by the gain

ex direptis bonis, quod ea res pertinebat
from the plundered goods, because this matter related

ad multos, et exterriti timōre pœnæ,
to many, and having been alarmed by the fear of punishment,

incipiunt clam inire consilia de bello
they begin secretly to entertain plans concerning war

que solicitant legationibus reliquas civitates,
and incite with embassies the remaining states.

Quæ[34] tametsi Cæsar intellegebat, tamen quam
Which [these] things although Cæsar knew, yet as

mitissime potuit appellat legatos,
mildly as he was able he addresses the ambassadors, (saying that)

nihil se judicare gravius de civitate
in no wise does he judge more severely concerning the state

propter inscientiam que levitatem volgi,
on account of the ignorance and fickleness of the common people,

neque deminuĕre de suā benevolentiā in Æduos.
nor doe he abate from his good will toward the Ædui.

Ipse expectans majorem motum Galliæ,
He himself apprehending a greater commotion of Gaul,

ne circumsisteretur ab omnibus civitatibus,
lest he should be surrounded by all the states,

inibat consilia, quemadmodum discedĕret a
was devising plans, as to what manner he might depart from

Gergoviā ac rursus contraheret omnem
Gergovia and again might draw together all (his)

exercitum, ne profectio nata a timore
army, lest a departure arising from fear

defectionis, videretur similis fugæ.
of a revolt, might seem like (to) a flight.

44. Facultas gerendæ rei bene visa est
An opportunity of executing the affair well seemed

accidĕre cogitanti hæc. Nam cum
to occur (to him) meditating these (things). For when

venisset in minora castra causā perspiciendi
he had come to the smaller camp for the purpose of inspecting

operis, animadvertit collem, qui tenebatur
the work, he observed (that) the hill, which was held

ab hostibus nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus
by the enemy was bared of men, which on former

diebus vix poterat cerni præ multitudine.
days scarcely could be discerned for the multitude.

Admiratus, quærit causam ex perfugis, quorum
Surprised, he inquires the cause of the deserters, of whom

magnus numerus quotidie confluebat ad eum.
a great number daily were pouring in to him.

Constabat inter omnes, quod Cæsar ipse
It was agreed by all, which [as] Cæsar himself

cognoverat jam per exploratores, dorsum
had known already through (his) scouts, (that) the back

ejus jugi esse prope æquum, sed silvestre
[summit] of this hill was nearly level, but woody

et angustum, quā esset aditus ad alteram
and narrow, where was a passage to the other

partem oppidi; illos timēre vehementer
part of the town; (that) they feared exceedingly

huic loco; nec jam sentire aliter, uno
for this place; nor now did they feel otherwise, one

colle occupato ab Romanis, quin si
hill having been occupied by the Romans, (but) that if

amisissent alterum, viderentur pænc
they should lose the other, they would appear nearly

circumvallati atque interclusi omni exitu et pabulatione;
surrounded and cut off from all egress and foraging;

omnes evocatos a Vercingetorige ad muniendum
(that) all had been called out by Vercingetorix for fortifying

hunc locum.
this place.

45. Hāc re cognitā, Cæsar mittit
This thing having been learned, Cæsar sends

complures turmas equitum eo de mediā
several troops of horsemen thither at mid-

nocte; imperat iis, ut pervagentur
night; he commands them, that they should range about

in omnibus locis paulo tumultuosius. Primā
in all places somewhat more tumultuously [noisily]. At the first

luce jubet magnum numerum
light [early dawn] he orders a great quantity

impedimentorum produci ex castris, que
of baggage to be brought forth from the camp, and

mulorum, que stramenta detrahi iis, que
of mules, and the pack-saddles to be taken from them, and

muliones cum cassidibus circumvehi collibus
the muleteers with helmets to ride round the hills

specie ac simulatione equitum. His
in the appearance and manner of horsemen. To these

addit paucos equites, qui vagarentur latius
he adds a few horsemen, who might range more widely

causā ostentationis. Jubet omnes
for the purpose of display. He orders (them) all

petĕre easdem regiones longo circuitu. Hæc
to seek the same places by a long circuit. These

videbantur procul ex oppido, ut erat
things were seen at a distance from the town, as there was

despectus a Gergoviā in castra; neque, tanto
a view from Gergovia into the camp; nor, at such

spatio, poterat explorari quid certi
a distance, could it be made out what of [to a] certainty

esset. Mittit unam legionem eodem jugo, et
it might be. He sends one legion on the same hill, and

constituit progressam paulum, inferiore
he stations (it) advanced a little, in a lower

loco, que occultat silvis. Suspicio
place, and hides (it) in the woods. The suspicion (of)

Gallis augetur, atque omnes copiæ munitionum
the Gauls is increased, and all the forces of the fortifications

transducuntur illo. Cæsar conspicatus
are brought over thither. Cæsar having perceived (that)

castra hostium vacua, insignibus suorum
the camp of the enemy was deserted, the insignia of his

tectis, que militaribus signis
(men) having been covered, and the military ensigns

occultatis, traducit milites raros ex
having been concealed, transfers (his) soldiers in squads from

majoribus castris in minora, ne animad-
the larger camp into the smaller, lest they should

verterentur ex oppido; que ostendit
be observed from the town; and he shows [explains]

legatis, quos præfecerat singulis legionibus,
to the lieutenants whom he had appointed over each legion,

quid velit fieri; in primis monet, ut
what he wishes to be done; especially he admonishes that

contineant milites, ne progrediantur
they should restrain the soldiers, lest they should proceed

longius, studio pugnandi aut spe prædæ.
too far, by the desire of fighting or by the hope of plunder.

Proponit quid incommodi iniquitas
He explains what (of) disadvantage the unfavorableness

loci habeat hoc posse vitari
of the place may have, (that) this can be avoided

celerite unā, rem occasionis, non
by quickness [speed] alone, (that it is) a matter of opportunity, not

prœli. His rebus expositis, dat signum,
of battle. These things having been stated, he gives the signal,

et mittit Æduos, eodem tempŏre, ab dextrā
and sends the Æduī, at the same time, from the right

parte alio adscensu.
side [flank] by another ascent.

46. Murus oppidi aberat mille et du-
The wall of the town was distant a thousand and two

centos [MCC] passus ab planitie, atque initio
hundred paces from the plain, and from the beginning

adscensūs, recta regione, si nullus anfractus
of the ascent, in a straight direction, if no bend

intercederet. Quidquid accesserat huic
should intervene. Whatever had been added to this

circuitūs ad molliendum clivum, id augebat
(of) circuit for easing the slope [ascent], this increased

spatium itineris. Galli præduxerant murum
the length of the route. The Gauls had extended a wall

sex pedum ex grandibus saxis, fere a
six feet (high) of great stones, nearly in

medio colle in longitudine ut
the middle (of) the hill on the length [lengthwise], as

natura montis ferebat, qui tardaret
the nature of the mountain allowed, which might retard

impetum nostrorum; atque omni inferiore spatio
the attack of our men; and all the lower space

relicto vacuo, compleverant superiorem partem
having been left vacant, they had filled the higher part

collis usque ad murum oppidi castris
of the hill even to the wall of the town with camps

densissimis. Milites, signo dato,
very close. *The soldiers,* *the signal* *having been given*

celeriter perveniunt ad munitionem, que
quickly *arrive* *at* (*this*) *fortification,* *and*

transgressi eam, potiuntur trinis
having passed over *it,* *take possession* (*of*) *three* (*separate*)

castris. Ac tanta fuit celeritas in capiendis
camps. *And* *so great* *was* *the speed* *in* *capturing*

castris, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum,
the camps, *that* *Teutomatus;* *king* *of the Nitiobriges,*

oppressus subito in tabernaculo, ut
having been surprised *suddenly* *in* (*his*) *tent,* *when*

conquieverat meridie, vix eripĕret se
he had gone to rest *at noon,* *scarcely* *saved* *himself*

ex manibus prædantium militum, superiore
from *the hands* *of the plundering* *soldiers,* *with the upper*

parte corpŏris nuda, equo
part *of* (*his*) *body* *naked,* (*and his*) *horse*

vulnerato.
wounded.

47. Cæsar consecutus id quod proposuerat
Cæsar *having attained* *that* *which* *he had proposed*

animo, jussit cani receptui, que
in mind, *ordered* (*the bugle*) *to be sounded* *for retreat,* *and*

constituit signa decimæ legionis, quā erat
set up *the standards of the tenth legion,* *by which he was*

tum comitatus. At milites reliquarum legionum,
then accompanied. *But* *the soldiers* *of the other* *legions,*

non exaudito sono tubæ, quod
not *having heard* *the sound* *of the trumpet,* *because*

vallis satis magna intercedebat, tamen
a valley *sufficiently* [*quite*] *large was intervening, nevertheless*

retinebantur a tribunis militum que
were kept back *by* *the tribunes* *of the soldiers* *and*

legatis, ut præceptum erat a Cæsare.
by the lieutenants, *as* (*it*) *had been commanded* *by Cæsar.*

Sed elati spe celeris victoriæ et fuga
But *elated* *by the hope* *of a speedy* *victory* *and by the flight*

hostium, que secundis prœliis superiorum
of the enemy, and the favorable battles of former

temporum existimabant nihil adeo arduum
times they thought (that) nothing (was) so difficult

sibi, quod possent non consequi virtute;
for them, which they could not accomplish by valor;

neque fecerunt finem sequendi, prius
nor did they make an end of following, before

quam appropinquārunt muro que portis oppidi.
(that) they had approached the wall and the gates of the town.

Vero tum clamore orto ex omnibus partibus
But then a shout having arisen from all parts

urbis, qui aberant longius perterriti
of the town, those who were distant farther frightened

repentino tumultu, quum existimarent hostes
by the sudden tumult, as they thought the enemy

esse intra portas, jecerunt sese ex
to be [were] within the gates, threw themselves from

oppido. Matres familiās jactabant
the town. The mothers of families [matrons] threw

vestem que argentum de muro, et
(their) clothes and silver from the wall, and

prominentes nudo pectŏre, passis manibus
bending forward with naked breast, with outstretched hands,

obtestabantur Romanos, ut parcĕrent sibi; neu
they implored the Romans that they should spare them; nor

sicut fecissent Avarici, abstinērent ne
as they had done at Avaricum, abstain from [spare] not

quidem mulieribus atque infantibus. Nonnullæ
even the women and children. Some

demissæ de muris per manus,
having let themselves down from the wall by their hands,

tradebant sese militibus. L. Fabius
surrendered themselves to the soldiers. L. Fabius

centurio octavæ legionis, quem, constabat
a centurion of the eighth legion, whom [who], it appeared

dixisse eo die inter suos, se
to have [had] said this day among his (men, that) he

excitari Avaricensibus præmiis, neque commissurum,
was excited by the Avarican rewards, nor would he allow,

ut quisquam adscenderet murum prius,
that any one should mount the wall before (himself),

nactus tres suos manipulares atque
having taken three (of) his company and

sublevatus ab iis adscendit murum;
having been raised up by them mounted the wall;

ipse rursus exceptans singulos extulit eos in
he in turn taking up one at a time drew them onto

murum.
the wall.

48. Interim ii, qui convenerant ad alteram
In the meantime those, who had assembled at the other

partem oppidi, ut demonstravimus supra causā
part of the town, as we have shown above for the purpose

munitionis, primo clamōre exaudito, inde
of fortifying, the first shout having been heard, afterward

etiam incitati crebris nuntiis, oppidum
also incited by frequent reports, (that) the town

tenēri ab Romanis, præmissis equitibus,
was held by the Romans, having sent forward the horsemen,

contenderunt eo magno concursu. Ut quisque
they hastened there in a great throng. As each

eorum primus vēnerat consistebat sub muro,
of them first came he halted under the wall,

que augebat numerum suorum pugnantium.
and increased the number of their (men) fighting.

Cum magna multitudo quorum convenisset,
When a great multitude of these had assembled,

matres familiās quæ paulo ante
the mothers of families [matrons] who a little before

tendebant manus de muro Romanis,
were stretching out hands from the wall to the Romans,

cœperunt obtestari suos et Gallico more
began to beseech their (people) and in the Gallic manner

ostentare passum capillum, que proferre
to show dishevelled hair, and to bring forth

liberos in conspectum. Contentio erat æqua
the children into view. The contest was equal

Romanis nec loco nec numero (sing.); simul
for the Romans neither in place nor in numbers; at the same time

defatigati et cursu et spatio pugnæ
fatigued both by running and by the duration of the fight,

non facile sustinebant recentes atque integros.
they did not easily withstand (those) fresh and vigorous.

49. Cæsar cum vidēret pugnari
Cæsar when he saw to be fought [the fighting was]

iniquo loco, que copias hostium
in a disadvantageous place, and the forces of the enemy

augēri, præmetuens suis mittit ad
to be [were] increased, being anxious for his (men) he sends to

T. Sextium legatum, quem reliquerat præsidio
T. Sextius (his) lieutenant, whom he had left for [as] a guard

minoribus castris, ut celeriter educĕret
to the smaller camp, that he should quickly lead forth

cohortes ex castris, et constituĕret sub
the cohorts from the camp, and should station (them) at

infimo colle ab dextro latĕre hostium;
the lowest (part of) the hill on the right wing of the enemy;

ut si vidisset nostros depulsos loco,
that if he should see our (men) repulsed from the place,

terrēret hostes quo insequerentur minus
he might alarm the enemy so that they would follow less

libere. Ipse progressus paulum ex eo
freely. He himself having proceeded a little from this

loco cum legione, ubi constiterat, expectabat
place with the legion, where he had halted, was awaiting

eventum pugnæ.
the issue of the battle.

50. Cum pugnaretur accerime comminus,
While it was fought most violently hand to hand,

hostes confidĕrent loco et numero,
the enemy trusted in the place and (their) number,

nostri virtute; Ædui sunt subito visi, ab
our men in (their) courage; the Ædui were suddenly seen, by

nostris aperto latĕre, quos Cæsar miserat
our (men) on the exposed flank, whom Cæsar had sent

ab dextrā parte alio ascensu, causā
from the right side [flank] by another ascent, for the purpose

distinendæ manus.[36] Hi vehementer perterruerunt
of cutting off the force. They very much alarmed

nostros similitudine armorum; ac tametsi
our men by the similarity of (their) arms, and although

animadvertebantur dextris humeris exsertis
they were observed with the right shoulder uncovered,

quod consueverat esse insigne pacatorum,
which was accustomed to be the sign of the peaceful,

tamen milites existimabant id ipsum
yet the soldiers thought (that) this same

factum ab hostibus causā fallendi sui.
(was) done by the enemy for the sake of deceiving them.

Eodem tempore centurio, L. Fabius, que
At the same time the centurion, L. Fabius, and

qui adscenderant murum unā,
(those) who had ascended the wall together (with him),

circumventi atque interfecti, præcipitabantur
having been surrounded and slain, were thrown

de muro. M. Petronius, centurio ejusdem
from the wall. M. Petronius, a centurion of the same

legionis, quum conatus esset exscindere portas,
legion, when he had attempted to cut down the gates.

oppressus a multitudine, ac desperans
overpowered by the multitude, and despairing of safety

sibi, vulneribus jam acceptis, inquit
for himself, wounds already having been received, said

suis manipularibus qui secuti erant illum.
to his comrades who had followed him.

"Quoniam possum non servare me unā vobiscum,
"Since I can not save myself together with you,

quidem certe prospiciam vestræ saluti, quos,
indeed certainly I will provide for your safety, whom,

adductos cupiditate gloriæ deduxi in
led by the desire of glory, I have brought into

periculum; vos, facultate datā
danger; you, an opportunity having been given,

consulite vobis."
[when an opportunity occurs] consult for yourselves."

Simul irrupit in medios hostes,
At the same time he threw himself into the midst (of the) enemy,

que duobus interfectis, submovit reliquos paulum
and two having been killed, he drove back the rest a little

a portā. Suis conantibus auxiliari inquit,
from the gate. To his (men) endeavoring to assist he said,

"Frustra conamini subvenire meæ vitæ quem sanguis
"In vain you try to save my life whom blood

que vires jam deficiunt, proinde abite hinc,
and strength now fail, therefore go from here,

dum est facultas, que recipite vos ad
while there is the chance, and get [betake] yourselves to

legionem." Pugnans ita concidit post paulum,
the legion." Fighting thus he fell after a little,

ac fuit saluti[37] suis.
and was (for) a safety to his (men).

51. Cum nostri premerentur undique,
As our (men) were pressed on every side,

quadraginta sex centurionibus amissis,
forty six centurions having been lost,

dejecti sunt loco. Sed decima legio,
they were driven from the place. But the tenth legion,

quæ constiterat pro subsidio paulo æquiore
which had taken stand for a reserve on a little more level

loco tardavit Gallos insequentes intolerantius.
place checked the Gauls following too eagerly.

Cohortes decimæ tertiæ legionis, rursus exceperunt
The cohorts of the thirteenth legion, in turn supported

hanc,[38] quæ eductæ ex minoribus castris,
this, which [for they] having been led from the smaller camp,

cum T. Sextio, legato, ceperant superiorem
with T. Sextius, the lieutenant, had occupied the higher

locum. Ubi legiones primum attigerunt planitiem
ground. When the legions first reached the plain

constiterunt, signis infestis contra
they halted, *the standards* *having been turned* *against*

hostes. Vercingetorix reduxit suos ab
the enemy. *Vercingetorix* *led back* *his* (*men*) *from*

radicibus collis intra munitiones. Eo
the foot *of the hill* *within* *the fortifications.* *On this*

die paulo minus septingenti milites
day *a little* *less* (*than*) *seven hundred* *soldiers*

desiderati sunt.
were missing.

52. Postero die, Cæsar, contione advocata,
On the next *day,* *Cæsar,* *an assembly having been called,*

reprehendit temeritatem que cupiditatem militum,
censured *the rashness* *and* *avarice* *of the soldiers,*

quod ipsi judicavissent sibi, quō viderētur
because *they* *had judged* *for themselves,* *where* *it seemed*

procedendum, aut quid agendum,
(*that they*) *ought to go* *or* *what* *ought to be done,*

neque, signo recipiendi dato,
neither, *the signal* *for halting* *having been given,*

constitissent, neque potuissent retineri a
did they halt, *nor* *could they* *be restrained* *by*

tribunis militum que legatis. Exposuit
the tribunes *of the soldiers* *and* *by the lieutenants.* *He showed*

quid iniquitas loci posset,
what *the disadvantage* *of position* *would be able* (*to effect*),

quid ipse sensisset ad Avarĭcum, cum,
what (*he*) *himself* *had perceived* *at* *Avaricum,* *when,*

hostibus deprehensis, sine duce et
the enemy *having been surprised* *without* *a leader* *and*

sine equitatu, demisisset exploratam victoriam,
without *cavalry,* *he had given up* *a certain* *victory,*

ne accipĕret modo parvum detrimentum in
lest *he might receive* *even* *a small* *injury* *in*

contentione, propter iniquitatem loci.
the contest, *on account of* *the disadvantage* *of the place.*

Quantopere admīraretur eorum magnitudinem animi,
As much as *he admired* *their* *greatness* *of spirit,*

quos non munitiones castrorum, non altitudo
whom neither the fortifications of the camp, nor the height

montis, non murus oppidi potuisset
of the mountain, nor the wall of the town could

tardare, reprehendĕre tantopere licentiam que
retard, he censured so greatly (their) lawlessness and

arrogantiam, quod existimarent se sentire
presumption, because they were thinking (that) they understood

plus quam imperatorem de victoriā atque
more than (their) commander about victory and

exitu rerum; se desiderare in milite nec
the issue of affairs; (saying that) he desired in a soldier no

minus modestiam et continentiam, quam virtutem
less moderation and submission, than valor

atque magnitudinem animi.
and greatness of spirit.

53. Hāc contione habitā, et ad extremum
This council having been held, and to the highest degree

militibus confirmatis oratione, ne
the soldiers having been encouraged by (his) speech, that (they)

permoverentur animo ob hanc causam, neu
should not be disturbed in mind on account of this affair, nor

tribuĕrent id virtuti hostium, quod
should they attribute this to the valor of the enemy, which

iniquitas loci attulisset; cogitans
the disadvantage of position had brought on (them); thinking

eadem de profectione, quæ senserat
the same concerning a departure, which [as] he had felt

ante, eduxit legiones ex castris, que
before, he led forth the legions from the camp, and

constituit aciem idoneo loco. Cum
drew up the battle line in a favorable place. When

Vercingetorix nihilo magis descendĕret in æquum
Vercingetorix no more would descend into level

locum, levi equestri prœlio facto,
ground, a slight cavalry engagement having occurred,

atque eo secundo, reduxit exercitum
and this (being) favorable, he led back (his) army

in castra. Cum fecisset hoc idem postero
into the camp. When he had done this same thing the next

die, existimans satis factum ad minuendam
day, believing (that) enough was done for lessening

Gallicam ostentationem, que confirmandos
the Gallic arrogance, and for encouraging

animos militum, movit castra in
the minds of (his) soldiers, he moved (his) camp into

Æduos. Hostibus ne quidem tum insecutis,
the Ædui. The enemy not even then having followed,

tertio die refecit pontem ad flumen
on the third day he repaired the bridge over the river

Elaver, atque traduxit exercitum.
Allier, and led over (his) army.

54. Ibi appellatus a Viridomaro atque
There, having been waited on by Viridomarus and

Eporedorige Æduis, discit Litavicum, cum
Eporedorix the Æduans, he learns (that) Litavicus, with

omni equitatu profectum ad sollicitandos Æduos;
all the cavalry had set out for instigating the Ædui;

et esse opus ipsos antecedĕre
and (that) it was necessary (that) they should go before

ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi Cæsar jam
for restraining the state. Although Cæsar already

multis rebus habebat perfidiam Æduorum
in many things had the unfaithfulness of the Ædui

perspectam atque existimabat discessu
clearly understood and he believed (that) by the departure

horum defectionem civitatis admaturari;
of these the defection of the state to [would] be hastened;

tamen censuit eos non retinendos, ne
however he was of the opinion that they should not be detained, lest

videretur aut inferre injuriam, aut dare
he might appear either to impose a wrong, or to give

aliquam suspicionem timoris. His discedentibus,
some suspicion of fear. To them departing,

breviter exposuit sua merita in Æduos, quos
he briefly set forth his services to the Ædui, whom

accepisset et quam humiles, compulsos in
he had taken in charge and how humbled, driven into

oppida, multatos agris, omnibus copiis
their towns, deprived of their lands, all (their) means

ereptis, stipendio imposito,
having been taken away, a tribute having been imposed, (and)

obsidibus extortis cum summā contumeliā,
hostages having been exacted with the greatest insult,

in quam fortunam, que in quam amplitudinem
to what fortune, and to what greatness

deduxisset, ut non solum redissent in
he had raised (them), so that they had not only returned to (their)

pristinum statum, sed viderentur antecessisse
former state, but seemed to have surpassed

dignitatem et gratiam omnium temporum. His
the dignity and influence of all times. This

mandatis datis, dimisit eos ab
charge having been given, he dismissed them from

se.
his presence.

55. Novidunum erat oppidum Æduorum
Novidunum [Nevers] was a town of the Ædui

positum opportuno loco ad ripas Ligĕris.
situated in an advantageous place on the banks of the Loire.

Cæsar contulerat huc omnes obsides Galliæ,
Cæsar had brought hither all the hostages of Gaul,

frumentum, publicam pecuniam, magnam partem
the corn, the public money, a great part

suorum impedimentorum, atque exercitūs.
of his baggage, and (that) of the army.

Miserat huc magnum numerum equorum
He had sent hither a great number of horses

coëmptorum in Italiā atque Hispaniā, causā
bought in Italy and Spain, for the purpose

hujus belli. Cum Eporedorix que Viridomarus
of this war. When Eporedorix and Viridomarus

venissent eo, et cognovissent de statu
had arrived there, and had learned about the condition

civitatis; Litavicum receptum ab
[*attitude*] *of the state; (that) Litavicus was received by*

Æduis Bibracte, quod est oppidum maximæ
the Ædui in Bibracte, which is a town of the greatest

auctoritatis apud eos; Convictolitavem
importance among them; (that) Convictolitavis

magistratum que magnam partem senatūs
the magistrate and a great part of the senate

convēnisse ad eum; legatos publice
had gone to him; (that) . ambassadors were openly

missos ad Vercingetorigem de conciliandā pace
sent to Vercingetorix concerning procuring peace

et amicitiā; existimaverunt tantum commodum
and alliance; they thought so great an advantage

non prætermittendum. Itaque custodibus Novioduni
must not (to) be neglected. Therefore the guards of Noviodunum

que qui convenerant eo causā
and those who had assembled there for the sake

negotiandi, aut itinĕris, interfectis, partiti sunt
of trading, or travel, having been killed, they divided

pecuniam atque equos inter se; curaverunt
the money and the horses among themselves; they took care

obsides civitatum deducendos Bibracte
(that) the hostages of the states should be conducted to Bibracte

ad magistratum; oppidum, quod judicabant
to the magistrate; the town, because they thought (it)

posse non teneri ab se, incenderunt, ne
could not be held by them, they burned, lest

esset cui usui Romanis. Avexerunt
it might be (of) some use to the Romans. They carried away

subito navibus quod potuerunt frumenti; corru-
suddenly in ships what they could of corn; they

perunt reliquum flumine atque incendio; ipsi
destroyed the rest in the river and by fire; they

cœperunt cogĕre copias ex finitimis regionibus,
began to collect forces from the neighboring districts,

disponĕre præsidia que custodias ad ripas
to place garrisons and guards along the banks

Ligeris, que ostentare equitatum omnibus locis
of the Loire, and to display cavalry in all places

causā injiciendi timōris, si aut possent
for the purpose of exciting alarm, if either they could

excludĕre Romanos re frumentariā, aut expellĕre
cut off the Romans (from) a corn supply, or could expel (them)

adductos inopiā, ex Provinciā;
driven by want from the province; (it)

adjuvabat eos multum ad quam spem, quod
assisted them much to such hope, because

Liger creverat ex nivibus, ut videretur
the Loire had swollen from snows, so that it seemed

omnino posse non transiri vado.
altogether (that) it could not be crossed by a ford.

56. Quibus rebus cognitis, Cæsar censuit
Which things having been learned, Cæsar was of the opinion

sibi maturandum,[39] si esset periclitandum
(that) he must hasten, if he must take the risk

in perficiendis pontibus, ut dimicaret prius
in building the bridges, so that he might fight before

quam majores copiæ coactæ essent eo. Nam ut,
(that) greater forces had been collected there. For that,

consilio commutato, convertĕret iter
(his) plan having been changed, he might alter (his) route

in Provinciam, existimabat id ne tum
into the Province, he thought (that) this not then

quidem necessario faciendum; cum infamia
even of necessity must be done; not only the disgrace

atque indignitas rei, et oppositus mons
and humiliation of the thing, and the opposed mount

Cebenna, que difficultas viarum impediebat (sing.),
Cevennes, and the difficulty of the roads prevented,

tum maxime quod cupiebat vehementer
but also especially because he desired very much

adjungi Labiēno, atque iis legionibus quas
to be united with Labienus, and those legions which

miserat unā. Itaque admodum magnis
he had sent together (with him). Therefore very long

itineribus diurnis atque nocturnis confectis,
marches by day and by night having been made,

pervenit ad Ligĕrim, contra opinionem omnium;
he arrived at the Loire, contrary to the expectation of all;

que vado invento per equites, opportuno
and a ford having been found by the horsemen suitable

pro necessitate rei, ut brachia modo, atque
for the urgency of the case, that the arms only and

humeri possent esse liberi ab aquā ad
the shoulders might be free from the water for

sustinenda arma, equitatu disposito
supporting (their) equipments, the cavalry having been stationed

qui refringĕret vim fluminis, atque
(that) they might break the force of the river, and

hostibus perturbatis primo adspectu,
the enemy (having been) thrown into disorder at first sight,

traduxit exercitum incolumen que nactus
he led over the army safe and having found

frumentum in agris, et copiam pecŏris,
corn in the fields, and abundance of cattle,

exercitu repleto iis rebus, instituit
the army having been supplied with those things, he determines

facĕre iter in Senones.
to make (his) march into the Senones.

57. Dum hæc geruntur apud Cæsarem,
While these things are happening under Cæsar,

Labienus, eo supplemento, quod nuper venerat
Labienus, that contingent [addition], which had lately come

ex Italiā relicto Agendici, ut
from Italy having been left at Agendicum [Sens], that

esset præsidio impedimentis, proficiscitur
it might be (for) a guard to the baggage, marches

cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam. Id est
with four legions to Lutetia [Paris]. This is

oppidum Parisiorum positum in insulā fluminis
a town of the Parisii situated on an island of the river

Sequanæ. Cujus adventu cognito ab
Seine. Whose arrival having been learned by

hostibus, magnæ copiæ convenerunt ex finitimis
the enemy, great forces assembled from the neighboring

civitatibus. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno
states. The supreme command is given to Camulogenus

Aulerco; qui prope confectus ætate,
the Aulercan; who (though) nearly worn out with age,

tamen evocatus est ad eum honorem propter
yet was called to this honor on account of (his)

singularem scientiam militaris rei. Is, quum
singular knowledge of military affairs. He, when

animadvertisset esse perpetuam paludem
he had observed (that there) was a continuous marsh

quæ influĕret in Sequanam, atque magnopere
which opened into the Seine, and greatly

impediret omnem illum locum, consedit hic, que
obstructed all that place, encamped there, and

instituit prohibēre nostros transitu.
resolved to prohibit our (soldiers) from passing.

58. Labienus primo conabatur agĕre vineas,
Labienus at first endeavored to work the sheds,

explere paludem cratibus atque aggere, atque
to fill up the marsh with hurdles and a mound, and

munire iter. Postquam animadvertit id
to open a road. After he observed (that) this

confieri difficilius, egressus
would be accomplished with great difficulty, having marched out

e castris silentio tertiā vigiliā, pervēnit
from (his) camp in silence at the third watch, he arrived

Metiosedum,[40] eodem itinĕre, quo
at Metiosedum [Melun] by the same road, by which

venerat. Id est oppidum Senonum positum
he had come. This is a town of the Senones situated

in insulā Sequanæ, ut paulo ante diximus
on an island of the Seine, as a little before we have said

Lutetiam. Circiter quinquaginta navibus depre-
(was) Lutetia. About fifty ships having been

hensis, que conjunctis celerite, atque
seized, and (having been) joined together quickly, and

militibus impositis eo, et oppidanis
soldiers having been placed thereon, and the people of the town

magna pars quorum erat evocata ad
a great part of whom had been called away to

bellum, perterritis novitate rei,
the war, (having been) alarmed by the novelty of the thing,

potitur oppido sine contentione. Ponte
he seizes the town without a contest. The bridge

refecto, quem hostes resciderant
having been rebuilt, which the enemy had destroyed

superioribus diebus, traducit exercitum, et
on the preceding days, he leads over (his) army, and

cœpit facĕre iter secundo flumine ad Lutetiam.
begins to make (his) way down the river to Lutetia.

Hostes, re cognitā ab iis qui
The enemy, the matter having been learned from those who

profugerant a Metiosedo, jubent Lutetiam
had fled from Metiosedum, order Lutetia

incendi que pontes ejus oppidi rescindi;
to be burned and the bridges of this town to be destroyed;

ipsi profecti palude, considunt in
they themselves having left the marsh, place themselves on

ripis Sequanæ e regione Lutetiæ contra
the banks of the Seine over against Lutetia opposite

castra Labieni.
the camp of Labienus.

59. Jam Cæsar audiebatur discessisse a
Already Cæsar was heard to have departed from

Gergoviā; jam rumores afferebantur de defectione
Gergovia; already reports were brought of the revolt

Æduorum, et secundo motu Galliæ, que
of the Ædui, and of the successful rising of Gaul, and

Galli in colloquis confirmabant Cæsarem
the Gauls in their conversations were asserting (that) Cæsar

interclusum itinere et Ligĕre,
cut off from (his) route and from the Loire (and)

coactum inopiā frumenti, contendisse in
forced by the want of corn, had marched into

Provinciam. Autem Bellovaci, defectione Æduorum
the province. But the Bellovaci, the defection of the Ædui

cognitā, qui ante erant per se
having been learned who before were of themselves

infideles, cœperunt cogĕre manus, atque aperte
unfaithful, began to collect forces, and openly

parare bellum. Tum Labienus, tantā
to prepare (for) war. Then Labienus, in so great

commutatione rerum intelligebat longe aliud
a change of affairs thought (that) a far different

consilium capiendum sibi, atque senserat
plan to [must] be taken by him, than he had considered

antea. Neque jam cogitabat, ut acquirĕret
before. Nor now was he thinking, that he should acquire

aliquid, que lacessĕret hostes prœlio, sed ut
anything and should attack the enemy in battle, but that

reducĕret exercitum incolumen Agendicum.
he should lead back (his) army safe to Agendicum.

Namque ex alterā parte Bellovaci, civitas quæ
For on the one side the Bellovaci, a state which

habet maximam opinionem virtutis in Galliā,
has the greatest reputation of [for] bravery in Gaul,

instabant; alteram Camulogenus tenebat
were pressing; the other (side) Camulogenus was holding

parato atque instructo exercitu; tum
with an organized and equipped army; also

maximum flumen distinebat legiones
a very large river separated the legions (having been)

interclusas a præsidio atque impedimentis.
cut off from the garrison and baggage.

Tantis difficultatibus subito objectis,
Such great difficulties suddenly having been presented,

videbat auxilium petendum ab virtute[41]
he saw (that) aid to [must] be sought from strength

animi.
of mind.

60. Itaque sub vesperum, concilio con-
Therefore towards evening, a council having been

vocato, cohortatus, ut diligenter que
called, he exhorted (his soldiers), that diligently and

industrie administrarent ea quæ
industriously they should execute [perform] those (things) which

imperāsset; naves, quas deduxerat a
he had commanded; the ships, which he had brought from

Metiosedo, attribuit singulas Romanis equitibus; et
Metiosedum, he assigns singly to Roman knights; and

jubet, primā vigiliā confectā,
orders (them), the first watch, having been completed,

progredi quattuor millia passuum secundo flumine,
to proceed four thousand paces down the river,

silentio, que ibi expectare se. Relinquit
in silence, and there to await himself. He leaves

quinque cohortes, quas existimabat esse minime
five cohorts, which he considered to be least

firmas ad dimicandum, præsidio castris;
sturdy for fighting, for [as] a guard to the camp;

imperat reliquas quinque ejusdem legionis
he commands the remaining five of the same legion

proficisci de mediā nocte cum omnibus impedimentis
to proceed at mid night with all (their) baggage

adverso flumine magno tumultu. Etiam
up the river with a great din. Also

conquirit lintres; has mittit in eandem partem,
he collects boats; these he sends in the same direction,

incitatas magno sonitu remorum. Ipse, paulo
driven by a great sound [noise] of oars. He himself, a little

post, egressus silentio cum tribus legionibus,
after, having marched out in silence with three legions,

petit eum locum, quo jusserat naves
seeks that place, where he had ordered the ships

appelli.
to be brought.

61. Cum esset ventum[42] eo, exploratores
When it was come [he came] there, the scouts

hostium, ut dispositi erant omni parte
of the enemy, as they were stationed in every part

fluminis, inopinantes, quod magna tempestas
of the river, off their guard, because a great storm

subito coorta erat, opprimuntur ab nostris;
had suddenly arisen, were overpowered by our (men);

exercitus que equitatus celeriter transmittitur,
the infantry and caval·y are speedily transported,

Romanis equitibus administrantibus, quos
the Roman knights superintending, whom he (Labienus)

præficĕret ei negotio. Fere uno
had appointed for this task. Nearly at one [the same]

tempŏre sub lucem nuntiatur hostibus,
time about daylight it is announced to the enemy,

tumultuari in castris Romanorum præter
(that) there was confusion in the camp of the Romans exceeding

consuetudinem, et magnum agmen ire
(their) custom, and (that) a great force was going

adverso flumine, que sonitum remorum
up the river, and (that) the sound [noise] of oars

exaudiri in eādem parte, et paulo
was heard in the same direction, and (that) a little

infra milites transportari navibus. Quibus rebus
below soldiers were transported in ships. Which things

auditis, quod existimabant legiones
having been heard, because they thought (that) the legions

transire tribus locis, atque omnes perturbatos
were crossing in three places, and (that) all alarmed

defectione Æduorum parare fugam,
by the defection of the Æduі were preparing for flight,

quoque distribuĕrunt suas copias in tres partes.
they also divided their forces into three parts.

Nam, præsidio relicto a regione castrorum,
For, a guard having been left opposite the camp,

et parvā manu missā versus Metiosedum,
and a small force having been sent toward Metiosedum,

quæ progrederetur tantum quantum naves pro-
which should advance only as far as the ships had

cessisent, duxerunt reliquas copias contra Labienum.
proceeded, they led the remaining forces against Labienus.

62. Primā luce et omnes nostri
At first light [daylight] both all our (soldiers)

transportati erant, et acies hostium cernebatur.
had been transported, and the army of the enemy was discerned

Labienus cohortatus milites ut tenērent
[seen]. Labienus exhorted the soldiers that they should hold

memoriam suæ pristinæ virtutis, et tot
the memory (of) their former valor, and (of) so many

secundissimorum prœliorum, atque existimarent
very successful battles, and that they should think

Cæsarem ipsum, cujus ductu sæpenum-
(that) Cæsar himself, under whose leadership they had so

ero superāssent hostes adesse; dat signum
often conquered the enemy, was present; he gives the signal

prœli. Primo concursu, ab dextro cornu, ubi
of battle. On the first encounter, on the right wing, where

septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur,
the seventh legion stood, the enemy are repulsed,

atque conjiciuntur in fugam; ab sinistro,
and are thrown into flight; on the left (wing),

quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, quum
which place the twelfth legion was holding, when

primi ordĭnes hostium concidissent transfixi
the first ranks of the enemy had fallen transfixed

pilis, reliqui tamen resistebant acerrime, nec
by javelins, the rest yet were resisting most actively, nor

quisquam dabat suspicionem fugæ. Dux
was any one giving suspicion of flight. The general

ipse hostium Camulogenus aderat suis,
himself of the enemy Camulogenus was present with his

atque cohortabatur eos. At exitu
(men), and was encouraging them. But the issue

victoriæ etiam nunc incerto, quum
of the victory even now (being) uncertain, when

nuntiatum esset tribunis septimæ legionis,
it was announced to the tribunes of the seventh legion,

quæ gererentur in sinistro cornu, ostenderunt
what was transpiring on the left wing, they displayed

legionem post tergum hostium, que intulerunt
the legion behind [on] the rear of the enemy, and advanced

signa. Ne eo tempōre quidem quisquam cessit
the standards. Not at this time even did any one leave

loco, sed omnes circumventi sunt que
the place, but all were surrounded and

interfecti; Camulogenus tulit eandem
slain; Camulogenus bore [met] the same

fortunam. At ii qui relicti erant præsidio
fortune [fate]. But those who were left for a garrison

contra castra Labieni, quum audissent
over against the camp of Labienus, when they had heard

prœlium commissum, ierunt subsidio
(that) the battle (had) commenced, went for [as] an aid

suis, que ceperunt collem, neque
to their [people], and took [occupied] the hill, nor

potuerunt sustinēre impetum nostrorum militum
could they endure the attack of our soldiers

victorum; sic permixti cum suis fugientibus,
(when) conquerors; so mingled with their own (men) retreating,

quos silvæ que montes non texerunt
those whom the woods and the mountains did not conceal

interfecti sunt ab equitatu. Hoc negotio con-
were killed by the cavalry. This affair having

fecto, Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi
been completed, Labienus returns to Agedincum, where

impedimenta totius exercitūs relicta erant; inde
the baggage of all the army had been left; thence

pervenit ad Cæsarem cum omnibus copius.
he came to Cæsar with all (his) forces.

63. Defectione Æduorum cognitā, bellum
The revolt of the Æduï having been known, the war

augetur; legationes circummittuntur in omnes
is increased; embassies are sent about in all

partes; nituntur ad sollicitandas civitates quantum
directions; they strive to solicit the states as much as

valent gratiā, auctoritate, pecuniā.
they may avail by favor, by authority, (or) by money.

Nacti obsides, quos Cæsar deposuerat
Having obtained the hostages, whom Cæsar had deposited

apud eos, territant dubitantes supplicio
with them, they frighten the hesitating by the punishment

horum. Ædui petunt a Vercingetorige ut
of these. The Ædui request of Vercingetorix that

veniat ad se, que communicet rationes
he come to them, and communicate the plans

gerendi belli. Re impetratā,
of carrying on the war. This request having been obtained,

contendunt, ut summa imperii tradatur
they maintain, that the chief command should be assigned

ipsis et, re deductā in controversiam,
to them and, the thing having been brought into dispute,

concilium totius Galliæ indicitur Bibracte.
a council of all Gaul is convoked at Bibracte.

Frequentes undique conveniunt eodum; res
Great numbers from everywhere assemble there; the matter

permittitur suffragiis multitudinis; omnes ad unum
is consigned to the votes of the multitude; all to one

probant Vercingetorigem imperatorem.
[a man] approve of Vercingetorix (as) commander.

Remi, Lingones, Treviri, abfuerunt ab
The Remi, Lingones, (and) Treviri, were absent from

hōc concilio; illi quod sequebantur
this council; those [two first] because they were following

amicitiam Romanorum; Treviri quod
[observing] the friendship of the Romans; the Treviri because

longius aberant, et premebantur ab Germanis;
they were far distant, and were hard pressed by the Germans;

quæ fuit causa quare abessent toto
which was the reason why they were absent in the whole

bello, et mittĕrent auxilia neutris. Ædui
war, and sent auxiliaries to neither. The Ædui

ferunt magno dolōre se dejectos
bear with great resentment (that) they were deprived

principatu; queruntur commutationem fortunæ,
of the leadership; they lament the change of fortune,

et requirunt Cæsaris indulgentiam in se;
and they miss Cæsar's indulgence toward themselves;

neque tamen, bello suscepto, audent
nor however, the war having been undertaken, do they dare

separare suum consilium ab reliquis.
to separate their plan [course] from the rest.

Eporedorix et Viridomarus adolescentes summæ
Eporedorix and Viridomarus young men of the highest

spei (sing.) inviti parent Vercingetorigi.
expectations unwillingly obey Vercingetorix.

64. Ille imperat obsides reliquis
He [Vercingetorix] demands hostages from the other

civitatibus. Denique constituit diem ei rei;
states. Finally he appoints a day for this matter;

huc jubet omnes equites, numero
here he orders all the horsemen, to the number

quindecim millia, convenire celeriter. Dicit
of fifteen thousand, to assemble quickly. He says

se fore contentum peditatu quem
(that) he would be content with the infantry which

habuerit ante; neque tentaturum fortunam, neque
he had before; nor would he tempt fortune, nor

dimicaturum acie;[43] sed, quoniam abundet
would he fight in the battle-line; but, since he abounds

equitatu, esse perfacile factu prohibēre
in cavalry, it would be very easy in fact to check

Romanos frumentationibus que pabulationibus; modo
the Romans from corn and forage; provided

ipsi æquo animo corrumpant sua
they themselves with a calm mind destroy their own

frumenta, que incendant ædificia; qua
corn, and burn (their) houses; by which

jacturā familaris rei videant se
loss of private property they may see (that) they would

consequi perpetuum imperium que libertatem. His
obtain perpetual empire and freedom. These

rebus constitutis, imperat Æduis que
things having been arranged, he demands from the Ædui and

Segusianis, qui sunt finitimi Provinciæ, decem
the Segusiani, who are nearest to the Province, ten

millia peditum; huc addit octingentos
thousand (of) infantry; to this he adds eight hundred

equites; his præficit fratrem Eporedorigis,
horsemen; over these he appoints the brother of Eporidorix,

que jubet inferre bellum Allobrogibus.
and orders (him) to wage war with the Allobroges.

Ex alterā parte mittit Gabalos que proximos
On the other side he sends the Gabali and the nearest

pagos Arvernorum in Helvios; item Rutenos,
cantons of the Arverni against the Helvii; likewise the Ruteni,

que Cadurcos ad depopulandos fines Volcarum
and the Cadurci to lay waste the territories of the Volcæ

Arecomicorum. Nihilominus sollicitat Allobroges
Arecomici. Nevertheless he solicits the Allobroges

clandestinis nuntiis que legationibus, quorum mentes
by secret messages and embassies, whose minds

sperabat nondum resedisse a
he was hoping not yet to have [had] recovered from

superiore bello. Horum principibus pollicetur pecunias,
the former war. To their leaders he promises money,

autem civitati imperum totius Provinciæ.
but to the state the empire of all the Province.

65. Ad omnes hos casus præsidia
Against all these contingencies [crises] the protection

viginti et duarum cohortium provisa erant, quæ
of twenty and two cohorts had been provided, which

coacta ex Provinciā ipsā ab L. Cæsare,
having been collected from the province itself by L. Cæsar,

legato, opponebantur ad omnes partes.
(his) lieutenant. were opposing at [on] all sides.

Helvii, suā sponte congressi prœlio cum
The Helvii, of their own accord having engaged in battle with

finitimis, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro,
their neighbors, are defeated, and C. Valerius Donaturus,

filio Caburi, principe civitatis, que compluribus
the son of Caburus, a chief of the state, and many

aliis interfectis, compelluntur intra oppida
others having been killed, they are driven into the towns

que muros. Allobroges crebris præsidiis
and fortifications. The Allobroges frequent guards

dispositis ad Rhodanum, tuentur suos
having been placed at [along] the Rhone, defend their

fines cum magnā curā et diligentiā. Cæsar,
frontiers with great care and diligence. Cæsar,

quod intelligebat hostes esse
because he perceived (that) the enemy to be [were]

superiores equitatu, et omnibus itineribus
superior in cavalry, and, all the roads

interclusis, poterat sublevari nullā re
having been shut up, he could be assisted in no thing [respect]

ex Provinciā atque Italiā, mittit trans Rhenum
from the Province and Italy, sends across the Rhine

in Germaniam ad eas civitates, quas pacaverat
into Germany to these states, which he had conquered

superioribus annis, que arcessit equites ab his,
in former years, and demanded cavalry from them,

et pedites levis armaturæ, qui consueverant
and infantry of light armor, that were accustomed

prœliari inter eos. Eorum adventu, quod
to battle among them. On their coming, because

utebantur minus idoneis equis, sumit equos
they used less suitable horses, he takes horses

a tribunis militum, que reliquis
from the tribunes of the soldiers, and from the other

Romanis equitibus, atque evocatis, que distribuit
Roman knights, and veterans, and distributes

Germanis.
to the Germans.

66. Interea dum hæc geruntur, copiæ
Mean time while these things are transpiring, the forces

ex Arvernis, que equites, qui imperati erant
from the Arverni, and the cavalry, that had been demanded

toti Galliæ, conveniunt. Magno numero horum
to [from] all Gaul, assemble. A great number of these

coacto, cum Cæsar facĕret iter in
having been collected, when Cæsar made (his) way into

Sequanos, per extremos fines Lingonum,
the Sequani, through the extreme borders of the Lingones,

quo posset facilius ferre subsidium Provinciæ,
so that he could more easily bring aid to the Province,

Vercingetorix consedit, trinis castris, circiter decem
Vercingetorix halted, in three camps, about ten

millia passuum ab Romanis; que præfectis
thousand (of) paces from the Romans; and the commanders

equitum convocatis ad concilium, demonstrat
of the cavalry having been called to a council, he shows (that)

tempus victoriæ venisse; Romanos fugĕre in
the time of victory had come; the Romans were fleeing into

Provinciam, que excedĕre Galliā; id esse satis
the Province, and were leaving Gaul; (that) this was enough

sibi ad obtinendam præsentem libertatem;
for them for obtaining present [immediate] freedom;

profici parum ad pacem atque otium,
(but it) profited little for the peace and repose

reliqui tempŏris; enim majoribus copiis
of the remaining time; for greater forces

coactis reversuros neque facturos
having been collected they would return nor would they make

finem bellandi; proinde adoriantur
an end of warring; therefore let them attack (them)

impeditos agmine. Si pedites ferant auxilium
encumbered on the march. If the infantry should bring assistance

suis, atque morentur eo, iter posse
to their (men), and delay for this, (that) the march could

non confici; sin, id quod magis
not be performed; but if, that which [as] the rather [the more]

confidat futurum, impedimentis relictis,
he expects would be, the baggage having been abandoned,

consulant suæ saluti, iri spoliatum
they consult their safety, they would be deprived

et usu necessariarum rerum, et dignitate.
both of the use of necessary things, and of their honor.

His mandatis datis, dimittit equitatum
These orders having been given, he dismisses the cavalry

silentio, secundā vigiliā, quā nostrum opus
in silence, in the second watch, when our work

intermissum erat; jubet omne frumentum ferri ad
had ceased; he orders all the corn to be brought to

se; constituit pœnam capitis[46] iis,
himself; he ordains the punishment of the head [of death] to those,

qui non paruerint; distribuit pecus, cujus
who should not obey; he distributes the cattle, of which

magna copia compulsa erat ab Mandubiis,
a great abundance had been driven (there) by the Mandubii,

viritim; instituit frumentum metiri
man by man; he regulates (that) the corn to [should] be measured

parce et paulatim; recipit omnes copias,
sparingly and by little; he receives all the forces,

quas collocaverat pro oppido, in oppidum.
which he had placed before the town, into the town.

His rationibus parat expectare auxilia Galliæ,
In this manner he prepares to await the aid of Gaul,

et administrare bellum.
and to carry on the war.

72. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis
Which things having been learned from deserters

et captivis, Cæsar instituit hæc genĕra (pl.)
and prisoners, Cæsar adopts this kind

munitionis. Duxit fossam viginti pedum
of fortification. He constructed a ditch (of) twenty feet

latam directis lateribus, ut ejus solum
broad with perpendicular sides, so that its bottom

pateret tantundem quantum summa labra distabant.
might open just as much as the upper edges were apart.

Reduxit omnes reliquas munitiones quadringentis
He drew back all the other fortifications (by) four hundred

pedibus ab eā fossā; id hōc consilio
feet from this ditch; this with this design

(quoniam tantum spatium necessario esset complexus,
(since so great a space necessarily was embraced,

totum opus nec facile cingeretur
(that) the whole work not easily could be surrounded

coronā militum); ne aut multitudo hostium
by a circle of soldiers); lest either a mass of the enemy

advolaret ad munitiones de improviso noctu,
should sally out to the works of a sudden by night,

aut interdiu possent conjicĕre tela in
or by day they might be able to throw weapons against

nostros destinatos opĕri. Hōc spatio inter-
our men assigned to the work. This space having been

misso, perduxit duas fossas quindecim pedes latas,
left, he formed two trenches fifteen feet wide,

eādem altitudine; interiorem quarum
with the same depth; the inner one of which (being)

campestribus ac demissis locis, complevit aquā
in level and low ground, he filled with water

derivatā ex flumine. Post eas extruxit
led from the river. Behind these he constructed

aggerem et vallum duodecim pedum. Huic
a mound and rampart of twelve feet. To this

adjecit loricam que pinnas, grandibus cervis
he added a parapet and battlements, with great stag-horns

eminentibus ad commissuras (pl.) pluteorum (pl.)
projecting at the junction of the parapet

atque aggĕris, qui tardarent adscensum
and the mound, which might hinder the ascent

hostium; et circumdedit turres toto opere, quæ
of the enemy; and he put around towers on all the work, which

distarent inter se[47] octoginta pedes.
were distant from each other eighty feet.

73. Erat necesse eodem tempŏre et
It was necessary at the same time both

materiari, et frumentari, et tantas
to bring wood, and to get corn, and (that) so great

munitiones fieri, nostris copiis dim-
fortifications to [should] be made, our forces having been

inutis, quæ progrediebantur longuis ab
diminished, that were proceeding rather far from

castris; et Galli nonnunquam conabantur
the camp; and the Gauls sometimes endeavored

tentare nostra opĕra, atque facĕre eruptionem
to attack our works, and to make a sally

ex oppido summā vi pluribus portis.
from the town with the utmost vigor by several gates.

Quare Cæsar putavit ad hæc rursus
Therefore Cæsar thought to these again (to) [there must]

addendum opera, quō munitiones possent
be added works, so that the fortifications might

defendi minore numero militum. Itaque truncis
be defended with a less number of men [soldiers]. Therefore trunks

arborum, aut ramis admodum firmis abscissis,
of trees, or branches somewhat stout having been cut down,

atque cacuminibus horum delibratis atque
and the tops of these having been peeled and

preacutis; perpetuæ fossæ quinos pedes altæ
sharpened; continuous ditches five feet deep

ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et
were cut. Here these stakes having been put down, and

revincti ab infimo possent ne revelli,
fastened at the bottom (so that) they could not be pulled up,

eminebant ab ramis. Quini ordines
were projecting by their branches. Every five rows

erant conjuncti, atque implicati inter se,
were united, and intertwined one with another,

quō ipsi qui[48] intraverant, induebant se
where those who had entered, impaled themselves

acutissimis vallis; appellabant hos cippos.
on very sharp stakes; they called these cippi [boundary

Ante hos obliquis ordinibus,
posts]. Before these in oblique rows, and (having been)

dispositis in quincuncem, scrobes, in altitudinem
arranged in quincunx, pits, to the depth

trium pedum fodiebantur paulatim angustiore
of three feet were dug with a little narrower

fastigio ad summum. Huc teretes stipites crassitudine
surface at the top. Here round stakes of the thickness

feminis, ab summo præcuti et præusti,
of the thigh, at the top very sharp and burnt,

demittebantur; ita ut non amplius quattuor
were set in; so that not more (than) by four

digitis eminērent ex terrā. Simul
inches they might project from the ground. At the same time

causā confirmandi et stabiliendi, singuli[49]
for the purpose of strengthening and steadying, each

pedes (pl.) ab infimo solo terrā
foot from the lowest ground with earth

exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis integebatur
was trodden down; the remaining part of the pit was covered

viminibus ac virgultis ad occultandas insidias.
with osiers and twigs for concealing the traps.

Octoni ordines hujus genĕris ducti, distabant
Eight rows of this kind were set, they were distant

ternos pedes inter se. Id, ex similitudine
three feet from each other. This, from the likeness

floris, appellabant lilium. Ante hæc taleæ,
to the flower, they called a lily. Before these, stakes,

pedem longæ, ferreis hamis infixis, totæ
a foot long, with iron hooks fixed in, all [wholly]

infodiebantur in terram; que, mediocribus
were sunk into the ground; and, moderate

spatiis intermissis, disserebantur omnibus
spaces (having been) interposed, were planted in all

locis, quos nominabant stimulos.
places, which they called spurs.

74. His rebus perfectis, secutus
These things having been completed, having followed

regiones æquissimas quam potuit, pro
localities (as) [most] level as was possible, considering

naturā loci complexus quattuordecim millia
the nature of the place (and) having enclosed fourteen thousand

passuum, perfēcit pares munitiones ejusdem
paces, he completed like fortifications of the same

generis, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem
kind, opposite from these, against an external

hostem; ut præsidia munitionum possent
enemy; that the guards of the fortifications could

circumfundi ne quidem magna[50] multitudine, (si
be surrounded not even by a great multitude, (if

accidat ita). Ac he cogerentur
it should happen so). And that they might not be forced

egredi ex castris cum periculo, jubet omnes
to go from the camp with danger, he orders all

habēre pabulum convectum que frumentum
to have forage collected and corn

triginta dierum.
for thirty days.

75. Dum hæc geruntur ad Alesiam,
While these (things) are transpiring at Alesia,

Galli, concilio principum indicto,
the Gauls, a council of the chiefs having been convoked

statuunt, non omnes convocandos qui
ordain, (that) not all should be called out who

possent ferre arma (ut Vercingetorix censuit),
could bear arms (as Vercingetorix decided),

sed certum numerum imperandum cuique
but (that) a certain number should be ordered for each

civitati; ne, tantā confusā multitudine
state; lest, in so great (and) mixed a multitude

possent nec moderari, nec discernĕre suos
they could neither govern, nor distinguish their (men)

nec habēre rationem frumentandi. Imperant
nor have the means of provisioning. They demand

triginta quinque millia Æduis atque
thirty five thousand from the Ædui and

eorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis,
their clients, the Segusiani, the Ambivareti, the Aulerci,

Brannovicibus, (Blannoviis); parem numerum
the Brannovices, (Blannovii); a like number

Arvernis, adjunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis,
from the Arverni, united with the Eleuteti, the Cadurci,

Gabalis, Vellaviis, qui consueverunt
the Gabali, (and) the Vellavii, who have been accustomed

esse sub imperio Arvernorum; Senonibus,
to be under the command of the Arverni; from the Senones,

Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonibus, Rutenis,
the Sequani, the Bituriges, the Santones, the Ruteni,

Carnutibus, duodena millia; Bellovacis, decim;
the Carnutes, twelve thousand; the Bellovaci, ten;

totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et
the same from the Lemovices; eight from the Pictones, and

Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helvetiis; sena
the Turoni, and the Parisii, and the Helvetii, six

Audibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis,
from the Audes, the Ambiani, the Mediomatrici, the Petrocorii,

Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus; quina milia
the Nervii, the Morini, the Nitiobriges, five thousand

Aulercis Cenomanis; totidem Atrebatibus;
from the Aulercis Cenomani; the same number from the Atrebates

quatuor Veliocassis; (Lexoviis et) Aulercis
four from the Veliocassi; (the Lexovii and) the Aulerci

Eburovicibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis bina.
Eburovices three; from the Rauraci and Boii two.

Decim universis civitatibus, quæ attingunt
Ten from all the states, which border on

Oceanum, quæque eorum consuetudine appellantur
the Ocean, and that by their custom are called

Armoricæ, in quo numero sunt Coriosolites,
Armoricæ, in which number are the Coriosolites,

Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Veneti,
the Redones, the Ambibarii, the Caletes, the Osismi, the Veneti,

Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci non
Lexovii, Venelli. Of these the Bellovaci did not

contulerunt suum numerum; quod dixerunt
contribute their number; because they said (that)

se gesturos bellum cum Romanis suo
they would carry on war with the Romans by their own

nomine atque arbitrio, neque obtemperaturos
name and will, nor would they obey

imperio cujusquam. Rogati a Commio,
the command of any one. Requested by Commius,

tamen, pro ejus hospitio, miserunt
however, on account of his tie of hospitality, they sent

duo millia.
two thousand

76. Cæsar, ita ut antea demonstravimus, usus erat
Cæsar, just as before we have shown, had used

fideli atque utili operâ hujus Commii,
the faithful and helpful services of this Commius,

superioribus annis in Britanniâ, pro quibus meritis
in former years in Britain, for which deserts

jusserat ejus civitatem esse immunem,
he had ordered his state to be exempt (from tribute),

reddiderat jura que leges; atque attribuerat
had restored the rights and laws; and had conferred

ipsi Morinos. Tamen tanta fuit consensio
on himself [him] the Morini. Yet so great was the unanimity

universæ Galliæ vindicandæ libertatis, et
of the whole of Gaul of [for] establishing liberty, and

recuperandæ pristinæ laudis belli, ut
of [for] recovering (their) ancient renown in war, that

moverentur neque beneficiis, neque memoriâ
they could be moved neither by benefits, nor by the memory

amicitiæ, que omnes incumbĕrent in id
of friendship, and all were devoting themselves to this

bellum et animo et opibus; octo
war with both mind [thought] and means; eight

millibus equitum, et circiter ducentis et
thousand cavalry, and about two hundred and

quadraginta millibus peditum coactis.
forty thousand infantry having been collected.

Hæc recensebantur in finibus Æduorum; que
These were received in the country of the Ædui; and

numerus inibatur; præfecti constituebantur;
the number was secured; commanders were appointed;

summa imperii traditur Commio Atrebati,
the supreme command is conferred on Commius the Atrebatian,

Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Æduis,
Viridomarus and Eporedorix the Æduans, (and

Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercinge-
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, cousin-german to Vercinge-

torigis. Iis delecti ex civitatibus
torix. To them (those) selected from the states

attribuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur.
are assigned, by those counsel the war should be conducted.

Omnes proficiscuntur ad Alesiam alacres et pleni
All set out to Alesia eager and full

fiduciæ. Nec erat quisquam omnium, qui,
of confidence. Nor was there any one of all, who,

arbitraretur adspectum modo tantæ
supposed that the sight even of so great

multitudinis posse sustinēri, præsertim ancipiti
a multitude could be endured, especially in a two-fold

prœlio; quum pugnaretur[52] eruptione ex
battle; when it would be [they] fought by [in] a sally from

oppido, et foris tantæ copiæ equitatūs que
the town, and outside so great forces of cavalry and

peditatūs cernerentur.
infantry should be discerned.

77. At ii qui obsidebantur Alesiæ, die
But those who were besieged in Alesia, the day

præteritā, quā expectaverant auxilia suorum,
having passed, on which they had expected the aid of their (allies),

omni frumento consumpto, inscii quid
all the corn having been consumed, ignorant what

gereretur in Æduis, concilio coacto,
was going on among the Ædui, a council having been assembled

consultabant de exitu suarum fortunarum.
they were deliberating about the issue of their fortunes.

Ac variis sententiis dictis, quarum pars
And various opinions having been expressed, of which a part

censebant deditionem, pars eruptionem dum
recommended a surrender, a part a sally while

vires (pl.) suppetĕrent. Oratio Critognati
(their) strength was sufficient. The speech of Critognatus

videtur non prætereunda, propter ejus
it seems ought not to be passed over, on account of its

singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, natus
singular and infamous cruelty. He, born

summo loco in Arvernis, et habitus
of the highest rank among the Arverni, and possessed

magnæ auctoritatis, inquit: "dicturus sum nihil
of great influence, said: "I am about to say nothing

de sententiā eorum, qui appellant
concerning the opinion of those, who call

turpissimam servitutem nomĭne deditionis;
the basest slavery by the name of surrender;

censeo hos neque habendos loco
I am of the opinion (that) these neither ought to be held in the place

civium, neque adhibendos ad
[role] of citizens, nor ought they to be admitted to

concilium. Res est mihi cum iis, qui
the counsel. The business is for me with those, who

probant eruptionem; in consilio quorum consensu
sanction a sally; in the advice of whom with the consent

vestrum omnium memoria pristinæ virtutis
of you all the memory of the old-time valor

videtur residēre. Ista est mollities animi non
seems to abide. This is a weakness of mind not

virtus, non posse ferre inopiam paulisper.
courage, not to be able to endure privation for a little time.

Qui ultro offerant se morti facilius
(Those) who willingly offer themselves to death more easily

reperiuntur, quam qui patienter ferant dolōrem.
are found, than (those) who patiently endure distress.

Atque ego probarem hanc sententiam (tantum
And I would approve this opinion (so much

apud me dignitas potest), si vidērem
with me honor is able [avails]), if I could see (that)

nullam jacturam fieri præterquam nostræ
no loss would be made except of our

vitæ (sing.). Sed in capiendo consilio,
lives. But in taking [forming] a plan

respiciamus omnem Galliam, quam concitavimus
let us regard all Gaul, which we have aroused

ad nostrum auxilium. Octoginta millibus hominum
to our assistance. Eighty thousand men

interfectis, uno loco, quid animi existimatis
having been slain, in one place, what (of) spirit do you think

fore nostris propinquis que consanguineis, si
(this) would be to our relatives and kinsmen, if

cogentur decertare prœlio pæne in
they should be forced to engage in battle almost over (our)

cadaveribus ipsis? Nolite spoliare hos vestro
dead bodies themselves? Do not deprive those of your

auxilio, qui causā vestræ salutis neglexerint
aid, who for the sake of your safety have disregarded

suum periculum, nec vestrā stultitiā ac
their own peril, nor by your folly and

temeritate, aut imbecillitate animi prosternĕre
recklessness, or imbecility of mind prostrate

omnem Galliam, ac addicĕre perpetuæ servituti.
all Gaul, and consign (it) to perpetual slavery.

An quod non venerint ad diem
Why because they may not have come at [on] the day

dubitatis de eorum fide que constantiā? Quid
do you doubt of their fidelity and constancy? What

ergo? Putatis Romanos exercēri quotidie
then? Do you suppose (that) the Romans are training daily

in illis ulterioribus munitionibus ne causā
in those outer fortifications only for the sake

animi?[53] Si potestis non confirmari nun-
of the mind? If you can not be strengthened by the

tiis illorum, omni aditu præsepto,
messages of those, all approach having been prevented

utimini iis testibus eorum adventum
use these (as) witnesses (that) their arrival

appropinquare, exterriti timōre cujus rei
draws near, (the fact that) alarmed by the fear of this thing

versantur diem que noctem in opĕre. Quid
they are busied day and night in the work. What

ergo est mei consilii? Facĕre quod nostri
therefore is my advice? To do what our

majores fecerunt nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum
forefathers did in the by no means equal war of the Cimbri

que Teutonum, qui compulsi in oppida, ac
and Teutones, who driven into towns, and

subacti simili inopiā, toleraverunt vitam corporibus
forced by a like want, supported life by the bodies

eorum, qui ætate videbantur inutiles ad bellum,
of those, who by age seemed useless for war,

neque tradiderunt se hostibus. Si
nor did they surrender themselves to the enemy. If

haberemus non exemplum cujus rei, tamen
we had not the example of this thing, yet

judicarem pulcherrimum causā libertatis
I should judge it most glorious for the sake of liberty

institui, et prodi posteris. Nam
to be established, and be handed down to posterity. For

quid fuit simile illi bello?[54] Galliā
what was there like that war? Gaul (having been)

depopulatā, que magnā calamitate illatā,
depopulated, and a great disaster (having been) inflicted,

Cimbri aliquando excesserunt nostris finibus, atque
the Cimbri at length departed from our territories, and

petierunt alias terras; reliquerunt nobis jura,
sought other lands; they left us the rights,

leges, agros libertatem. Vero Romani
the laws, the lands (and) liberty. But the Romans

quid aliud petunt, aut quid volunt, nisi
what else do they seek, or what do they wish, except

adducti invidiā, considĕre in agris que
induced by greed, to settle in the fields and

civitatibus horum, quos cognoverunt famā
states of these (those) whom they have learned by report

nobiles que potentes bello, atque his
(are) noble and powerful in war, and on these

injungĕre æternam servitutem? Enim neque unquam
to impose perpetual slavery? For never

gesserunt bella aliā conditione. Quod
have they waged wars on any other terms. For

si ignoratis ea quæ geruntur in
if you know not those things which are being done in

longinquis nationibus, respicite finitimam Galliam,
distant nations, look ye [you] at neighboring Gaul,

quæ redacta in provinciam, jure et legibus
which reduced to a province, (its) rights and laws

commutatis, subjecta securi-
(having been) subverted (having been) subjected to the (lic-

bus premitur perpetuā servitute!"
tors') axes, is oppressed by perpetual slavery!"

78. Sententiis dictis, constituunt, ut
The opinions having been delivered, they resolve, that

qui valetudine, aut ætate sunt inutiles bello
(those) who by sickness, or age are uselsss for war

excedant oppido, atque omnia experiantur,
should leave the town, and all things should be tried,

prius quam descendant ad sententiam
before (that) they descend to the recommendation

Critognati; tamen utendum illo consilio, si res
of Critognatus; however (that they must) use his advice, if the case

cogat, atque auxilia morentur, potius quam
compels, and aid be delayed, rather than (that)

conditionem deditionis aut pacis subeundam.
a condition of surrender or of peace should be endured.

Mandubii, qui receperant eos oppido coguntur
The Mandubii, who had received them in the town are forced

exire cum liberis atque uxoribus. Hi
to depart with the children and wives. These

quum accessissent ad munitones Romanorum,
when they had approached to the fortifications of the Romans.

flentes orabant omnibus precibus, ut recep-
weeping prayed with all entreaties, that having been

tos in servitutem, juvarent cibo.
received into slavery, they would relieve (them) with food.

Hos Cæsar, custodiis dispositis in vallo,
These Cæsar, sentinels having been posted on the rampart,

prohibebat recipi.
prevented to be [from being] received.

79. Interea Commius, et reliqui duces,
In the meantime Commius, and the other leaders,

quibus summa imperii permissa erant, perveniunt
to whom the supreme command had been assigned, arrive

ad Alesiam cum omnibus copiis, et exteriore
at Alesia with all the forces, and an outer

colle occupato, considunt non longius
hill having been occupied, they encamp not farther (than)

mille passibus a nostris munitionibus. Postero
a thousand paces from our fortifications. The next

die, equitatu educto ex castris,
day, the cavalry having been led forth from (their) camp,

complent omnem eam planitiem, quam demonstravimus
they fill all this plain, which we have shown

patēre tria millia passuum in longitudinem;
to extend [extends] three thousand paces in length;

que constituunt pedestres copias paulum ab eo
and they station the foot soldiers a little from this

loco, abditas in superioribus locis (pl.). Erat
place, removed on higher ground. There was

despectus ex oppido Alesiā in campum.
a view from the town (of) Alesia over the plain.

His auxiliis visis, concurritur,
These auxiliaries having been seen, there is running together

gratulatio fit (sing.) inter eos, atque animi
congratulations are made among them, and the souls

omnium excitantur ad lætitiam. Itaque, copiis
of all are excited to joy. Therefore, (their) forces

productis ante oppidum, considunt et
having been drawn out before the town, they take stand and

integunt proximam fossam cratibus, atque explent
cover the nearest ditch with hurdles, and fill (it)

aggĕre, que, comparant se ad eruptionem,
with dirt, and prepare themselves for a sally,

atque omnes casus.
and all chances.

80. Cæsar, omni exercitu disposito ad
Cæsar, all the army having been stationed at

utramque partem munitionum, ut si usus
both sides of the fortifications, (so) that if the need

veniat, quisque noverit et teneat suum locum,
should come each might know and keep his own place.

jubet equitatum educi ex castris, et
orders the cavalry to be led from the camp, and

committi prœlium. Erat despectus ex omnibus
to join battle. There was a view from all

castris, quæ undique tenebant summum
the camp, which everywhere occupied the highest

jugum, atque animi omnium militum intenti
ridge, and the minds of all the soldiers intent

pugnæ exspectabant eventum. Galli
on battle were anticipating the issue. The Gauls

interjecerant inter equites raros sagittarios,
had placed among the horsemen scattered archers,

que expeditos levis armaturæ,[55] qui succurrĕrent
and ready soldiers lightly armed, who might succor

auxilio suis cedentibus et sustinērent
by (their) aid their (men) retreating and hold

impetum nostrorum equitum. Complures
the charge of our cavalry. Many (of our men)

vulnerati de improviso ab his excedebant
wounded unexpectedly by these withdrew

prœlio. Cum Galli confidĕrent suos
from the battle. When the Gauls believed (that) their

esse superiores pugnā, et vidērent
(men) were superior in the fight, and saw

nostros premi multitudine; ex om-
our (men) (to be) hard pressed by the throng, from [on]

nibus partibus, et ii qui continebantur
all parts [sides], both those who were retained

munitionibus, et ii qui convenerant ad
within the fortifications, and those who had come for

auxilium, confirmabant animos suorum clamore
aid, strengthened the spirits of their men by a shout

et ululatu. Quod res gerebatur in conspectu
and yell. As the action was carried on in the sight

omnium, neque factum recte aut
of all, neither (a thing) done rightly [nobly] or

turpiter poterat celari, et cupiditas laudis,
shamefully could be concealed, both the desire of praise,

et timor ignominiæ excitabat (sing.) utrosque ad
and the fear of disgrace were inciting both sides to

virtutem. Quum pugnaretur a meridie
valor. When it was [they] fought from noon

prope ad occasum solis dubiā victoriā,
nearly to the setting of the sun with a doubtful victory,

Germani in unā parte confertis turmis fecerunt
the Germans on one side in compact troops made

impetum in hostes, que propulerunt eos.
an attack on the enemy, and routed them.

Quibus conjectis in fugam,
Whom [These] (having been) thrown into flight,

sagittarii circumventi sunt que interfecti. Item
the archers were surrounded and slain. Also

ex reliquis partibus nostri insecuti
in other quarters our men followed (those)

cedentes usque ad castra, dederunt
retreating even to the camp, (and) gave

non facultatem colligendi sui. At
no opportunity of [for] collecting their (men). But

ii, qui processerant ab Alesiā, victoriā
those, who had come from Alesia, the victory

prope desperatā, receperunt se
nearly (having been) despaired of betook themselves

mæsti, in oppidum.
sorrowful, into the town.

81. Uno die intermisso, atque hōc spatio
One day having intervened, and in this period

magno numero cratium, scalarum, harpagonum
a great number of hurdles, ladders, pole-hooks

effecto, Galli, mediā nocte, silentio,
having been made, the Gauls, at mid night (and) in silence,

egressi ex castris accedunt ad
having marched from (their) camp approach to

campestres munitiones. Subito clamōre
the field [outside] fortifications. A sudden shout

sublato, quā significatione, qui
having been raised, by which signal, (those) who

obsidebantur in oppido, possent cognoscĕre de
were besieged in the town, might know of

suo adventu, projicĕre crates deturbare
their arrival, (and) throw out the hurdles, force

nostros de vallo fundis, sagittis lapidibus,
our men from the rampart by slings, arrows (and) stones,

que administrare reliqua quæ pertinent ad
and (to) perform the other things which belong to

oppugnationem. Eodem tempŏre, clamōre
an assault. At the same time, the shout

exaudito, Vercingetorix dat signum suis
having been heard, Vercingetorix gives the signal to his men

tubā, atque educit ex oppido.
by the trumpet, and leads (them forth) from the town.

Nostri, ut superioribus diebus, suus locus
Our men, as on the previous days, his place

attributus erat cuique, accedunt ad munitiones;
had been assigned to each one, proceed to the fortifications;

perterrent Gallos fundis libralibus[57] que
they alarm the Gauls by slings (of) pound-weight and

sudibus, quas disposuerant in opĕre, ac
stakes, which they had placed in the works, and

glandibus. Prospectu adempto tenebris,
by lead bullets. The view (having been) cut off by darkness,

multa vulnĕra accipiuntur utrimque, complura
many wounds are received on both sides, numerous

tela conjiciuntur tormentis. At M. Antonius,[58]
weapons are thrown by the engines. But M. Antonius,

et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus eae partes
and C. Trebonius, the lieutenants, to whom these parts

obvenerant ad defendendum, ex quā
had fallen for defending, on what [whatever]

parte intellexerunt nostros premi,
side they understood (that) our men were hard pressed

submittebant iis auxilio deductos ex
they sent *to them for [as] aid* *(those) drawn [led] out from*

ulterioribus castellis.
the more remote *fortresses.*

82. Dum Galli aberant longius ab
While *the Gauls* *were distant* *rather far* *from*

munitione, proficiebant, plus multitudine
the fortifications, *they made progress,* *more* *by the multitude*

telorum; posteaquam successerunt proprius,
[mass] *of weapons;* *after* *they approached* *nearer,*

aut ipsi inopinantes induebant se stimulis,
either *they* *unawares* *impaled* *themselves* *on the spurs,*

aut delapsi in scrobes transfodiebantur, aut
or *having fallen* *into* *the pits* *were transfixed,* *or*

interibant trajecti murialibus pilis ex
perished *pierced* *by the wall* *javelins (thrown)* *from*

vallo et turribus. Multis vulneribus accep-
the rampart *and* *towers.* *Many* *wounds* *having*

tis undique, nullā munitione perruptā,
been received *on all sides,* *no* *fortification having been forced,*

cum lux appetĕret, verĭti ne
when *(day)* *light* *was approaching,* *having feared* *lest*

circumvenirentur ab aperto latĕre, eruptione
they might be surrounded *on* *the exposed* *flank,* *by a sally*

ex superioribus castris, receperunt se ad suos.
from *the higher* *camp,* *they retreated* *to* *their (people).*

At interiores, dum proferunt ea
But *those within (the town),* *while* *they bring out* *these things*

quæ præparata erant a Vercingetorige ad
which *had been prepared* *by* *Vercingetorix* *for*

eruptionem, explent priores fossas; morati
the sally, *fill up* *the first* *ditches;* *having been delayed*

diutius in administrandis iis rebus, cogno-
rather long *in* *performing* *these* *things,* *they*

verunt suos discessisse prius quam
learned *(that)* *their men* *had withdrawn* *before* *(that)*

appropinquarent munitionibus. Ita, re
they had approached *(to)* *the fortifications.* *Thus,* *the thing*

infectā, reverterunt in
[*design*] *having been unaccomplished, they returned into*
oppidum.
the town.

83. Galli bis repulsi cum magno
The Gauls twice having been repulsed with great
detrimento, consulunt quid agant. Adhibent
loss, consult what they should do. They admit
peritos locorum (pl.). Cognoscunt ab
(*those*) *acquainted with the locality. They learn from*
his situs superiorum castrorum que
these the position of the higher camp and
munitiones. Erat collis a septentrionibus,
the fortifications. There was a hill on the north,
quem[59] nostri non potuerant circumplecti opĕre,
which our men had not been able to enclose in the works,
propter magnitudinem circuitus; pæne
on account of the greatness of the circuit; almost
necessario fecerant castra iniquo et
necessarily they had pitched (*their*) *camp in an unfavorable and*
leniter declivi loco. C. Antistius Reginus, et
gently descending place. C. Antistius Reginus, and
C. Caninius Rubilus, legati, obtinebant hæc
C. Caninius Rubilus, the lieutenants, were holding this
cum duabus legionibus. Regionibus cognitis
with two legions. The country having been explored
per exploratores, duces hostium deligunt
by scouts, the leaders of the enemy select
sexaginta millia ex omni numero earum
sixty thousand from all the number of those
civitatum, quæ habeant maximam opinionem
states, which have the greatest reputation
virtutis; occulte constituunt inter se, quid,
of [*for*] *bravery; secretly they arrange among themselves, what,*
que quo pacto placeat agi.
and in what manner it is pleasing [*is best*] *to be done.*

Definiunt tempus adeundi quum videatur
They determine the time of advancing when it may seem

esse meridies. Præficiunt iis copiis
to be noon. They place over these forces

Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian, one from [of]

quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis. Ille
the four leaders, a kinsman of Vercingetorix. He

egressus ex castris primā vigiliā itinĕre
having departed from the camp at the first watch the march

confecto prope sub lucem, occultavit
having been completed nearly about (day) light, concealed

se post montem, que jussit milites
himself behind the mountain, and ordered the soldiers

reficĕre sese ex nocturno labore. Cum
to refresh themselves from [after] (their) nocturnal labor. When

jam meridies videretur appropinquare, contendit
now noon was seen to draw near, he marched

ad ea castra, quæ demonstravimus supra, que
to that camp, which we have mentioned above and

eodem tempŏre equitatus cœperunt accedĕre
at the same time the cavalry commenced to approach

ad campestres munitiones, et reliquæ
to the field [outer] fortifications, and the remaining

copiæ ostendĕre sese pro castris.
forces to show themselves before the camp.

84. Vercingetorix conspicatus suos, ex
Vercingetorix having beheld his (allies), from

arce Alesiæ, egreditur ex oppido, profert
the citadel of Alesia, marches from the town, brings forth

e castris longurios, musculos, falces, que
from the camp long poles, moveable sheds, wall hooks, and

reliqua, quæ paraverat causā eruptionis.
other things, which he had prepared for the purpose of the sally.

Pugnatur[60] uno tempŏre, omnibus locis, atque
It is fought [Fighting occurs] at one time, in all places, and

omnia tentantur. Quæ pars visa esse minime
all things are attempted. What part is seen to be least

firma, huc concurritur. Manus Romanorum
strong, hither (they) run together. The force of the Romans

distinetur tantis munitionibus nec facile
is extended in so great fortifications and not easily

occurit pluribus locis. Clamor, qui exstitit
meets (the attack) in many places. The din, that arose

post tergum pugnantibus, valuit multum ad
in the rear to [of] the combatants, served much for

terrendos nostros, quod vident suum
alarming our men, because they see (that) their

periculum consistĕre in virtute alienā. Enim
peril depends on the bravery (of) others. For

plerumque omnia quæ absunt perturbant
generally all things which are absent alarm

mentes hominum vehementius.
the minds of men more violently.

85. Cæsar nactus idoneum locum, cognoscit
Cæsar, having chosen a suitable place, learns

quid geratur in quāque parte, submittit
what is done in every part, sends (aid)

laborantibus. Occurrit ad animum utrisque,
(to those) hard pressed. It occurs to the mind to each,

illud esse unum tempus, quo conveniat
(that) that is the one time, in which it is fitting

maxime contendi.[61] Galli, nisi
to the greatest degree to be fought [to fight]. The Gauls, unless

perfregerint munitiones, desperant de omni
they break through the fortifications, despair of all

salute. Romani, si obtinuerint rem
safety. The Romans, if they should gain the affair [action]

expectant finem omnium laborum. Maxime
expect an end of all (their) labors. Especially

laboratur ad superiores munitiones, quō
it is struggled [there is a struggle] at the higher fortifications, where

demonstravimus Vercassivellaunum missum.
we have shown (that) Vercassivellaunus (had been) sent.

Exiguum fastigium loci ad declivitatem,
The small elevation of the place with the slope,

habet magnum momentum. Alii conjiciunt tela,
has great importance. Some throw weapons

alii testudine factā, subeunt, integri
others *a testudo* *having been made* *advance,* *fresh men*

succedunt defatigatis in vicem. Agger conjectus
relieve *the wearied* *by turns.* *The earth* *thrown*

ab universis in munitionem, et dat
by *all* *against* *the fortifications,* *both* *gives*

adscensum Gallis, et contegit quæ
an ascent *to the Gauls,* *and* *covers* *what*

Romani occultaverant in terrā. Nec arma,
the Romans *had concealed* *in* *the ground.* *Neither* *arms,*

jam nec vires suppetunt nostris.
now *nor* *strength* *suffice* *for our men.*

86. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar mittit
These *things* *having been learned,* *Cæsar* *sends*

Labienum cum sex cohortibus subsidio
Labienus *with* *six* *cohorts* *for* [*as*] *aid*

laborantibus. Imperat, si possit non
(*to those*) *struggling.* *He commands* (*him*), *if* *he could not*

sustinēre, cohortibus deductis, pugnet
withstand, *the cohorts having been drawn* [*led*] *out,* *he should fight*

eruptione; non faciat id, nisi necessario.
in a sally; (*but*) *not* *do* *this,* *unless* *necessary.*

Ipse adit reliquos; cohortatur ne
He *goes* *to the rest;* *he exhorts* (*them*) *that they should not*

succumbant labor; docet fructum omnium
succumb *to the work;* *he shows* (*that*) *the fruit* *of all*

superiorum dimicationum consistĕre in eo
(*their*) *former* *battles* *depended* *on this*

die atque horā. Interiores campestribus
day *and* *hour.* *Those within* [*The besieged*] *the level*

locis desperatis, propter magnitudinem
places *having been despaired of,* *on account of* *the size*

munitionum, tentant loca prærupta ex
of the fortifications, *attempt* *the places* *steep* *in*

adscensu; huc conferunt ea quæ para-
ascent; *here* *they bring* *those* *things which* *they had*

verant, deturbant propugnantes ex turribus
prepared, *they drive back* *the defenders* *from* *the towers*

multitudine telorum; explent fossas aggĕre
by the multitude of weapons; they fill up the trenches with earth

et cratibus expediunt aditus; rescindunt
and fascines they prepare an approach, they tear down

vallum ac loricam falcibus.
the rampart and parapet with hooks.

87. Cæsar primo mittit Brutum, adolescentem,
Cæsar at first sends Brutus, a young man,

cum sex cohortibus, post Fabium legatum cum
with six cohorts, afterwards Fabius (his) lieutenant with

septem aliis. Postremo ipse, quum pugnaretur[62]
seven others. At length he himself, when it was fought

vehementius, adducit integros subsidio.
more desperately, leads up fresh (men) for aid.

Prœlio restituto, ac hostibus repul-
The battle having been renewed, and the enemy having been

sis, contendit eō quō miserat Labienum;
repulsed, he marches thither where he had sent Labienus;

educit quattuor cohortes ex proximo castello;
he draws out four cohorts from the nearest fortress;

jubet partem equitum sequi se, partem
he orders a part of the cavalry to follow himself, a part

circumire exteriores munitiones, et adoriri
to go around the outer fortifications, and to attack

hostes ab tergo. Labienus, postquam
the enemy from [in] the rear. Labienus, after (that)

neque aggeres neque fossæ poterant sustinēre
neither the mounds nor the trenches could resist

vim hostium, una de quadraginta cohortibus
the force of the enemy, thirty-nine cohorts

coactis, quas deductas ex proximis
having been assembled, which drawn from the nearest

præsidiis, sors obtulit, facit certiorem Cæsarem,
posts, chance offered, informs Cæsar,

per nuntios quid existimet faciendum, Cæsar
by messengers what he thinks must be done. Cæsar

accelerat ut intersit prœlio.
hastens that he may be present at the battle.

88. Ejus adventu cognito ex colōre
His arrival having been known from the color

vestitūs, (quō insigni consueverat uti
of (his) robe, (which (as) an insignia he was accustomed to use

in prœliis), que turmis equitum et cohortibus
in battle), both the troops of cavalry and cohorts

visis, quas jusserat sequi se, ut de
having been seen, which he had ordered to follow him, as from

superioribus locis hæc declivia et devexa
the higher places these sloping and inclined (places)

cernebantur, hostes committunt prœlium. Clamōre
were visible, the enemy join battle. A shout

sublato utrimque, clamōr rursus excipit
having been raised on both sides, a shout again follows

ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus.
from the rampart and all the fortifications.

Nostri pilis omissis, gerunt
Our (men) the javelins having been laid aside, carry on

rem gladiis (pl.). Equitatus repente cernitur
the action with the sword. The cavalry suddenly is seen

post tergum; aliæ cohortes appropinquant;
in the rear (of the Gauls); other cohorts advance;

hostes vertunt terga; equites occurrunt
the enemy turn (their) backs; the cavalry meet

fugientibus; magna cædes fit. Sedulius
(those) fleeing; a great slaughter is made. Sedulius

dux et princeps Lemovicum occiditur;
general and chief of the Lemovices is slain;

Vercassivellaunus Arvernus comprehenditur vivus
Vercassivellaunus the Arvernian is taken alive

in fugā; septuaginta quattuor militaria signa
in flight; seventy four military standards

referuntur ad Cæsarem; pauci ex tanto
are brought to Cæsar; few from [of] so great

numero recipiunt se incolumes in castra. Conspicati
a number return safe into the camp. Having beheld

ex oppido cædem et fugam suorum,
from the town the slaughter and flight of their (people)

salute desperatā, reducunt copias
safety having been despaired of, they lead back (their) forces

a munitionibus. Hāc re auditā,
from the fortifications. This news having been heard,

fuga protinus fit, ex castris Gallorum;
a flight immediately is made, from the camp of the Gauls;

quod nisi milites fuissent defessi
as to [regarding] which [this] unless the soldiers had been fatigued

crebris subsidiis ac labōre totius
by the frequent reinforcements and by the labor of the whole

diei, omnes copiæ hostium potuissent delēri.
day, all the forces of the enemy might have been destroyed.

De mediā nocte, equitatus missus consequitur
About mid night, the cavalry having been sent overtakes

novissimum agmen. Magnus numerus capitur,
the rear line. A great number are taken,

atque interficitur; reliqui discedunt ex fugā
and killed; the rest escape from the flight [rout]

in civitates.
into their states.

89. Postero die, concilio convocato,
On the next day, a council having been called,

Vercingetorix demonstrat se suscepisse
Vercingetorix shows (that) he had undertaken

bellum non causā suarum necessitatum (pl.), sed
the war not for the sake of his own necessity, but

communis libertatis, et quoniam sit
of (their) common liberty, and because it must

cedendum fortunæ, offerre se illis
be yielded to fortune, (that he) offered himself to them

ad utramque rem, seu velint
for either thing [alternative], whether they wish

satisfacĕre Romanis suā morte, seu tradĕre
to satisfy the Romans by his death, or to surrender

vivum. Legati mittuntur ad Cæsarem
(him) alive. Ambassadors are sent to Cæsar

de his rebus. Jubet arma
concerning these things. He orders (their) arms

tradi, principes produci. Ipse
to be surrendered, (and their) chiefs to be led forth. He

consedit in munitione pro castris; eo
seated himself at the fortification before the camp; there

principes producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur;
the chiefs are led forth. Vercingetorix is surrendered

arma projiciuntur. Æduis atque Arvernis
the arms are thrown down. The Ædui and Arverni

reservatis, si per eos posset recuperare
having been reserved, if through them he could gain over

civitates, ex reliquis captivis distribuit
(their) states, from the remaining captives he distributed

singula capita toti exercitui nomine
one each to the whole army under the name

prædæ.
of booty.

90. His rebus confectis, proficiscitur
These things having been accomplished, he marches

in Æduos; recipit civitatem. Legati
into the Ædui; he receives the state. Ambassadors

missi eo ab Arvernis pollicentur
sent thither from the Arverni promise

se facturos, quæ imperaret. Imperat
(that) they would do, what he might command. He orders

magnum numerum obsidum. Mittit legiones in
a great number of hostages. He sends the legions into

hiberna. Reddit circiter viginti millia
winter-quarters. He restores about twenty thousand

captivorum Æduis que Arvernis. Jubet
(of) prisoners to the Ædui and Arverni. He orders

T. Labienum proficisci in Sequanos cum
T. Labienus to march into the Sequani with

duabus legionibus et equitatu. Huic attribuit
two legions and the cavalry. To him he assigns

M. Sempronium Rutilum. Collocat C. Fabium
M. Sempronius Rutilus. He places C. Fabius

et L. Minucium Basilum in Remis cum
and L. Minucius Basilus among the Remi with

duabus legionibus, ne accipiant quam
two *legions,* *that they may not* *receive* *any*

calamitatem a finitimis Bellovacis. Mittit
injury *from* *the neighboring* *Bellovaci.* *He sends*

C. Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos,
C. *Antistius* *Reginus* *among* *the Ambivareti,*

T. Sextium in Bituriges, C. Caninum Rebilum
T. *Sextius* *among* *the Bituriges,* *C.* *Caninus* *Rebilus*

in Rutenos, cum legionibus singulis; collocat
among *the Ruteni,* *with* *a legion* *each;* *he stations*

Q. Tullium Ciceronem, et P. Sulpicium Cabiloni
Q. *Tullius* *Cicero,* *and* *P.* *Sulpicius* *at Cabilo*

et Matiscone ad Arărim in Æduis
and *Matisco* *on* [*near*] *the* (*river*) *Saone* *among* *the Ædui*

causā frumentariæ rei; ipse constituit
for the purpose *of the corn supply;* *he himself* *determines*

hiemare Bibracte. His rebus cognitis
to winter *at Bibracte.* *These* *things* *having been learned*

Romæ litteris Cæsaris, supplicatio viginti
at Rome *by a letter* *of Cæsar,* *a thanksgiving* *of twenty*

dierum indicitur.
days *is decreed.*

Pocket Literal Translations of the Classics

Cloth Binding. Each, $1.00

These translations have been prepared with great care. They follow the original text literally, thus forming a valuable help to the student in his efforts to master the difficulties which beset him. Pleasing sketches of the authors appear in the form of an introduction to each of the volumes.

The books are in a convenient form, being exceptionally handy for the pocket. They are printed from clear type, and are attractively and durably bound.

Cæsar's Commentaries—Eight Books.
Cicero's Defence of Roscius.
Cicero on Old Age and Friendship.
Cicero on Oratory.
Cicero's Select Orations.
Cicero's Select Letters.
Cornelius Nepos, complete.
Horace, complete.
Juvenal's Satires, complete.
Livy.—Books 1 and 2.
Livy.—Books 21 and 22.
Ovid's Metamorphoses.—Books 1–7.
Ovid's Metamorphoses.—Books 8–15.
Plautus' Captivi and Mostellaria.
Sallust's Catiline and The Jugurthine War.
Tacitus' Annals.—The First Six Books.
Tacitus' Germany and Agricola.
Terence' Andria, Adelphi, and Phormio.
Virgil's Aeneid.—Six Books.
Virgil's Eclogues and Georgics.
Viri Romae.
Aeschylus' Prometheus Bound and Seven Against Thebes.
Aristophanes' Clouds, Birds, and Frogs.—In one Vol.
Demosthenes' On the Crown.
Demosthenes' Olynthiacs and Philippics.
Euripides' Alcestis and Electra.
Euripides' Medea.
Herodotus.—Books 6 and 7.
Homer's Iliad.—Nine Books.
Homer's Odyssey.—13 Books.
Lysias' Select Orations.
Plato's Apology, Crito and Phaedo.
Plato's Gorgias.
Sophocles' Oedipus Tyrannus, Electra, and Antigone.
Xenophon's Anabasis. — Five Books.
Xenophon's Memorabilia, complete.
Goethe's Egmont.
Goethe's Faust.
Goethe's Hermann and Dorothea.
Goethe's Iphigenia In Tauris.
Lessing's Minna von Barnhelm.
Lessing's Nathan the Wise.
Schiller's Maid of Orleans.
Schiller's Maria Stuart.
Schiller's William Tell.

All the above books may be obtained, post free, at prices named

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

The
Hamilton, Locke, and Clark
SERIES OF
Interlinear Translations

Have long been the Standard and are now the *Best Translated* and *Most Complete* Series of Interlinears published.

Cloth Binding, each, $2.00

LATIN INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS:

VIRGIL—By Hart and Osborne.
CÆSAR—By Hamilton and Clark.
HORACE—By Stirling, Nuttall and Clark.
CICERO—By Hamilton and Clark.
SALLUST—By Hamilton and Clark.
OVID—By George W. Heilig.
JUVENAL—By Hamilton and Clark.
LIVY—By Hamilton and Clark.
CORNELIUS NEPOS—By Hamilton and Underwood

GREEK INTERLINEAR TRANSLATIONS

HOMER'S ILIAD—By Thomas Clark.
XENOPHON'S ANABASIS—By Hamilton and Clark.

S. Austin Allibone, the distinguished author, writes:

"There is a growing disapprobation, both in America and Great Britain, of the disproportionate length of time devoted by the youthful student to the acquisition of the dead languages; and therefore nothing will tend so effectually to the preservation of the Greek and Latin grammars as their judicious union (the fruit of an intelligent compromise) with the Interlinear Classics."

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

ab eo octaginta millibus passuum, in Oceanum.
from that (than) eighty thousands of paces, into the Ocean.

Autem Rhenus oritur ex Lepontiis, qui incolunt
But the Rhine arises out of the Lepontii, who inhabit

Alpes: et fertur citatus longo spatio per fines
the Alps: and is borne rapid in a long distance through the territories

Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Medio-
of the Nantuates, Helvetii, Sequani, Medio-

matricorum, Tribocorum, quo Trevirorum; et ubi
matrici, Tribocci, and of the Treviri; and when

appropinquat Oceano, diffluit in plures partes;
it approaches to the Ocean, it flows dividedly into more (several) parts:

multis que ingentibus insulis effectis; magna pars
many and great islands being formed; great part

quarum incolitur à feris que barbaris nationibus;
of which is inhabited by wild and barbarous nations;

(ex quibus sunt qui existimantur vivere
(out of which (there) are (some) who are thought to live

piscibus atque ovis avium), que influit in
(on) fishes and the eggs of birds), and it flows in into

Oceanum multis capitibus.
the Ocean by many heads.

11. Quum Cæsar abesset ab
When Cæsar might be distant (was distant) from

hoste non amplius duodecim millibus passuum,
the enemy not more (than) twelve thousands of paces,

legati revertuntur ad eum, ut constitutum erat:
the ambassadors return to him, as it had been appointed:

qui congressi in itinere, orabant magnoperè,
who having met (him) on the march, did pray greatly

ne progrederetur longiùs. Quum impetrâssent
he would not advance farther. When they might have (had) obtained

non id, petebant, "utì præmitteret ad
not that, they did request, "that he would send before to

eos equites, qui antecessissent agmen, que
those horsemen, who might have (had) preceded the troop (army), and

prohiberet eos pugnâ: que utì faceret potestatem
would prohibit them from battle: and that he would make power

Sample Page, Cæsar Interlinear Translation
(Reduced in Size)

McLaughlin's
New Pronouncing Dictionaries

Containing the whole Vocabulary in General Use, with copious selections of Scientific, Technical, and Commercial Terms, and others Brought into Use, with their Pronunciations figured in both Languages.

Cloth Binding, $2.50 each

French-English and English-French. A dictionary of the French and English languages *by E. Clifton.* New edition, entirely remodeled and enlarged *by J. McLaughlin.* 1,370 pages.

German-English and English-German. A new pronouncing dictionary of the German and English languages *by F. C. Hebert and L. Hirsch.* 1,749 pages.

Italian-English and English-Italian. A dictionary of the Italian and English languages *by A. Enenkel.* Revised and corrected *by J. McLaughlin.* 1,090 pages.

Spanish-English and English-Spanish. A dictionary of the Spanish and English languages *by A. Angeli.* Revised and corrected *by J. McLaughlin.* 1,350 pages.

ALSO UNIFORM WITH ABOVE

Danish-Norwegian-English and English-Danish-Norwegian. A dictionary of the Danish, Norwegian, and English languages *by Prof. J. R. Ainsworth Davis, B.A.* 768 pages..... **$2 50**

Polish-English and English-Polish. A pronouncing dictionary of the Polish and English languages *by W. Kierst and Prof. O. Collier.* 832 pages..... **2 50**

Polish-English and English-Polish. A new dictionary of the Polish and English languages *by J. Stanislawski.* 879 pages..... **3 50**

Portuguese-English and English-Portuguese. A new 1943 dictionary of the Portuguese and English languages *by Dr. L. J. Sheridan and M. de Lourdes Sa' Pereira*..... **3 00**

Rumanian-English Dictionary. *By P. Axelrad*..... **3 00**

Russian-English and English-Russian. A new dictionary of the Russian and English languages *by M. Golovinsky.* 1,476 pages..... **3 00**

Swedish-English and English-Swedish. A pronouncing dictionary of the Swedish and English languages *by J. Wessely.* 735 pages..... **2 50**

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

Handy Dictionaries

When studying foreign languages, a good dictionary is a necessity. Handy Foreign Language Dictionaries are complete as possible for a dictionary of this size; definitions are concise and to the point. Pocket size permits use of dictionary at all times.

Dutch-English and English-Dutch. *By J. Verheul* **$1 25**

French-English and English-French. *By J. O. Ketteridge* **1 25**

German-English and English-German. *By J. E. Wessely* **1 25**

Greek-English. *By Prof. Karl Feyerabend* **1 25**

Italian-English and English-Italian. *By J. E. Wessely* **1 25**

Latin-English and English-Latin **1 25**

Spanish-English and English-Spanish. *By F. A. Kirkpatrick* **1 25**

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia

Hill's Vest-Pocket Dictionaries

Cheapest and Most Reliable

No expense has been spared in compiling these books. As a result, the most complete Dictionaries of handy size have been produced. Not only are they the most convenient for the student, but also the most practical for the use of the progressive business man. They are the most reliable Dictionaries of this style on the market, and each one contains a complete guide to pronunciation, with rules for same. Condensation and usefulness are the chief features of these books. Unusual and self-explanatory terms are left out to make room for more needful words.

French-English and English-French
German-English and English-German
Italian-English and English-Italian
Spanish-English and English-Spanish
Swedish-English and English-Swedish
Latin-English and English-Latin
Polish-English and English-Polish
Portuguese-English and English-Portuguese
Russian-English and English-Russian

Each Volume, Cloth Binding..... 60

All the above books may be obtained post free at prices named.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, Philadelphia